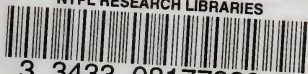


NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 08177329 7



IBZ  
Young







Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation



NEW YORK EDITION

---

# THE GOVERNMENT CLASS BOOK

A MANUAL OF INSTRUCTION IN THE PRINCIPLES  
OF CONSTITUTIONAL GOVERNMENT  
AND LAW

BY ANDREW W. YOUNG

*Author of "American Statesman," "Citizen's Manual of  
Government and Law," etc., etc.*

---

THOROUGHLY REVISED, 1894

BY SALTER S. CLARK

*Counsellor at Law*

---

WITH SUPPLEMENT

NEW YORK—ITS STATE AND LOCAL GOVERNMENT  
WITH THE CONSTITUTION COMPLETE

BY MYRON T. SCUDDER, M.A.

---

NEW YORK  
MAYNARD, MERRILL, & Co.





Copyright, 1880 and 1885, by CLARK & MAYNARD.

Copyright, 1894, 1895, 1901,

BY

MAYNARD, MERRILL, & CO.

## PREFACE

THE study of the principles of political science is a necessary part of a liberal education. In a country where the people govern themselves the science of government is a necessary part of a common-school education. In the United States the people elect their own law-makers and rulers, establish their own constitutions, and determine even the fundamental principles upon which men shall be governed. The danger of entrusting such power to the ignorant has not failed of illustration in our States and cities. Having universal suffrage, the people must learn to govern themselves for the sake of their own preservation and welfare.

Nor is a knowledge of the principles of legal science less necessary to every citizen. The laws of man know as little of mercy as the laws of nature, in that law never admits ignorance as an excuse for wrong. It is a proof of the essential justice of our system of jurisprudence, that so many citizens pass safely through life, totally ignorant of the law, and relying merely upon their own sense of what should be. And yet every day gives proof that ignorance is always dangerous. The study of such a work as this will not make a youth a lawyer, but it will fix in his mind a system of broad principles, which cannot fail to be useful practically.

Though these facts are self-evident, the popular

study of law and good government has been strangely neglected in this and every other country. The aim of this book, in supplying a manifest want, is to present, in such form as to be used chiefly as a text-book for schools, a broad and comprehensive view of the principles of government and law in the United States. These principles are substantially the same throughout the country, and the young may easily learn the varied rights and duties of a citizen in relation to his government and his fellow-men.

The book is divided into two parts :

Part I., *Principles of Government*, is devoted (after a few chapters upon general principles), first, to government by the State, and second, to government by the Nation. It is here that the book is believed to have its chief advantage over others of its kind. In all that we have examined, either one or the other of these subjects has been neglected. Some of our American youth have grown to manhood with so little appreciation of the political importance of the State, as to believe it nothing more than a geographical division; others have placed the State too high, and failed to realize the power and dignity of the Nation. In reality, the National Government, on the one hand, is of far greater historic interest and permanent political importance, as really governing the future freedom or serfdom of the people. On the other hand, the State, which says whether the particular individual shall vote, what rights of property he shall have, and what shall be the punishment for his crimes, enters far more into the daily affairs of the single citizen, touches him at more points, and is therefore of greater temporary interest. Both subjects should be studied, and it is of

especial importance at this time that their relation to each other should be clearly presented to the youth of the land, for State rights and National rights must forever coexist.

Part II., *Principles of Law*, contains also two divisions, the first one presenting the main principles which govern the rights and duties of man to man in his every-day life, and his varied rights connected with personal security, liberty, and property; and the second giving the rules by which the relations of nations to each other are regulated. Thus the volume presents a general view of the position of the citizen in all the relations he may sustain in this country: to his fellow-citizen, to his State, to his Nation, and to foreign nations.

Extensive improvements were made by Salter S. Clark, Esq., of New York, in the original form of this work. Changes and additions had been rendered necessary by historic events. A more natural and logical order was pursued, with proper subordination of topics. Each paragraph of a chapter was confined to a single specified subject. Analyses and diagrams were added, where appropriate, to be used as black-board exercises, with review questions for the use of both pupil and teacher.

The present edition has been carefully revised. Very few material changes have been made, but some corrections and additions were required to adapt the book to present needs. It is confidently hoped that this work, tested by long experience, may find as much favor in the future as it has received in the past.

# ANALYSIS OF CONTENTS

## **PART I.—PRINCIPLES OF GOVERNMENT**

### **Div. I.—General Principles.**

### **Div. II.—State Governments.**

SEC. I.—Introductory.

SEC. II.—Legislative Department.

SEC. III.—Executive Department.

SEC. IV.—Judicial Department.

### **Div. III.—The National Government.**

SEC. I.—Its Origin and Nature.

SEC. II.—Legislative Department.

SEC. III.—Executive Department.

SEC. IV.—Judicial Department.

SEC. V.—Miscellaneous Provisions.

## **PART II.—PRINCIPLES OF LAW.**

### **Div. I.—Municipal Law.**

SEC. I.—Civil Rights in General.

SEC. II.—Contracts.

SEC. III.—Real Estate.

SEC. IV.—Criminal Law

### **Div. II.—International Law.**

SEC. I.—Peaceful Relations of Nations

SEC. II.—Relations of Nations in War.



# CONTENTS

## PART I—PRINCIPLES OF GOVERNMENT

### DIVISION I

#### GENERAL PRINCIPLES

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. Mankind fitted for Society, Government, and Law,	11
II. Rights, Liberty, and Law, classified, . . . .	14
III. Different Forms of Government, . . . .	19

### DIVISION II

#### STATE GOVERNMENTS

##### SECTION I—INTRODUCTORY

##### THEIR BASIS—THE CONSTITUTION: ELECTIONS: THREE DEPARTMENTS

IV. Constitutions: Their Nature, Object, and Establishment, . . . . .	23
V. Qualifications of Electors, . . . . .	26
VI. Elections, . . . . .	29
VII. Division of Powers of Government, . . . . .	32

##### SECTION II

##### LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT

VIII. Legislature: how constituted, . . . . .	35
IX. Meetings and Organization, . . . . .	38
X. Manner of Enacting Laws, . . . . .	41

# SECTION III

CHAPTER	EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT	PAGE
XI.	State Officers, . . . . .	46
XII.	County Officers, . . . . .	49
XIII.	Town Officers, . . . . .	56
XIV.	Cities and Villages, . . . . .	59
XV.	Taxes, . . . . .	63
XVI.	Education, . . . . .	67
XVII.	Public Institutions, . . . . .	72
XVIII.	Militia, . . . . .	75

# SECTION IV

	JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT	
XIX.	Courts, . . . . .	78
XX	Legal Proceedings, . . . . .	82

# DIVISION III

## THE NATIONAL GOVERNMENT

### SECTION I

	ITS ORIGIN AND NATURE	
XXI.	Government before the Revolution, . . . . .	93
XXII.	The Confederation, . . . . .	96
XXIII.	The Union under the Constitution, . . . . .	100
XXIV.	Constitution of the United States, . . . . .	104

### SECTION II

	LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT	
XXV.	House of Representatives, . . . . .	130
XXVI.	Senate . . . . .	134
XXVII.	General Legislative Regulations, . . . . .	137
XXVIII.	Powers of Taxation, . . . . .	140
XXIX.	Power to Regulate Commerce, . . . . .	143
XXX.	Other Powers relating to Peace, . . . . .	147
XXXI.	Powers relating to War, . . . . .	155
XXXII.	Prohibitions on the United States, . . . . .	160
XXXIII.	Prohibitions on the States, . . . . .	163

# SECTION III

## EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT

CHAPTER		PAGE
XXXIV.	President and Vice-President: Election, Qualifications, etc., . . . . .	168
XXXV.	Powers and Duties of the President, . . . . .	172
XXXVI.	Auxiliary Executive Departments, . . . . .	176

# SECTION IV

## JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT

XXXVII.	National Courts and their Jurisdiction, . . . . .	180
XXXVIII.	Treason, . . . . .	185

# SECTION V

## MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

XXXIX.	Relations of States, . . . . .	187
XL.	Amendment: Debt: Supremacy: Oath: Test: Ratification, . . . . .	190
XLI.	The First Twelve Amendments, . . . . .	193
XLII.	The 13th, 14th, and 15th Amendments, . . . . .	199

# PART II.—PRINCIPLES OF LAW

# DIVISION I

## MUNICIPAL LAW

# SECTION I

## CIVIL RIGHTS IN GENERAL

XLIII.	Absolute Civil Rights, . . . . .	205
XLIV.	Relative Civil Rights, . . . . .	209

# SECTION II

## CONTRACTS

XLV.	Contracts in General, . . . . .	212
XLVI.	Marriage, , , , , , , . . . . .	218

CHAPTER	PAGE
XLVII. Principal and Agent, . . . . .	222
XLVIII. Partnership, . . . . .	225
XLIX. Sales of Personal Property, . . . . .	228
L. Gifts; Fraudulent Transfers, . . . . .	231
LI. Promissory Notes and Bills of Exchange, . . . . .	233
LII. Services, . . . . .	240
LIII. Insurance, . . . . .	242
LIV. Shipping, . . . . .	244
LV. Interest, . . . . .	246

## SECTION III

## REAL ESTATE

LVI. Estates in Real Property, . . . . .	247
LVII. Deeds and Mortgages, . . . . .	249
LVIII. Appurtenances, . . . . .	252
LIX. Landlord and Tenant, . . . . .	255
LX. Distribution of Property upon Death, . . . . .	258

## SECTION IV

## CRIMINAL LAW

LXI. Crimes, . . . . .	261
------------------------	-----

## DIVISION II

## INTERNATIONAL LAW

## SECTION I

## PEACEFUL RELATIONS OF NATIONS

LXII. Nature and Authority of International Law, . . . . .	268
LXIII. Ordinary Rules of Peace, . . . . .	272

## SECTION II

## RELATIONS OF NATIONS IN WAR

LXIV. Causes and Objects of War, . . . . .	276
LXV. Rights and Duties of Belligerents, . . . . .	278
LXVI. Rights and Duties of Neutrals, . . . . .	282

# PRINCIPLES OF GOVERNMENT AND LAW

## PART I *PRINCIPLES OF GOVERNMENT*

### DIVISION I GENERAL PRINCIPLES

#### CHAPTER I

##### MANKIND FITTED FOR SOCIETY, GOVERNMENT, AND LAW

**1. Mankind Social**—Men are by nature fitted for society. By this we mean that they are naturally disposed to associate with each other. They could not be happy without such association. Hence we conclude that the Creator has designed men for society.

**2. Dependent on Each Other**—Man is so formed that he is dependent upon his fellow-men. He has not the natural strength of some animals. We can hardly imagine how a man could defend himself against the beasts, or even procure the necessaries of life, without assistance from his fellow-beings. But by means of speech men learn from each other how to

supply their wants and improve their social condition.

**3. Each Must Support Himself**—But, although men need the assistance of each other, society is so formed that each must take care of himself. If every man were fed and clothed from a common store provided by the labor of all, many, depending upon the labor of others, would be less industrious than they now are. By the present arrangement, which obliges every man to provide for his own wants, more is produced, a greater number are cared for, and the general welfare is better promoted than if each labored for the benefit of all.

**4. Right of Property**—From this arrangement comes the right of property. If each man's earnings should go into a common stock for the use of all, there would be nothing that any one could call his own. But if each is to provide for himself, he must have a right to use and enjoy the fruits of his own labor.

**5. Common to All**—But all men in society have the same rights. Therefore we cannot rightfully supply our own wants or gratify our own desires any further than is consistent with the rights of others. But man is by nature selfish, and many would infringe the rights of others, for their own selfish ends, unless restrained. Hence we see the necessity of some fixed rules that each one may know what he may do, and what he must not do.

**6. Law**—These rules for regulating the social actions of men are called laws. *Law*, in a general sense, is a rule of action, and is applied to all kinds of action; as, the law of gravitation, the laws of chemistry, etc. But

in a limited sense, it denotes the rules of human action prescribing what men are to do, and forbidding what they are not to do.

**7. Man a Moral Being**—We have seen that man is fitted for law, because he is designed for society, and law is necessary to govern society. By nature, also, he is fitted for government and law, because he is a *moral* being. The word *moral* has various significations. When we say, a moral man, we mean a virtuous or upright man. But in a wider sense it relates to the social actions of men, both right and wrong, as when we say, his morals are good, or his morals are bad. When it is said that man is a moral being, it is meant that he has a sense of right and wrong, or at least the power of acquiring it. He knows what is right and what is wrong, and he knows that he ought to do the right and avoid the wrong. Therefore he is fitted to understand why laws are right.

**8. Government Necessary**—Thus we have seen that men are social, reasonable, and moral beings, and that for each one of these reasons they are fitted for society and law. But law cannot exist without government. Law is a rule of action laid down by the supreme power, and if there is no supreme power there can be no law. Hence we see the necessity for government. It is not probable that people knowingly acted on these principles in first forming governments; that is, deliberately met together and agreed to have a certain government and certain laws. But it is these principles that maintain law and government now.

## CHAPTER II

## RIGHTS, LIBERTY, AND LAW, CLASSIFIED

**1. Rights**—A right is a just claim. We have a right to what we have acquired by honest labor, or other lawful means, because we are justly entitled to freely use and enjoy it. We have a right to our lives, and to our freedom; that is, to do whatever we think necessary for our own safety and happiness, provided we do not trespass upon the rights of others, because it would be unjust to deprive us of our lives or freedom.

**2. How Forfeited**—But society has its rights also, and if we infringe them it is just we should be punished by losing some of our own. We may forfeit them by some offence or crime. If, for example, a man is fined for breaking a law, he loses his right to the money he is obliged to pay. By stealing, he forfeits his liberty, and may be justly imprisoned. By committing murder, he forfeits his right to life, and may be hanged.

**3. Political Rights**—Rights are *political* or *civil*. *Political rights* are those which each citizen has with reference to sharing in the government. The word *political*, in a general sense, relates to the government. The whole body of the people united under one government is called the political body, or body politic. The right of the people to choose and establish for themselves a form of government, or constitution, and the right to elect persons to make and execute the laws, are political rights. The right of voting at elections is therefore a political right. Political rights are derived from the constitution. Under absolute monarchies,



therefore, where there is no constitution, the people have no political rights; under democracies they have more than under any other form of government.

**4. Civil Rights** are all those which are not *political*. They are the rights which govern our ordinary, everyday actions; such as, the right to go where we please, to do whatever we wish with our own property, or to control our children. They are also called *natural rights*, because given to us by nature, or by birth; and sometimes *inalienable rights*, because they cannot justly be taken away from us. They are called *civil* because they relate to the ordinary duties of a citizen.

**5. Absolute Civil Rights**—Civil rights are either *absolute* or *relative*. The *absolute civil* rights are such as we have as individuals, as members of society, in our relations to all the other members of society. They are divided into three classes: the right of *personal security*, which is the right to be secure from injury to life, body, health, or reputation; the right of *personal liberty*, which is the right to go wherever we please; and the right of *private property*, or the right to acquire property and enjoy it without disturbance. These are often called *personal rights*, or the *rights of persons*. The term *rights of person* includes only the first two; viz., the rights of *personal security* and *personal liberty*. *Religious rights*, which consist in the right to worship God in whatever way each one thinks best, and to make known and maintain his religious beliefs, are absolute rights.

**6. Relative Civil Rights** are such as we have in our relations to particular persons or classes. They are either *public* or *private*. The *public relative civil rights* are those we have in our relations to the gov-

ernment (except the right to share in it); as, the right to be protected by it, and the right the government and its officers have to our obedience. The *private relative civil rights* are such as are connected with the four relations of husband and wife, parent and child, guardian and ward, and employer and employed; as, the right of the parent to be obeyed by the child, or the right of the wife to be supported by her husband.

7. **Liberty** is the being free to exercise and enjoy our rights, and is called natural, political, civil, or religious, according to the particular class of rights referred to. Thus the exercise of rights guaranteed by the constitution or political law is called political liberty. The free enjoyment of rights secured by the civil or municipal laws is called civil liberty. And freedom of religious opinion and worship is called religious liberty. *Freedom of speech* and *freedom of the press* mean the liberty to speak and print whatever we choose, provided we do not abuse the right.

8. **Law**—It is easy to see that it makes little difference how many rights a man has, unless there is some power to insure him the liberty to enjoy them. The object of law is to secure to all men the various kinds of rights we have described. It has different names, corresponding to the kinds of rights which it protects; as, the *political law*, which secures our *political rights*, and the *civil or municipal law*, which secures our *civil rights*. The word *municipal* was used by the Romans to designate that which related to a *municipium*; i.e., a free town, or city. And so, often, we use the term *municipal law* as denoting the law that relates to cities or towns, but here it is used in a broader sense, and includes the body of laws

which prescribe what we may, or must not, do, and is equivalent to *civil law*.\* The constitution is the *political law*; the body of laws governing the ordinary actions of men is the *civil* or *municipal law*; and the rules which regulate the intercourse of nations constitute *international law*.

**9. The Moral Law** is that which prescribes man's duties not only to his fellow-men, but also to God. It is briefly expressed in the decalogue, or ten commandments, and is still more briefly summed up in the two great commandments, to love God with all our heart, and to love our neighbor as ourselves. It is sometimes called the *divine law*, because God is its author; and the *revealed law*, or *law of revelation*, because it is revealed to man in the Scriptures. As a rule of conduct it is also the same as the *law of nature*, the only difference between them being in their origin; the former, the *revealed law*, coming directly from God, and the latter, the *law of nature*, coming from nature—that is, our own consciousness in its perfect state.

**10. Broader than Civil Law**—Although the moral law is a perfect rule of action, to which all human laws ought to conform, yet the civil law does not, and cannot, embrace all that the moral law does. The moral law is directed not only to the outward acts, but also to the thoughts and intents of the heart. It requires us to love our Creator supremely, and our neighbor as ourselves; in other words, to do to others as we would that they should do to us. But as the omniscient God only knows when men fail in these duties, no human

---

\* Care must be taken to distinguish the term, as used in this connection, from the Civil Law, a name for the old Roman law.

authority could enforce such a law. Human laws, therefore, have respect chiefly to the outward acts of men, and are designed to regulate their intercourse with each other.

## RIGHTS OF CITIZENS

- { **I. POLITICAL**; these are
  - { 1. Right of all to establish a government, and
  - { 2. Right of each to share in it, by voting. .
- { **II. CIVIL**; these are
  - { 1. **ABSOLUTE**; they are the right of
    - { 1. Personal Security,
    - { 2. Personal Liberty, and
    - { 3. Private Property.
  - { 2. **RELATIVE**; these are
    - { 1. **Public**; they are
      - { 1. Right of people to protec-  
tion of government, and
      - { 2. Right of government to  
obedience of people.
    - { 2. **Private**; arising from relations of
      - { 1. Husband and wife,
      - { 2. Parent and child,
      - { 3. Guardian and ward, and
      - { 4. Employer and employed.

## CHAPTER III

## DIFFERENT FORMS OF GOVERNMENT

**1. Patriarchal Government**—Governments have existed in a great variety of forms. Most existing governments are, more or less, mixtures of the different kinds. The earliest governments of which we have any knowledge are the patriarchal. *Patriarch*, from the Greek *pater*, father, and *archos*, chief, or head, means the father and ruler of a family. This kind of government prevailed in the early ages of the world, and is the form adapted to a state of society where the people dwell together in families or tribes, and are not yet formed into states or nations. Abraham was a patriarchal ruler.

**2. Theocracy**—After their departure from Egypt, the government of the Hebrews was a *theocracy*. This word is from *theos*, God, and *kratos*, power, and signifies a government by those who are also the religious rulers, or, as it is claimed, by the immediate direction of God. The laws by which they were governed they believed were given to them on Mount Sinai by God himself, their leader and king.

**3. Most Common Forms**—But the most common forms of government are monarchy, aristocracy, and democracy. Many claim that all kinds of government may be reduced to one of these three. For example, the patriarchal government is but a kind of monarchy. The power of government is, in a general sense, called the *supreme power*, or *sovereignty*.

**4. Monarchy**—The form of government in which

the supreme power is in the hands of one person is called a *monarchy*. The word *monarch* is from two Greek words, *monos*, sole or only, and *archos*, a chief; and is a general name for a single ruler, whether he be called king, emperor, or prince. A government in which all power resides in or proceeds from one person is an *absolute* monarchy. If the power of the monarch is restrained by laws or by some other power, it is called a *limited* monarchy. The English Government is a limited monarchy. A monarchy is called *hereditary* in which the crown passes from father to son, or from the monarch to his successor, by inheritance. On the death of a sovereign, the eldest son is usually heir to the crown. A monarchy is *elective* where, on the death of the ruler, his successor is appointed by an election. Only a few such monarchies have existed.

**5. Despotism**—An absolute monarchy is sometimes called *despotism*. The words *despot* and *tyrant* at first meant simply a *single* ruler. They are now applied, for the most part, to rulers who exercise authority over their subjects with severity. In an absolute despotism, the monarch has entire control over his subjects. They have no law but the will of the ruler, who has at command a large force of armed men to keep his people in subjection. The governments of Russia and Turkey are more despotic than any others in Europe.

**6. Aristocracy** is the form of government in which the power is exercised by a privileged order of men, distinguished for their rank and wealth. The word *aristocracy* is from the Greek word *aristos*, best, and *kratos*, power, or *krateo*, to govern; and meant, originally, government by the best men. It is also used



for the nobility of a country under a monarchical government. *Nobles* are persons of rank above the common people, and bear some title of honor. The titles of the English nobility are duke, marquis, earl, viscount, and baron. These titles are hereditary, being derived from birth. In some cases they are conferred upon persons by the king.

**7. Democracy** is government by the people; the word democracy being from the Greek *demos*, the people, and *krateo*, to govern. In a government purely democratic, the great body of freemen meet in one assembly to make and execute the laws. There were some such governments in ancient Greece; but they necessarily comprised small territories, scarcely more than a single town. The freemen of a state could not all meet in a single assembly.

**8. A Republic** is that kind of democracy in which the power to enact and execute the laws is exercised by representatives, who are persons elected by the people to act for them. The people not only enact the laws and execute them through the representatives whom they elect, but also adopt their own constitution or form of government, and thus all power comes from the people, the government being properly called a *representative democracy*. A republic is sometimes also called a *commonwealth*, because its object is the common happiness of all.

**9. In this Country** the people are everywhere under two governments, the State and the National Government. The United States is a republic, and so, also, is each State. Each State has given up to the Nation those powers and duties which naturally belong to a nation in its relations with foreign powers, as the

right to make war or treaties, and also has given up the power to make laws on subjects in which all the people in the country are interested together, as commerce, the coining of money, and patents. But the State retains all the powers it has not given up, and both State and National Governments are independent of each other, each in its own sphere. The *Territories*, until they become States, are under the United States Government. It grants them, to a certain extent, through Congress, self-government, on the plan of the State governments, but it can take it away at any time.

## KINDS OF GOVERNMENT

### I. MONARCHY; this may be,

- |   |                 |                     |
|---|-----------------|---------------------|
| { | 1. As to Power, |                     |
|   |                 | { 1. Absolute, or   |
|   |                 | { 2. Limited.       |
| { | 2. As to Title, |                     |
|   |                 | { 1. Hereditary, or |
|   |                 | { 2. Elective.      |

### II. ARISTOCRACY;

### III. DEMOCRACY; this may be,

- |   |                       |
|---|-----------------------|
| { | 1. Pure Democracy, or |
|   | 2. Republic.          |



## DIVISION II

### STATE GOVERNMENTS

#### SECTION I.—INTRODUCTORY

THEIR BASIS, THE CONSTITUTION; ELECTIONS; THREE DEPART-  
MENTS

#### CHAPTER IV

CONSTITUTIONS : THEIR NATURE, OBJECT, AND ESTAB-  
LISHMENT

**1. Republic the Best Government**—Of all the different forms of government which have existed, a republican government, on the plan of that which has been established in this country, is believed to be best adapted to secure the liberties of a people, and to promote the general welfare. Under the reign of a wise and virtuous ruler, the rights of person and property may be fully enjoyed, and the people may be in a good degree prosperous. But the requisite virtue and wisdom combined have seldom been found in any one man (*i.e.*, a monarchy), or a body of men (*i.e.*, an aristocracy). And, as we in this country believe, experience has proved that the objects of civil government may be best secured by a written constitution founded upon the will or consent of the people. Each State in the Union has such a constitution, and the Nation itself has one.

**2. Constitution**—The word *constitute* is from the Latin, and signifies *to set*, to fix, to establish. *Constitution*, when used in a political sense, means the established form of government of a state. In a free government, like ours, it is properly called the *political law*, being established by the people as a body politic. (Page 16, § 8.) It is also called the *fundamental law*, because it is the *foundation* of all other laws of the state, and of all the powers of the state, legislative, executive, and judicial.

**3. Nature**—A constitution is in the nature of an agreement between a whole community, or body politic, and each of its members. This agreement or contract implies that each one binds himself to the whole, and the whole binds itself to each one, that all shall be governed by certain laws and regulations for the common good.

**4. Convention**—In forming a constitution, the people must act collectively. But their number is too large to meet in a single assembly. Therefore they choose a small number to act for them. One or more are chosen in each county, or smaller district, and are called delegates. A *delegate* is a person appointed by another with power to transact business as his representative. The assembly composed of the delegates so elected is called a *convention*, a name given to most public meetings other than legislative assemblies. The convention draws up in proper form a paper containing the fundamental laws and general form of government, under which it thinks the people wish to be governed.

**5. Adoption by People**—But what has thus been prepared by the convention is not yet a constitution.

It is only a draft of one, and cannot, in general, become a constitution without the consent of the people to be given at an election. If a majority of the persons voting at such election vote in favor of the proposed constitution, it is adopted, and becomes the constitution of the State.

**6. Amendment**—A constitution usually provides for its own amendment. Amendments are, generally, proposed and passed by the legislature, sometimes on two successive years, and then submitted to the people.

**7. Value**—One of the most valuable rights of the people under a free government is the right to have a constitution of their own choice. Indeed, it is in this right that their freedom principally consists. It is by the constitution that their rights are secured. The legislature can pass no laws that the constitution forbids, and if they should enact unjust and oppressive laws, the people, having by their constitution reserved the right to displace them, may do so by electing others in their stead.\*

**8. Other Governments**—In an absolute monarchy the people have neither the right to establish their own form of government, nor the right to elect their law-makers. The will of the monarch is the only law. In a limited monarchy they have some political rights. In Great Britain the people elect representatives to the House of Commons, which is the most important part

---

\* It would seem to follow from this that the people of any State, having the right to select their own form of government, might, if they wished, choose any form; for example, a monarchy. But it must be remembered that this country is a nation, and not a collection of States, and that the United States Constitution has guaranteed to every State in the Union a republican government, or, in other words, forbidden any other form.

of the legislature; but they did not originally establish the form of government. The English have no written constitution. What is called the English constitution consists of the body of fundamental laws, principles, and customs which in the course of centuries have become securely fixed. But Parliament, the English law-making body has the power to make any law it sees fit.

## CHAPTER V.

### QUALIFICATIONS OF ELECTORS.

**1. Electors**—One of the first provisions usually inserted in the constitution of a free state is that which declares who shall be allowed to take a part in the government; that is, to whom the political power shall be intrusted. The political power of the people consists chiefly in the right to vote, called the *right of suffrage*. The constitution regulates this, and does not give it to every one in the state, but only to such as are qualified to exercise it understandingly. Those who have the right of suffrage are called *electors*.\* When, therefore, we speak of the people politically, we mean those only who are qualified electors.

**2. Age**—An elector must be twenty-one years of age. Before that age young men have not the necessary knowledge and judgment to act with discretion. Some are competent at an earlier age; but a constitution can make no distinction between citizens. It has, therefore, in accordance with the general opinion, fixed the time at the age of twenty-one when men shall be

---

\* These are not Presidential Electors. The word is used here in a general sense. For Presidential Electors, see page 169.

deemed capable of exercising the rights and performing the duties of freemen.

**3. Sex**—It is a general rule that no woman can vote, although the question has been settled in some States in favor of woman suffrage.

**4. Residence**—That a man may vote understandingly, he must have resided long enough in the State to have become acquainted with its government and laws, and to have learned the character and qualifications of the persons for whom he votes. State constitutions therefore require that electors shall have resided in the State for a specified period of time, varying, however, in the different States from three months to two years. In most of the States they must also have resided for some months in the county or district, and be residents of the town in which they offer to vote.

**5. Aliens**—Persons born in foreign countries are *aliens*, and in most States have no right to vote. They are presumed to have too little knowledge of our government, and to feel too little interest in public affairs, on their first coming hither, to be duly qualified for the exercise of political power. Laws, however, have been enacted for naturalizing aliens after they shall have resided here long enough to become acquainted with and attached to our government. By naturalization they become citizens, entitled to all the privileges of native or natural-born citizens except election to the office of President or Vice-President. (See page 148.)

**6. Criminals**—It is provided also in State constitutions that electors convicted of infamous crimes are disfranchised. *Franchise* is a right or privilege. The right of voting is called the *elective franchise*; and an elector when deprived of this privilege is *dis*

*franchised*. Men guilty of high crimes are deemed unfit to be intrusted with so important a duty as that of electing the persons who are to make and execute the laws of the State. It is provided, however, that if such persons are pardoned before the expiration of the term for which they were sentenced to be imprisoned, their forfeited rights are restored.

**7. Idiots and lunatics** have no right to vote, for the reason that they cannot use it understandingly.

**8. Property**—In general it is not now necessary for an elector to own property. By the earliest constitutions of many of the old States, electors were required to own property, or to have paid rents or taxes, to a certain amount. In the constitutions of the newer States, and the amended constitutions of the old States, property has not been made a qualification of an elector. In many States, however, paupers have no vote.

**9. Color**—Up to the adoption of the fifteenth amendment to the Constitution of the United States, in 1870, colored people, whether slave or free, could not vote in the Southern States, and in only three or four of the Northern States. Now, however, in every State they are entitled to vote, and are on an equal footing with white men, except that in some of the Southern States an educational qualification is imposed by recently enacted laws.

Recent laws have greatly restricted the immigration of the Chinese. They have no political rights in this country.

Thus it will be seen that while all the people in a State have civil rights, less than half have political rights.



## CHAPTER VI

## ELECTIONS

**1. When Held**—For the convenient exercise of political power, as well as for the purposes of government generally, the territory of a State is divided into districts of small extent. A State is divided into counties, and these are divided into towns or townships. The people of every county and every town have power to manage their local concerns. The electors of the State meet every year in their respective towns for the election of officers. Governors in most of the States are elected every two or four years, but many officers elected by the people are chosen every year. All the electors of the State may vote for State officers, but only residents of the respective towns or counties can vote for the town and county officers. In most States the general State election is held in October or November.

**2. Inspectors of Election**—Elections are conducted by persons designated by law, or chosen by the electors of the town, for that purpose. It is their duty to preserve order, and to see that the business is properly done. They are usually called *judges of election* or *inspectors of election*. Persons also (usually two) serve as clerks. Each clerk keeps a list of the names of the persons voting, which is called a *poll-list*. *Poll*, which is said to be a Saxon word, signifies *head*, and has come to mean person. By a further change it has been made to signify an election or the place where the voting is done.

**3. Voting**—The polls, *i.e.*, the voting places, are generally open one day, from sunrise to sunset. The inspectors receive from each voter a ballot, which is a piece of paper containing the names of the persons voted for, and the title of the office to which each of them is to be elected. The voting in most of the States is by ballot, but in one or two it is *viva voce*; that is, by the elector speaking the name of the person for whom he votes.

**4. Challenging**—If no objection is made to an elector's voting, the ballot is put into the box and the clerks enter his name on the poll-list. If the inspectors suspect that a person offering to vote is not a qualified elector, they may question him upon his oath in respect to his age, the term of his residence in the State and county, and citizenship. Any bystander also may question his right to vote. This is called *challenging*. A person thus challenged is not allowed to vote until the challenge is withdrawn, or his qualifications are either proved by the testimony of other persons or sworn to by himself.

**5. Registration**—In a number of States voters are registered, especially in large cities. A list is made some days before the election, of the names of all who present themselves and, upon examination, are shown to be qualified electors; and those only whose names have been registered are allowed to vote on election-day. Thus many interruptions to voting by the examination of voters at the polls, and much illegal voting, are prevented.

**6. Canvassing**—After the polls are closed, the box is opened and the ballots are counted. This is called *canvassing* the votes. If the number of ballots agrees



with the number of names on the poll-lists, it is presumed no mistake has been made either in voting or in keeping the lists. If there are more ballots than names, in some States the election will be void, in others a number of ballots equivalent to the excess will be drawn out and destroyed. If the election is one for the choosing of town officers, it is there determined who are elected, and their election is publicly declared. The election of county and State officers cannot be determined by the town canvassers. A statement of the votes given in each town for the persons voted for is sent to the county canvassers, who, from the returns of votes from all the towns, determine and declare the election of the officers chosen for the county. To determine the election of State officers, and of such others as are elected for districts comprising more than one county, a statement of the votes given for the several candidates is sent by the several boards of county canvassers to the State canvassers, who, from the returns of votes from the several counties, determine the election of the State officers.

**7. Number Necessary**—In most of the States persons are elected by a plurality of votes. An election by *plurality* is when the person elected has received a higher number of votes than any other, though such number be less than half of all the votes given. Suppose, for example, three candidates receive 1,000 votes: one receives 450; another, 300; the third, 250 votes. The first, having the highest number, though not a majority, is elected. In most of the States of New England a *majority*—that is, more than one half of all the votes given—is necessary to the election of many of the higher officers. The least number of votes out

of 1,000, by which a person can be elected by this rule, is 501.

**8. Objections**—Either of these modes is open to objection. When a simple plurality effects an election, 1,000 votes may be so divided upon three candidates as to elect one by 334 votes; or of four candidates, one may be elected by 251 votes, and against the wishes of nearly three fourths of the electors. The objection to the other mode is that if no person receives a majority of all the votes, another election must be held. Numerous trials have, in some instances, been necessary to effect a choice; and the people of a district have remained for a time without a representative in the State or national legislature.

## CHAPTER VII

### DIVISION OF POWERS OF GOVERNMENT

**1. Three Departments**—Government is divided into three distinct divisions, or, in other words, sovereign power may be exercised in three directions: in making laws, in enforcing them, and in judging whether particular cases come under certain laws. In all free countries these powers are exercised by three separate departments, called the *legislative*, *executive*, and *judicial* departments. In a monarchy, though they may exist, the other two are more or less under the control of the executive department, the monarch. In this country the three departments exist in every State and are kept distinct from each other.

**2. Legislative**—The legislative department is that by which the laws of the State are made, and is called,

the *legislature*. Its object is to make such laws as are not embodied in the constitution. The constitution establishes not only the form and the departments of government, but also certain broad principles of law, which the legislature cannot violate; but it leaves to the legislature the making of the particular laws to carry out those principles in detail, and there are many subjects on which the legislature is unrestrained. It would be impossible for a State to adopt, as a constitution, a system of laws that would not need change and addition.

**3. Its Divisions**—The legislature is composed of two bodies, or houses, as they are called, the members of each being elected by the people. Both must agree to a measure before it becomes a law. In limited monarchies where one branch of the legislature is elective, the other is an aristocratic body, composed of men of wealth and dignity, as the British House of Lords.

**4. Executive**—The executive department is intrusted with the power of executing, or carrying into effect, the laws of the State. Its principal officer is a governor, who is elected by the people. He is assisted by a number of other officers, some of whom are elected by the people; others are appointed in such manner as the constitution or laws prescribe.

**5. Judicial**—The judicial department is that by which justice is administered to the citizens. Its duty is to decide the meaning of laws, and whether particular cases fall within them. It embraces the several courts of the State. All judges and justices of the peace are judicial officers.

**6. Separation**—Experience has shown the propriety of dividing the civil power into these three depart-

ments, and of confining the officers of each department to the powers and duties belonging to the same. Those who make the laws should not exercise the power of executing them; nor should they who either make or execute the laws sit in judgment over those who are brought before them for trial. It would give too much power to one, and would endanger the liberty of the people. Yet in many instances this principle is violated to a degree. In many States the governor must approve a measure before it can become a law, and thus he has legislative power. In some he appoints the judges, and so has judicial power.

## DEPARTMENTS OF GOVERNMENT

### I. LEGISLATIVE—LAW-MAKING: consists of

- { 1. Senate,
- 2. House of Representatives, and
- { 3. Governor (in many States).

### II. EXECUTIVE—LAW-EXECUTING: represented by

- { 1. Governor, and
- { 2. All other executive officers.

### III. JUDICIAL—LAW-INTERPRETING AND APPLYING: consists of

All the judges.

## SECTION II—LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT

## CHAPTER VIII

## LEGISLATURE: HOW CONSTITUTED

**1. Two Houses**—The legislature of every State in the Union is composed of two houses—a *senate* and a *house of representatives*, sometimes called the *upper* and *lower house*.\* In most of the States the two houses together are called the *general assembly*.

*a. Senate*

**2. Character**—The senate, as well as the other house, is a representative body, its members being elected by the people to represent them. It is a much smaller body than the lower house, and consists, generally, of from twenty-five to fifty members in the different States. It was designed to be, and is, a more

---

\*Though both are representative bodies, only the lower house is called the "House of Representatives." The reason for this may be: Under the governments of the Colonies, while yet subject to Great Britain, there was but one representative assembly. The other branch of the legislature was called a *council*, consisting of a small number of men who were appointed by the King. After the Colonies became free and independent States, the *senate* was substituted for the old *council*, and the other house kept its old name.

The lower house in the States of New York, Wisconsin, Nevada, and California, is called the assembly; in Maryland, Virginia, and West Virginia, the house of delegates; in North Carolina, the house of commons; and in New Jersey, the general assembly.

select body, composed of men chosen with reference to their superior ability or their greater experience in public affairs.

**3. Terms**—Senators are chosen for terms of four years in about half the States; in the rest for terms of one, two, or three years. In most of the States in which senators are elected for longer terms than one year, they are not all elected at the same time. They are divided into classes, and those of one class go out of office one year, and those of another class another year; so that only a part of the senators are elected every year, or every two, or three, or four years.

**4. Apportionment**—This means the division of the State into portions; from each portion its inhabitants elect one senator. Senators are differently apportioned in different States. In some States they are apportioned among the several counties, so that the number to be elected in each county shall be in proportion to the number of its inhabitants. In others they are elected by districts, equal in number to the number of senators to be chosen in the State, and a senator is elected in each district. The districts are to contain, as nearly as may be, an equal number of inhabitants, and sometimes they comprise several counties.

### *b. House of Representatives*

**5. Character**—This house also is elective, and is a larger body than the senate. It consists, generally, of from one hundred to two hundred members in the different States.

**6. Terms**—In most of the States members are elected for two years' terms; in the others, chiefly the Eastern States, annually.



**7. Apportionment**—Since the number of representatives is much larger than that of senators, the districts from which they are elected will, in the same State, be much smaller. Representatives are apportioned among the counties in proportion to the population in each. In some States they are elected in districts of equal population, counties being sometimes divided in the formation of districts. In the New England States representatives are apportioned among the towns.

*c. Provisions affecting both*

**8. Census**—The different modes of apportioning members of the legislature have in view the same object—equal representation; that is, giving a member to the same number of inhabitants throughout the State. But in some counties the population increases more rapidly than in others. The representation then becomes unequal, being no longer in proportion to population. In order to keep the representation throughout the State as nearly equal as possible, the constitution requires that, at stated times, the people of the State shall be numbered, and a new apportionment of senators and representatives be made among the several counties according to the number of inhabitants in each county; or if the State is one in which members of the legislature are chosen in districts, a new division of the State is made into districts. This enumeration or numbering of the people is called the *census*, and is taken in some States every ten years, in others oftener. But many States depend on the census which the United States takes every ten years.

**9. Qualifications**—The constitution also prescribes

the qualifications of senators and representatives. If, as qualifications for an elector, full age, citizenship, and a considerable term of residence in the State and county are properly required, as we have seen (page 26), they must be at least equally necessary for those who make the laws. In no State, therefore, are any but qualified electors eligible to the office of senator or representative. In some States greater age and longer residence are required ; and in some the age and term of residence have been still further increased in the case of senators. The property qualification formerly necessary for members of the legislature, as well as for voters, has been almost entirely abolished.

**10. Vacancy**—If a member of the legislature dies or resigns his office before the expiration of the term for which he was chosen, the vacancy is filled by the election of another person at the next general election, or at a special election called for that purpose, or in such other manner as the constitution may provide. But a person chosen to fill a vacancy holds the office only for the remainder of the term of him whose place he was chosen to supply.

**11. Salary**—Each member has a salary, fixed by law.

## CHAPTER IX

### MEETINGS AND ORGANIZATION

**1. How Often**—The legislature meets as often as the constitution requires : in about half of the States annually, in the others biennially, or once in two years. A legislative session includes the daily meetings of a legislature from the time of its first assem-



bling to the day of final adjournment. Thus we say the session commenced in January and ended in March. The word *session* has reference also to a single sitting, from the hour at which the members assemble on any day to the time of adjournment on the same day. Thus we say the legislature holds a daily session of four hours; or, it holds two sessions a day, as the case may be.

**2. Place**—Meetings of the legislature are held at a certain place permanently fixed by law of the State, at which the principal State officers keep their offices. Hence it is called the *seat of government*, or, perhaps more frequently, the *capital* of the State. *Capital* is from the Latin *caput*, the head, and has come to mean chief, or the highest. In this country the word *capital*, applied to a city, now generally indicates the seat of government.

**3. Organization**—When the two houses have assembled in their respective chambers, and the oath of office has been administered, each house proceeds to *organize*. This consists in appointing proper officers, and in determining the right of members to their seats. Each house is the sole judge of who has been elected to it. The first officer elected is the presiding officer, or chairman, who is usually called *speaker*. The lieutenant-governor, in States in which there is one, presides in the senate, and is called *president of the senate*. In the absence of the presiding officer, a temporary speaker or president is chosen, who is called speaker, or president, *pro tempore*, commonly abbreviated *pro tem.*, which is a Latin phrase, meaning *for the time*.

**4. Presiding Officer's Duty**—The duty of the person presiding is to keep order and to see that the busi-

ness of the house is conducted according to certain established rules. When a vote is to be taken he puts the question, and when taken he declares the question to be carried or lost. This part of the speaker's business is similar to that of the chairman of an ordinary public meeting.

**5. Minor Officers**—The other officers chosen by each house are: a *clerk*, to keep a record or journal of its proceedings, to take charge of papers, etc.; a *sergeant-at-arms*, to arrest members and other persons guilty of disorderly conduct, to compel the attendance of absent members, and to do other business of a like nature; also one or more *door-keepers*. The officers mentioned in this section are not chosen from the members of the house.

**6. Quorum**—The constitution determines what portion of the members shall constitute a quorum to do business, *i.e.*, how many must be present. *Quorum* is the Latin of the English words *of whom*, and has strangely come to signify the *number* or *portion* of any body of men who have power to act. In most States a majority will constitute a quorum; in some a greater number is required, two-thirds or three-fifths.

**7. Proceedings Open**—Constitutions generally require also that the proceedings of legislative bodies shall be open to public inspection. The doors may be closed against spectators only when the public good shall require secrecy. And that the people may be fully informed of what is done, each house is required to keep and publish a journal of its proceedings.

**8. Interruptions**—Provision is also made, either by the constitution or by law, against injury or interruption to the business of the legislature. Members may

not, by any prosecution at law, except for crimes and misdemeanors, be hindered during their attendance at the sessions of the legislature, nor in going to or returning from the same. Each house may compel the attendance of absent members. It may for good cause expel a member and punish not only its members and officers, but other persons, for disorderly conduct or for obstructing its proceedings.

## CHAPTER X

### MANNER OF ENACTING LAWS

**1. Power**—The legislature of every State has power to enact any law, on any subject, not forbidden by the Constitution of the United States or its own constitution, and not at variance with any law of Congress. In this particular the extent of its power is broader than that of Congress, for the latter can legislate only on the particular subjects named in the United States Constitution. The subjects which the United States Constitution forbids to the State legislatures will be found in a later chapter (page 163). The State constitutions also contain prohibitions meant to restrain the legislature from making oppressive laws, or such as would endanger the people's absolute rights. (See page 15, § 5.) If any laws are passed contrary to these constitutional provisions, they will be void and of no effect.

**2. Rules**—Constitutions prescribe no method of passing laws. They leave it entirely to the legislature itself. But it would be impossible for such a body to act without some order, and so each legislature estab-

lishes certain rules, which are seldom departed from. But, though ordinarily followed, these rules may be departed from, and the law will be just as valid, provided a quorum is present and a sufficient number vote for it.

**3. Governor's Message**—When the two houses are duly organized and ready for business, the governor sends to both houses a written communication called *a message*, in which, as the constitution requires, he gives to the legislature information of the condition of the affairs of the State, and recommends such measures as he judges necessary and expedient. The message is read to each house by its clerk.

**4. Other Measures**—But the measures to which the governor calls the attention of the legislature are but a small portion of those which are considered and acted upon. Many are introduced by individual members. Others are brought into notice by the petitions of the people in different parts of the State. *Petition* generally signifies a request or prayer. As here used, it means a written request to the legislature for some favor—generally for a law granting some benefit or relief to the petitioners. Petitions are sent to members, usually to those who represent the counties or districts in which the petitioners live, and are by these members presented to the house. Laws may be introduced in either house.

**5. Committees**—The subjects to be acted on by a legislature are very numerous, and if the whole house carefully examined each measure and listened to all the reasons why the measure was necessary it could not finish half its labor. So committees are appointed at the beginning of the session, consisting of from

three to seven members, each committee having charge of some particular subject: such as, the committee on finance, or the money matters of the State, called the ways and means committee; the committee on agriculture; on manufactures; on railroads; on education; and a great many other subjects. As soon as a measure is introduced into the house it is referred to its appropriate committee, to examine into its necessity and report to the house the result of the examination. These committees are so numerous that every member is on at least one or two, and are called *standing committees*, because they continue through the session. When a question arises having no relation to any particular subject on which there is a standing committee, it is usually referred to a *special* or *select* committee appointed to consider this particular matter.

**6. Committee Meetings**—Committees meet in private rooms during hours when the house is not in session; and any person wishing to be heard in favor of or against a proposed measure may appear before the committee having it in charge. Having duly considered the subject, the committee reports to the house the information it has obtained, with the opinion whether the measure ought or ought not to become a law. Measures reported against by committees seldom receive any further notice from the house.

**7. Bills**—If a committee reports favorably upon a subject, it usually brings in a bill with its report and recommends its passage. A *bill* is the form or draft of a law. Sometimes it is prepared in correct form before it is introduced into the house or referred to the committee. In other cases, as, for instance, when

the subject is brought before the house by petition, the committee prepares it.

**8. Three Readings**—A bill before it is passed is read three times, on three separate days. In some legislatures the rules allow the first and second readings to be on the same day. The first and second readings consist often of merely reading the title or the enacting clause. Then amendments to it may be introduced, and adopted or rejected. Finally, the third reading is had, this time the clerk really reading the bill, except where it is a long one, and the final vote is taken. Debate on the bill is not usually had until after the second reading. There are a great many rules covering every point which may arise, such as the order of business, and when debate shall be allowed; and these rules are usually followed: but sometimes, in cases of exigency, all the rules are suspended and a bill is introduced and passed immediately, without being referred to a committee or even being read.

**9. Passage**—When the final vote is to be taken, the speaker puts the question: "Shall the bill pass?" If a majority of the members present vote in the affirmative (the speaker also voting), the bill is passed; if a majority vote in the negative, or if the ayes and noes are equal, the bill is lost. In a senate where a lieutenant-governor presides, not being properly a member, he does not vote, except when the ayes and noes are equal, in which case there is said to be a *tie*; and he determines the question by his vote, which is called the *casting* vote. In some States, on the final passage of a bill, a bare majority of the members present is not sufficient to pass it, in case any members are absent. The constitutions of those States require the votes



of a majority of *all the members elected* to each house.

**10. Other House**—When a bill has passed one house it is sent to the other, where it passes through the same forms of action ; that is, it is referred to a committee, reported by the committee to the house, and is read three times before a vote is taken on its passage. This vote having been taken, the bill is returned to the house from which it was received. If it has been amended, the amendments must be agreed to by the first house, or the second must recede from its amendments, or the amendments must be so modified as to secure the approval of both houses, before the bill can become a law.

**11. Veto**—But in many of the States a bill, when passed by both houses, is not yet a law. As the two houses may concur in adopting an unwise measure, an additional safeguard is provided against the enactment of bad laws, by requiring all bills to be sent to the governor for examination and approval. If he approves a bill, he signs it, and it is law ; if he does not sign it, it is not a law. In refusing to sign a bill, he is said to *negative* or *veto* the bill. *Veto*, Latin, means *I forbid*.

**12. No Absolute Veto**—But no governor has full power to prevent the passage of a law. If he does not approve a bill, he must return it to the house in which it originated, stating his objections to it ; and if it shall be again passed by both houses, it will be a law without the governor's assent. But in such cases greater majorities are generally required to pass a law. In some States a majority of two-thirds of the members present is necessary ; in others, a majority of *all the members elected*. In some States if the governor does not return



a bill within a certain number of days, it becomes a law without his signature and without being considered a second time.

**13. Taking Effect**—Laws become operative the minute the last act is done; in those States where the governor must approve them, the minute he signs his name, unless the law itself provides otherwise. But this would often create great hardship, for one might violate a law before he had time to hear of it. Therefore constitutions often provide that a law shall not take effect for some days after its passage, or the law itself may so provide.

## SECTION III.—EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT

### CHAPTER XI

#### STATE OFFICERS

**1. Classification**—The executive officers of a State may be divided into two classes: those whose duties relate to the whole State, as the governor or the attorney-general, and those whose duties relate only to some particular portion of it, as the sheriffs. The first class are elected by all the people of the State, and have their offices at the capital; the latter are elected by the people of the particular district (county, town, or city), and have their offices there. In this chapter we will treat only of the first class.

**2. Governor**—The chief executive officer of a State is the governor. In a monarchy the chief executive

officer is the monarch himself. But there is this difference: in a monarchy the monarch is the source of power, and all inferior officers are his agents and responsible to him alone; in a republic the people are the source of power, and inferior officers are their agents, responsible to them with the governor, and not to him. He is called the chief officer because he has the highest duties to perform.

**3. Term**—The governor is elected by the people, for different terms in the different States. In most States the term is either two or four years; in some New England States it is one year.

**4. Qualifications**—The qualifications for the office of governor are also different in the different States. To be eligible, a person must have been for a certain number of years a citizen of the United States, and for a term of years preceding his election a resident of the State. He must also be above a certain age, which in a majority of the States is thirty years; and in some States he must own a certain amount of property.

**5. Executive Powers**—The governor's executive powers and duties are numerous and important. He represents the State in its dealings with other States. He is commander-in-chief of the military force of the State, and can call it out in times of insurrection. He is to take care that the laws are faithfully executed, and may require information at any time from the different executive officers concerning the condition of affairs in their respective departments. He communicates by message to the legislature, at every session, information of the condition of the State, and recommends such measures as he judges necessary and expedient. He may convene the legislature on extraordi-

nary occasions; that is, when some important matter arises requiring immediate attention.

**6. Legislative Powers**—In most States the governor has the veto power. (See p. 45, § 11.)

**7. Judicial Powers**—A governor has power to grant reprieves and pardons, except in cases of impeachment, and, in some States, of treason. To *reprieve* is to postpone or delay for a time the execution of the sentence of death upon a criminal. To *pardon* is to annul the sentence by forgiving the offence and releasing the offender. A governor may also *commute* a sentence, which is to exchange one penalty or punishment for another of less severity; as, when a person sentenced to suffer death is ordered to be imprisoned.

**8. Appointments**—The governor also appoints some executive or judicial officers. The power of appointment varies greatly in the different States: in some he appoints all the higher executive and judicial officers, such as the secretary of state, the attorney-general, or the judges of the courts; in others, those are all elected, and he only appoints some lower officers, such as notaries. He almost never has the power to appoint legislative officers. He also fills vacancies in executive and judicial offices, until the next election, when they occur through death or resignation. He has in some cases the power of removal for misconduct.

These are only the principal powers and duties devolved on the governor. He has many others.

**9. Councils**—In a few States an *executive council* is elected by the people, whose duty it is to advise the governor. In many cases, as, for instance, appointments, he must obtain their consent.

**10. Lieutenant-Governor**—In some of the States

this office does not exist.\* He has few duties. In most States where the office exists, he presides in the senate, in which he has only a casting vote. The chief object of this office seems to be to provide a suitable person to fill the vacancy in the office of governor in case the latter should die, resign, be removed, or otherwise become incompetent.

**11. Assistant Officers**—Among the executive officers who assist in the administration of the government, there are in every State some or all of the following: a secretary of state, a comptroller or auditor, a treasurer, and an attorney-general. In some States they are appointed by the governor, in others by the legislature, and in others they are elected by the people.

**12. The Secretary of State** has charge of the State papers and records. He keeps a record of the official acts and proceedings of the legislature and of the executive departments, and has the care of the books, records, deeds of the State, parchments, the laws enacted by the legislature, and all other papers and documents required by law to be kept in his office.

**13. The State Comptroller**, in some States called *auditor*, manages the financial concerns of the State; that is, the business relating to the money, debts, land, and other property of the State. He examines and adjusts accounts and claims against the State, and superintends the collection of moneys due the State. When money is to be paid out he draws a warrant on the State treasurer.

**14. The State Treasurer** has charge of all the moneys of the State, and pays out the same as

---

\*Viz.: Alabama, Arkansas, Georgia, Maine, Maryland, New Hampshire, New Jersey, Oregon, Tennessee, and West Virginia.

directed by law, and keeps an accurate account of such moneys.

**15. Official Bonds**—Auditors, treasurers, and other officers intrusted with the care and management of money or other property are generally required, before they enter on the duties of their offices, to give bonds, in sums of certain amount specified in the law, with sufficient sureties, for the faithful performance of their duties. The sureties are persons who sign the bond with the officer, and bind themselves to pay the State all damages arising from neglect of duty on the part of the officer, not exceeding the sum mentioned in the bond.

**16. The Attorney-General** is a lawyer who acts for the State in lawsuits in which the State is a party. He prosecutes persons indebted to the State, and causes to be brought to trial persons charged with certain crimes. He also gives his opinion on questions of law submitted to him by the governor, the legislature, and the executive officers.

**17. Other Officers**—There are also in some States the following officers: a *surveyor-general*, who superintends the surveying of the lands belonging to the State, and who keeps in his office maps describing the bounds of the counties and townships; a *superintendent of schools* or *superintendent of public instruction*, who attends to many matters connected with the public schools of the State; a *State printer*, who prints the laws and all State papers; a *State librarian*, who has charge of the State library; and others.

## CHAPTER XII

## COUNTY OFFICERS

**1. Reasons for Division**—A State is divided into counties,\* and each county is divided into towns, townships, or districts.† There are several reasons for this division: for convenience in the legislative, executive, and judicial departments. Some laws may be necessary in some parts of the State that are not needed in others, and which the people of those parts can better make for themselves; and the boundaries must be clearly fixed that it may be known who comes under the regulations or who can make them. So, too, there are many executive officers, such as sheriffs and collectors of taxes, but each must have his jurisdiction confined to particular limits or there would be great confusion. There are many lower courts, too, and the jurisdiction of each must be clearly defined.

**2. Origin of County**—Counties in England were formerly districts governed by *counts* or earls, from

---

\* Counties in the same State are about the same size, and have about the same population; but the counties of one State as compared with those of another vary very greatly as to number, size, and population. In 1892, Massachusetts had 14 counties, Texas 261, and Oregon 31. In Massachusetts there were about 500 square miles in a county, in Texas 1,005, and in Oregon 3,050; in Massachusetts the population in a county was about 160,000, in Texas 8,500, and in Oregon 10,000. Counties exist in every State except South Carolina and Louisiana, where districts and parishes prevail.

† Towns or townships also vary in size, but perhaps a fair average would be from five to ten miles square. Towns do not exist, generally, in the Southern States or the extreme Western States. There the county is divided into districts for special purposes.



which comes the name of *county*. A county was also called *shire*, and an officer was appointed by the count or earl to perform certain acts in the principal town in the county, which was called *shire town*, and the officer was called *shire-reeve*, or *sheriff*. He was a more important officer than the sheriff of a county in this country now is. The court-house and other county buildings are situated at the principal place in the county, and it is called the *county-seat*, or *capital*.

**3. Political Importance**—In the Southern and extreme Western States the county is the most important political division, and exercises most of the local governmental powers, such as many important powers with regard to the establishment of common schools, regulation of roads, laying and collection of taxes, care of the poor, etc. In New England the town exercises most of these powers, and the county has very little importance. In the remainder—that is, in the Middle and Western States (except those far west)—these powers are divided between the county and town.

**4. Corporations**—Counties, towns, cities, and villages are *municipal corporations*. Let us see what a corporation is. Persons, in a legal sense, are divided into two classes, *natural persons* and *corporations*. Natural Persons are human beings, as God made them; Corporations are artificial persons, or bodies, created by law. In other words, a *corporation* (also called a *body politic*, or *body corporate*) is an association of persons authorized by law to transact business under a common name and as a single person. The laws of the State give such authority to the inhabitants of counties and towns. The people of a town or county have power,



to some extent, to buy, hold, and sell property, and sue and be sued, as single individuals. Therefore they are corporations. So, also, is the State itself. But there are two kinds of corporations: *public*, or *municipal*, and *private*. Public, or municipal corporations are those organized for purposes of government, such as counties, towns, cities, and villages; private corporations are all others, such as banks, railroad companies, and churches.

**5. County Commissioners**—We have seen that a county is a corporation, and that corporations have power to act as single persons. But a corporation must act by means of natural persons, *i.e.*, by its agents. The chief agent of a county—that is, the body which exercises the most important corporate powers—is a board of *county commissioners* (usually three). In a few States these powers are exercised by and in the name of the *board of supervisors*, which is composed of the supervisors of the several towns in the county, of whom there is one supervisor in each town. These boards have charge of the county property, and may make orders and contracts in relation to the building or repairing of the court-house, jail, and other county buildings. In those States in which the county exercises more political power than the town, these boards have many powers with regard to schools, roads, taxes, etc. The following are the more important county offices which exist in every State:

**6. County Treasurer**—There is in each county a *treasurer* to receive and pay out the moneys of the county, as required. There is also, in some States, a county *auditor* to examine and adjust the accounts and debts of the county. The business of county treasurers

and auditors in their respective counties is of the same nature as that of State auditors and treasurers, and they are required to give bonds in the same way. In States in which there is no county auditor, the duties of auditor are performed by the treasurer.

**7. Recorder**—There is also in each county a *register* or *recorder*, who records in books provided for that purpose all deeds, mortgages, and other instruments of writing required by law to be recorded. In New York and in some other States the business of a register or recorder is done by a county clerk, who is also clerk of the several courts held in the county. In some States deeds, mortgages, and other written instruments are recorded by the town clerks of the several towns.

**8. Sheriff**—Another county officer is a *sheriff*, whose duty it is to execute all warrants, writs, and other processes directed to him by the courts; to apprehend persons charged with crime; and to take charge of the jail and of the prisoners therein. It is his duty, also, to preserve the public peace; and he may cause all persons who break the public peace within his knowledge or view to give bonds, with sureties, for keeping the peace and for appearing at the next court to be held in the county, and to commit them to jail if they refuse to give such bonds. A sheriff is assisted by deputies.

**9. Coroner**—There are in each county one or more *coroners*, whose principal duty is to inquire into the cause of the death of persons who have died by violence, or suddenly, and by means unknown. Notice of the death of a person having so died is given to a coroner, who institutes an examination. A jury is summoned to attend the examination; witnesses are examined; and the jury give their opinion in writing as

to the cause and manner of the death. Such inquiry is called a *coroner's inquest*.

**10. The District Attorney** is a lawyer who attends all courts in the county in which persons are tried for crimes, and conducts the prosecution. As all crimes and breaches of the peace are considered as committed against the State, and prosecuted in its name, this attorney is sometimes called *State's attorney*, or *prosecuting attorney*.

**11. Other Officers**—There are often other officers in each county; such as, *assessors*, who assess the value of each one's property so that it may be known what tax he shall pay; *collectors of taxes*; a *county surveyor*; a *superintendent of schools*.

**12. Elected**—County officers are generally elected by the people of the county, for terms of from one to four years. Some of them are, in some of the States, appointed by some authority prescribed by the constitution or laws of the State.

**13. Whom They Represent**—While the different county officers are alike in this respect, that their jurisdiction extends only to their particular county, and also in this fact, that in their official acts they act as representatives or agents of the people; they differ from each other in this, that while some represent the people of the whole State (and in that sense may be called State officers), others represent only the people of their own county. Thus, when a sheriff arrests a man for crime, it is the State which arrests him by the hand of its agent in that county; when the district attorney prosecutes him, it is the State which is trying him for the crime against itself. (See page 83, footnote.) On the other hand the county commissioners

commonly act only as agents of their county. Some officers may represent the State in some of their duties, and the county in others.

## CHAPTER XIII

### TOWN OFFICERS

**1. Towns**—In all the States except those far west and most of the Southern States, each county is subdivided. These subdivisions are called *towns* at the East, and *towns* or *townships* at the West and South. At the West and South a village or city is often called a town. But in this book we shall use the word *town* as meaning an organized subdivision of a county. In those States where towns do not exist, the county exercises all the local governmental powers and has all the necessary officers. It must be remembered, then, that this chapter does not apply to all the States.

**2. Chief Officer**—Since a town is a corporation, it must, like a county, have some one to represent it and act for it. The principal officer, or board, whose duty this is, has different names in different States. In the New England towns there are what are called *selectmen*, three or more in each town. In a few States there are *trustees of townships*. In a few other States there is in each town one such officer, called *supervisor*. The powers and duties of these officers are the most numerous and important in New England, where the town is the most important division of the State. They have duties with regard to taking charge of the town property, laying out and repairing roads, collecting taxes, providing for the poor, etc. In those States

where the county is the more important division, the town officers have fewer of these duties, and the county officers have more.

**3. Treasurer**—There is often a *town treasurer*, with duties, in his own town, analogous to those of a county treasurer.

**4. Town Clerk**—A *town clerk* in each town keeps the records, books, and papers of the town. He records in a book the proceedings of town meetings, the names of the persons elected, and such other papers as are required by law to be recorded.

**5. Constables**—There are several *constables* in each town. Their principal duties are to serve all writs and processes issued by justices of the peace. The business of a constable in executing the orders of a justice of the peace is similar to that of a sheriff in relation to the county courts.

**6. Highways**—For the repairing of *highways and bridges*, a town is divided by the proper officers into as many road districts as may be judged convenient; and a person residing in each district is chosen, called *overseer*, or *supervisor*, or *surveyor of highways*, whose duty it is to see that the roads and bridges are repaired and kept in order in his district. In some cases a tax is laid for the purpose, and ordinary laborers do the work. In others, each one taxed may work on the road himself a certain number of days, or he may pay the tax, according as he wishes.

**7. Overseers of the Poor** provide for the support of paupers belonging to the town, who have no near relatives able to support them. In some States there is in each county a poor-house, to which the paupers of the several towns are sent to be provided for; the expense

to be charged to the towns to which such poor persons belonged.

**8. Other Officers**—There are often in every town other inferior officers: *assessors* and *collectors of taxes* (see Chapter XV.); certain *school officers*; *fence viewers*, who settle disputes as to division fences; *pound keepers*, who take charge of stray animals; *sealers*, who keep correct copies of the standard of weights and measures; and others.

**9. Elected**—Most town officers are elected by the electors of their respective towns at the annual town meetings, for terms of one year.

**10. Town Meetings**—These are meetings of the electors held once a year in every town for the election of town officers and for certain other business. They exist only in New England and a few other States which have been under the influence of New England. At them the people not only elect officers, but take some share in the government. For instance, they have power to vote what money shall be raised for school purposes, for highways, and other purposes; what salaries shall be paid different officers; what proceedings shall be taken at law; and other powers. This, as far as it goes, is pure democracy. With a county it is different. The people of a county never meet together except to elect officers, and take no part, directly, in the direction of affairs.



## CHAPTER XIV

## CITIES AND VILLAGES

**1. Reasons for Incorporation**—A city, or a village,\* is a particular portion of a town which has become so thickly populated that a different kind of government is needed from that of the rest of the town. For instance, where there are many people who use the streets, sidewalks will be necessary; and where the houses are near to each other, as in the ordinary village, fire-engines and fire-companies will be necessary to prevent the whole place from being destroyed; and if the population is still more dense, as in a city, many other regulations are necessary—such as, with regard to police, water supply, cleaning the streets, sewers, etc. But towns do not have the power to regulate these things. It is thought best that the people living in those thickly populated portions should do it themselves. The legislature of the State gives them these powers by *incorporating* them into a village or city.

**2. Charter**—Whenever, therefore, the inhabitants of any portion of a town become so numerous as to require a government with more powers than the rest of the town, they petition the legislature for a law incorporating them into a village, or, if they are very numerous, a city. The law or act of incorporation is usually called a *charter*. The word *charter* is from the

---

\* The word *village* very often means only a collection of houses, or of people living near one another, but in this chapter we shall use the word for an *incorporated village*. In Connecticut and Pennsylvania an incorporated village is called a *borough*.



Latin *charta*, which means paper. The instruments of writing by which kings or other sovereign powers granted rights and privileges to individuals or corporations were written on paper or parchment, and called *charters*. In this country it is commonly used to designate an act of the legislature conferring privileges and powers upon cities, villages, and other corporations.

**3. Its Contents**—The charter describes the boundaries of the city or village, prescribes what officers it shall have, and what shall be their powers and duties.

**4. City Officers**—The chief executive officer of a city is a *mayor*. A city is divided into wards of convenient size, in each of which are chosen one or more *aldermen* (usually two) and such other officers as are named in the charter. The mayor and aldermen constitute the *city council*, which is a kind of legislature, having the power to pass such laws (commonly called *ordinances*) as the government of the city requires.\* There are also elected in the several wards assessors, constables, collectors, and other necessary officers, whose duties in their respective wards are similar to those of like-named officers in country towns, or townships.

**5. Village Officers**—The chief executive officer of a village is, in some States, called *president*. The village is not divided into wards, the number of its inhabitants being too small to require such division. Instead of a board of aldermen there is a board of *trustees* or *directors*, who exercise similar powers. The president of a village is generally chosen by the trustees from their own number. In some States incor-

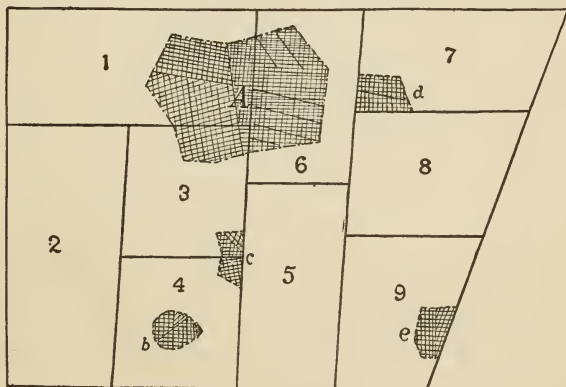
---

\* In some cases there are two boards, in analogy with the two legislative houses of the State.

porated villages are called *towns*, and their chief executive officer is called *mayor*.

**6. General Law**—The constitutions of some States require the legislature to pass a general law prescribing the manner in which the people in any place may

DIAGRAM SHOWING THE RELATION BETWEEN COUNTY,  
TOWN, CITY, AND VILLAGE.



The whole diagram represents a county.

The numbers represent the towns into which it is divided.

A represents a city.

b, c, d, and e represent villages.

form themselves into an incorporated village without a special law or charter.

**7. Subject to Laws of State**—The inhabitants of cities and villages, however, are not governed alone by laws made by the common council and the trustees. Those laws and regulations relate only to local matters. Most of the laws enacted by the legislature are of general application, and have the same effect in

cities and villages as elsewhere. Thus the laws of the State require that taxes shall be assessed and levied upon the property of the citizens of the State to defray the public expenses, and the people of the cities are required to pay their just proportion of the same; but the city authorities lay and collect additional taxes for city purposes.

**8. Corporations**—We have seen that the State, counties, towns, cities, and villages are all corporations, and that there are also other corporations, such as banks, railroad companies, etc. Now all corporations are alike in some particulars. They all continue after the persons first composing them are dead. They all have power to buy and sell property, and to borrow money to a certain extent. But they also differ in some respects. A State differs from other municipal corporations in the manner of formation. A State is formed by the people when they adopt the constitution; the other municipal corporations—*i.e.*, cities, towns, etc.—are formed by the legislature. Again, all municipal corporations differ from other corporations in two particulars: their purpose and their membership. Municipal corporations are organized only for purposes of government; the others are organized for other purposes, such as business (banks, insurance companies, etc.), religion (churches), or charity (hospitals, etc.). Of a municipal corporation every one is a member who lives within its limits, whether he wishes to be or not; but in other corporations one only becomes a member by his own choice.

## CHAPTER XV

## TAXES

**1. Reasons for Them**—Every government must have the power of providing means for its support. The different State, county, and town officers must be paid salaries ; money is needed for public buildings, such as State-houses, court-houses, jails, etc. ; and there are other necessities. The money which is needed to pay the expenses of administering the government, if the State, county, or town has no permanent source of revenue or income, must be raised by taxation. A *tax* is a sum of money assessed upon the person of a citizen for the use of the government. When each one is required to pay a certain sum, the same for all, it is called a *poll-tax*, or *capitation tax*, being a certain sum on every poll, or head. But, as persons ought to contribute to the public expenses according to their ability, taxes are more just when laid upon the citizens in proportion to the property each one owns. In ordinary speech we say that the property itself is taxed.

**2. Land Tax most Common**—Both real and personal property \* are subject to taxation ; but in the United States most of the taxes are laid upon the land, for the reason that it is always difficult for the assessors to ascertain all the personal property each one owns. Poll-taxes are laid in many States, but they are very small.

---

\* *Real estate*, or *real property*, is land with the buildings and other articles erected or growing thereon. *Personal estate*, or *personal property*, is every other kind of property ; such as, goods, stocks and bonds, money, and debts due from debtors.

**3. Assessment**—This means valuation. As every person is to be taxed in proportion to the value of his property, it is necessary, first, to make a correct valuation of all his taxable property. For this purpose, the assessor or assessors pass through the town, and make a list of the names of all the taxable inhabitants, and the estimated value of the property, real and personal, of each. If any one thinks his property is valued at too high a rate, he has an opportunity to appear before the assessors and ask to have the assessment reduced. The town assessors then make returns to the proper State and county officers of all the property, and its valuation, in the town.

**4. Information**—In some States persons liable to taxation are themselves required to furnish lists of all their taxable property, printed blank lists having been previously distributed among them for this purpose. To secure an accurate valuation, the assessors (called also *listers*) may require persons to make oath that they have made a true statement of their property and its value.

**5. Exemptions**—There are certain kinds of property which are exempt from taxation ; such as the corporate property of the State, of counties, and of towns, including the buildings in which the public business is done, the prisons, jails, asylums, etc., and the lands attached to them ; school-houses and churches, with the lands attached ; burying-grounds, and the property of literary and charitable institutions. But the property of business corporations, as railroad, banking, insurance, manufacturing, and other stock companies, like that of individuals, is liable to taxation.

**6. Three Amounts**—Before a tax-list can be made

out, showing what each one's tax is to be, it must be known what amount is to be collected in each town. This amount is made up of three parts: first, the sum wanted to pay the expenses of the town for the current year; second, the town's share of the county expenses; and third, its proportionate share of the expenses of the State government, or of what is to be raised for State purposes. In this country the amount that each one pays for State purposes is usually very much less than what he pays for county and town purposes. The ratio of the county to the town tax varies in proportion to the political importance of the county and town. In many States there is no town tax.

**7. Apportionment**—The apportionment of the amount of the State and county expenses among the several towns is made according to the amount of property in each as valued by the assessors. The State auditor or comptroller, having received from the several counties returns of the value of the property in each county, is enabled to determine its quota of the amount to be raised for State purposes. He sends to the proper officers in each county (county commissioners, or board of supervisors) a statement showing what part of the State tax the county is to pay. The county officers add to each county's share of the State expenses the sum to be raised in the county for county purposes, and apportion the whole amount among the towns in proportion to the value of the property in each. Then the town officers, in turn, add to each town's share of the amount of the State and county expenses the amount to be raised for town purposes, and this gives the whole sum to be collected in the town. This sum



is divided up among the inhabitants of the town in proportion to their property as valued by the assessors, and a tax-list, showing what each one is to pay, is given to the collector. In cities and villages each one's tax includes also his proportionate share of the amount to be raised for city, or village, purposes. Taxes in cities are usually very much higher than anywhere else.

**8. Collection**—When the collector has received the taxes he pays them over to the town treasurer. The latter retains the portion collected for town purposes, and remits the remainder to his county treasurer. The county treasurer retains the portion collected for county purposes and remits the remainder to the State treasurer. The system of assessment and collection of taxes varies in the different States. The system described in this chapter applies chiefly to the Northern States.

**9. Tax Sales**—Where a person neglects to pay his tax, means are provided by law to enforce payment. If he is taxed for personal property, sometimes the collector may seize his goods and sell them, and sometimes suit must be brought in the usual way. But if he is taxed for land, a different course is pursued. In a certain sense, the land itself is taxed. If the tax is not paid within a certain time, the proper authorities sell or lease the land for a certain period to any one who will pay the tax. The owner then has the right to redeem within a certain time, generally two or three years, by paying to the purchaser what he has paid for taxes, with interest. The purchaser does not have the right to take possession of the land until the time to redeem has expired.

**10. Assessments**—*Assessment* has been used in the



sense of valuation. But it is also often used to mean a tax laid in a city to pay for some public improvement; such as, the building of a sewer, the paving of a street, the laying out of a park, etc. In such cases the benefit of the improvement is felt, sometimes wholly, generally chiefly, by those who live near, and therefore they are required to pay for it. For instance, when a sewer is built in a side street, only the property on each side of that street is assessed for it.

**11. Indirect Taxes**—The taxes that have been described are called *direct taxes*. But there are also *indirect taxes*, so called because, when finally paid, they are not paid directly to the government as a tax, but as a part of the price of something. They include duties which are paid on goods exported from a country or imported into it, on goods manufactured, licenses for carrying on certain trades, or for doing certain things, etc. For instance, if a tax is laid on the manufacture of liquors, the manufacturer adds enough to the price of the liquor to cover the tax, and so the consumer, when he buys, indirectly pays the tax. Only a small portion of the revenue of a State is derived from indirect taxation. The United States Constitution forbids any State to lay import or export duties.

## CHAPTER XVI

### EDUCATION

**1. A Proper Object of Government**—The proper object of government is to promote the welfare and happiness of its citizens. For this purpose it must protect the people in the enjoyment of life and the

fruits of their labor. But it should go further, and make express provision for improving the condition of the people, especially the less fortunate portions of them. The prosperity of a state or nation depends essentially upon the education of its citizens. Ignorance tends to make men idle and vicious. On the other hand, education not only teaches them better ways of living, but impels them to follow the better ways, and gives them higher purposes in life.

**2. A Political Necessity**—But further, we believe that a government by the people is better adapted than any other to promote the general welfare where the people are fitted to govern. But if the people are not properly educated, they are incapable of self-government. Some children are educated at private schools. But very many are unable to pay for the education of their children in that way, and therefore each State has established a system of *common schools*, at which the children of all may be taught at the public expense. These are the schools we shall treat of in this chapter. It is to its common-school system that the United States owes much of its prosperity as a nation. This system has been developed more highly at the North than at the South. But the constitutions adopted in the Southern States since the late civil war have made much more adequate provision for this necessity than existed in those States previously.

**3. Support**—The schools are supported chiefly by taxation. In some cases those who send their children there have to pay a higher rate than others. But in almost all the States there is provided a school fund, the income from which is applied to aid in their sup-

port. A *fund* is a sum of money, the income from which is set apart for a particular purpose. Thus the interest of a school fund is applied in building school-houses, paying teachers, etc. The whole amount expended on common schools in the United States in 1900 was \$213,274,354.

**4. Creation of School Funds**—These were created in the older States by the State's appropriating certain lands owned by it for that purpose. They were, in many cases, largely increased by certain moneys received from the United States. In 1836 there had accumulated in the national treasury about thirty millions of dollars over and above what was needed for the support of the government. By an act of Congress, this surplus revenue was distributed among the States then existing, to be kept by them until called for by Congress. That it never will be called for is now almost certain. Many of the States have appropriated large portions of their respective shares for school purposes. From its having been said to be only *deposited* with the States, this fund is sometimes called the *United States deposit fund*. As to the Western States, at an early period, while most of the territory from which they have been formed was yet the property of the United States, and uninhabited, Congress passed acts by which a certain proportion of the land in every township is reserved for the support of schools therein. By these acts, in some of those States one thirty-sixth, in others one eighteenth of the whole State has been thus appropriated, besides smaller portions granted for the benefit of a university in each State. In States which may be hereafter formed out of existing territories, land will be reserved in the

same way. The whole amount of the permanent common-school funds in the United States has been calculated to be about \$140,000,000. The income from this is applied to school purposes every year.

**5. Districts**—The towns, or townships, of a State are generally divided into districts of proper size, in each one of which is established a school, to which all the children of the district may go, free of expense. These schools are sometimes called *district schools*, sometimes *common schools*, and sometimes *public schools*. Each district has apportioned to it its share of the income of the school fund, and the rest of the money needed to support the school is raised from the inhabitants of the district or the State by taxation. One or more *trustees* or *directors* are chosen in each district to manage the school affairs.

**6. State Superintendent**—In many States there is an officer called the *State superintendent of public schools*, or *superintendent of public instruction*. The superintendent collects information relating to the schools; the number of children residing in each district, and the number taught; the number of school-houses, and the amount yearly expended; and other matters concerning the operation and effects of the common-school system. Sometimes he also apportions the money arising from the State funds among the several counties. He reports to the legislature at every session the information he has collected, and suggests such improvements in the school system as he thinks ought to be made. There are officers in each county or town to aid him in this work. There are also officers in each county or town who examine the teachers periodically to see if they are competent.

**7. Grades**—Public schools are divided into three grades: *primary* schools, for the youngest pupils; *grammar* schools, in which are taught, besides the ordinary, some of the higher branches of study; and *high* schools, for the most advanced, in which are taught the studies necessary for a business education, and frequently the languages and higher mathematics. Many contend that the public should not be taxed to furnish a higher education, but that it should be left to the private citizen. Others maintain that the general good demands that some should be highly educated. But, though many States have high schools, universities, and other educational institutions, supported or aided by the State, the great body of schools in the country still are of the lower grade.

**8. Compulsory Attendance**—In general, the State does not compel parents to send their children to school, but relies upon their own sense of duty and interest. But in a few States it does, and every child is compelled to go to some school, public or private, a certain portion of every year between the ages of seven and fourteen. And the idea is gaining strength in the country that the interest of the whole people requires that every child should be educated to a certain degree.

**9. Normal Schools**—These are schools in which persons are trained to be teachers. If a State is to furnish education to its citizens, it must provide suitable educators, and therefore most States have established one or more of these schools. They are free to any one, but in return the person taught must serve a certain length of time (two or three years) as a teacher in the common schools of the State. In that way he pays for his education.

## CHAPTER XVII

## PUBLIC INSTITUTIONS

**1. Duty of Government**—We have seen that a government ought to provide means not only for the protection of the lives and property of its citizens, but also for their education. But there are further duties which it owes to its citizens. It ought to furnish protection and aid to those who are unfortunate, the insane, the blind, orphan children, and others who are unable to care for themselves. So, too, if there is any great enterprise in which all the people of the State are interested, but which is too large or too costly to be carried on by private individuals, the State should render aid. Again, a State should exercise some control over the operations of corporations having large powers, such as railroads and banks, in order to prevent fraud upon the people. These duties are important functions of the executive department.

**2. Asylums**—Every State establishes and supports some of these for the insane, blind, deaf and dumb, inebriate, orphans, and others. At them support and medical aid are furnished to such as have no means of providing for themselves. Counties, towns, and cities often maintain institutions of the same kind.

**3. Canals**—These do not exist in all the States, and in some they are constructed and managed by private corporations. But in others they are State works, built by the State and managed by officers elected by the people. New York, Pennsylvania, and Ohio have many. Their object is to furnish cheap trans-



portation, and at one time they were considered of vast importance, but railroads have in a great measure taken their place. Where the State undertakes such an enterprise, very often a fund is provided by the State, the income of which is applied to the object, and the United States increases this fund by grants to it of public lands, because the canal is a benefit not only to the people of the State, but also to all the people of the Nation.

**4. Railroads**—These are seldom State works, but they often receive aid from the State in the form of money lent them, public land granted to them, or State guaranties of their bonds. In a certain other respect all railroads are aided by the State. The property which a railroad company requires very often cannot be purchased, as the owners will not sell, and no person or corporation has, in itself, the right to compel them to sell. But a State has the right to take any one's property for public use on paying its value. This is called the right of *eminent domain*, and this right the State delegates to the railroad company for the time being. Appraisers are appointed who value the land, and on payment of that price the company takes it. The land necessary for a canal is acquired in the same way.

**5. Control of Corporations**—The State generally exercises some control over certain corporations which, like railway or canal companies, banks, and insurance companies, have large powers and privileges. This is to prevent their being used to the fraud and injury of the public. In some States there are departments, such as the *bank department*, or the *insurance department*, all subordinate branches of the executive depart-



ment, which are required to exercise supervision over the corporations belonging to their department within the State. They collect information with regard to them, their property and business, by means of examinations and of annual reports which the corporations are required to make, and this information is published. When State banks issued bills (which were only their promises to pay money), they were often required to deposit a certain amount of property with the State to secure those who used their bills as money against loss. So, too, insurance companies are sometimes required to make deposits with the government to secure their policy-holders. There are other ways in which a State exercises control over corporations.

**6. State-Prisons**—These are prisons maintained by the State, in which criminals convicted of the higher crimes are confined. The county jails are for the lower grades of criminals. Convicts are forced to work while confined. In many States their labor is leased by the State to certain contractors, who pay the State as for so many laborers. Thus State-prisons are sometimes rendered self-supporting.

**7. State Debts**—Very often the public works undertaken by a State require more money than can be conveniently raised at once by taxation. So, too, perhaps the chief benefit is going to accrue, not to people living at the time the work is done, but many years later, and therefore posterity should bear some share of the burden. In such case the State borrows the money and issues its bonds for it, also called *State stock*. Counties, towns, and cities, in the same way, often incur debt and issue bonds for public works. But there is this difference: counties, towns, and cities may

be sued in the courts, but there is no way for a private individual to force a State to pay its debts. Such refusal to pay is called *repudiation*, and several of the States have repudiated their debts in part. For the reason that there is no remedy, repudiation is the more dishonorable. In the late Civil War the Southern States contracted large debts, but these the United States Constitution forbids them to pay. No government could recognize as just, or allow to be paid, if it could prevent it, any debts incurred in a rebellion against it.

## CHAPTER XVIII

### MILITIA

**1. Meaning of Militia**—Every nation has its military force to resist foreign enemies and crush rebellion. It consists of two portions, the *standing army* and the *militia*. The standing army is all the time organized, equipped, and drilled, and its members have no other occupation. The militia consists of all the other able-bodied men in the nation (between certain ages), but it is not called into service except in time of war or insurrection. In this country the Nation has a small standing army, and its militia consists of the militia of all the States. The States have no standing army, but each has its militia.

**2. Of Whom Composed**—The militia of a State consists of able-bodied male citizens of the United States between the ages of eighteen and forty-five years who reside in the State, except such as are exempt by the laws of the State and of the United States. Persons exempt by the laws of the State are

generally members of the State legislative, executive, and judicial departments, clergymen, teachers, physicians, firemen, and members of military companies who have served a certain time.\* Persons exempt by United States laws are members of the national legislative, executive, and judicial departments, pilots, mariners, and a few others.

**3. Commander-in-Chief**—By the constitutions of the several States, the governors are made the commanders-in-chief of the militia of their respective States. The governor has power to call it out in time of insurrection or rebellion,† and when called out he exercises the usual powers of commander over it. He cannot, however, send any member out of the State without his own consent.

**4. Organization**—The militia, when organized, is divided in the usual way into brigades, regiments, companies, etc., with the usual officers: adjutant-general, colonels, captains, etc. In some States the officers are appointed by the governor or the legislature; in others they are elected by the men they are to command. But in most of the States the militia remains practically unorganized.

**5. Training**—For many years after the Revolution, when the militia was more or less organized all the time, it was called out annually in each State for the purpose of training; but these annual trainings were seen to be of so little value that they gradually fell

---

\* In many States those, also, are exempt who have conscientious scruples as to whether war is ever right, such as the Quakers.

† An *insurrection* is an attempt of persons to prevent the execution of a law. *Rebellion* generally means nearly the same; but more properly it signifies a revolt, or an attempt to overthrow the government to establish a different one.

into disuse. At present the militia in this country is not much more, practically, than an imaginary body, and the great body of the people have no military duties to perform.

**6. Volunteer Regiments**—But occasions do arise when it is necessary for a State to have some organized, equipped, and drilled force at hand. This necessity is supplied by the volunteer companies, or regiments, existing in most of the States. These organize themselves, elect their own members and officers, select their own uniform, and the branch of the service to which they will attach themselves. The State usually grants them more or less aid, in the way of arms, armories, etc. When organized, they come under the military laws of the State, and are subject to orders of the commander-in-chief, in the same manner as the militia is, and he can call them out when necessary. These regiments are called in some States the *national guard*, and popularly they are called the *militia*.

**7. United States Militia**—We have said the militia of the United States consisted of the militia of all the States. The President has power to call it out at times when the standing army is not sufficient, and when so called out it passes out of State control and under that of the United States. But this refers to the unorganized militia. Over the volunteer regiments spoken of in the preceding section the United States has no control. The national government will probably never call out the unorganized militia, but will rely on the formation of volunteer regiments. In the late Civil War most of the United States army was composed of volunteer regiments formed in the loyal States, and then mustered into the United States service,

## SECTION IV.—JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT

## CHAPTER XIX

## COURTS

**1. Necessity**—The judicial department consists of the courts of a State. We have seen that the legislative department makes laws and the executive department carries them out; but there is one other function of government which properly comes in between the making and the execution of the law. This is its application to particular cases when disputes arise. Very often in a particular case it will be hard to tell what the truth is, as one party will say one thing and the other another; and again one side will claim that the law does not include his case, and the other side will claim that it does. These points must be decided before the law can be executed. The executive department might decide them, but justice is more likely to be done if the one that decides has nothing else to do with the case. For this reason the separate judicial department is established. The higher courts of a State are usually established by its constitution, the lower courts by the legislature.

**2. Diversity**—There is great diversity among the States in the names and powers of the different courts. No two States are exactly alike. But the following sketch gives a general idea of the judicial system prevailing in most of the States.

**3. Court for the Trial of Impeachments**—This is the name applied to the upper house of the legislature

when trying a public officer for malfeasance (*i.e.*, corrupt conduct) in office.\* *Impeachment* is the formal act of the lower house by which it makes the charge against him.† Generally the lower house has the sole right of impeachment, and the upper house the sole right to try impeachments. On such trial the upper house is in reality a court.‡

**4. Supreme Court**—This is the name usually given to the highest court—of which there is only one—in the State. It consists of several judges (very often three), and has usually only appellate jurisdiction.§ Appeals may be taken to it in both civil and criminal cases,|| from the next lower—the Circuit—courts.

**5. Circuit Courts ¶**—Of these there are generally a

\* As, if a governor, for money offered him, should approve and sign a law ; or a judge should, for money or from some other selfish or personal motive, give a wrong judgment.

† It must be remembered that impeachment is not the conviction of the offence, but only the accusation. It is analogous to an indictment by a grand jury. (See page 87.) It may happen, therefore, that an officer is impeached and afterward acquitted on the trial, as President Andrew Johnson was in 1868.

‡ This practice has come from Great Britain, where the impeachment is made by the House of Commons, and the House of Lords is the High Court of Impeachment.

§ The word *jurisdiction* is from the Latin *jus*, law, and *dictio*, a pronouncing or speaking. Hence the *jurisdiction* of a court means the class of cases in which it has power to pronounce the law. A court is said to have *original* jurisdiction when the case may originate (be commenced) in it ; it has *appellate* jurisdiction when it may hear the case on appeal from a lower court.

|| *Civil* cases are those between private parties for debt or for some injury to person or property. *Criminal* cases are those in which the State seeks to punish one for some criminal offence.

¶ They derive their name from this circumstance : Each court has



number (from ten to thirty) in every State, one for each district into which the State is divided. In many States they are called *district courts*, because there is one in each district; in a few they correspond to the *superior* courts, so called because they are of higher grade than the justices' courts. They have original jurisdiction, in general, of all classes of cases, both civil and criminal, and are the courts in which the great body of trials are had. They also hear appeals from the lower courts.

**6. Justices of the Peace**—In each town, or similar division, there are usually several of these officers. Each justice holds court, and has power to try civil cases which involve small amounts (in some States it must be less than \$100, in others less than \$50), and to try persons who have committed small offences. They also have important powers with regard to arresting and examining those accused of higher crimes. (See page 88.) In many States they have executive duties also.

**7. Probate Courts**—There is usually one of these in every county, composed of a single judge. They are quite different in character from the courts already described. Their powers and duties relate to the estates of deceased persons, to see that they go to the

---

its district, including several counties, and as the law usually requires, for the convenience of suitors, that the court be held once or twice a year in each county, the judges travel from one county to another.

In some of the States of New England this system of courts does not exist. The highest court performs their duties, having both original and appellate jurisdiction. It will be noticed that New England is different from the rest of the country in many of her political institutions



persons entitled to them. They take proof of wills and empower executors to act.\* Where a person dies without a will the probate court appoints an *administrator*, who distributes the personal property (for distinction between personal and real property, see page 63) among the relatives to whom it belongs by law.† It has power to remove the executor or administrator if he does not do his duty ; to settle his accounts ; and decide disputes which arise, as to the distribution of the estate. Probate courts also take charge of the estates of minors whose parents have died, and appoint guardians for them. For this reason they are sometimes called *orphans' courts*. Appeals may be taken from these courts to the Supreme Court, or sometimes to the Circuit Courts.

**8. Courts of Chancery** exist in several States. They have power to grant certain kinds of relief that, in the States where they exist, the other courts can not ; such as compelling a man to perform a contract, instead of awarding money as damages for his not doing it, or granting an injunction against one's doing an unlawful act. These are also called *courts of equity*. It is unnecessary to enumerate their powers, as in most States they do not exist, and there the other courts have all their powers.

**9. Other Courts**—In some States there are other

---

\* A will is a writing by which a person directs to whom his property shall be given after his death. The Latin *probatus* means proof, from which the courts derive their name. An *executor* is a person appointed in a will to carry out its provisions.

† An administrator has no jurisdiction over the land owned by the deceased that the heirs can take possession of without any authority from the court. An executor, in general, executes the will both as regards personal and real property.

courts with various powers. *County courts*, or *courts of common pleas*, exist in some, having jurisdiction in civil cases, somewhat higher than justices' courts; *courts of sessions* and *courts of oyer and terminer*, where they exist, are courts of criminal jurisdiction; *police courts* are often established in cities with jurisdiction to try the lower criminal offences; large cities generally have additional courts.

**10. Elections and Terms**—Judges are sometimes elected by the people, sometimes by the legislature, and sometimes appointed by the governor. The terms of office vary, being generally six to ten years in the higher courts, while justices of the peace are elected or appointed every one or two years. In a few States (in New England) the judges of the highest court hold office for life, or until seventy years of age. Like legislative and executive officers, they receive salaries fixed by law.

## CHAPTER XX

### LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

#### *a. Impeachment*

**1. Impeachment**—A complaint against the officer having been brought formally before the lower house of the legislature, it votes whether he shall be impeached or not, and if it is decided that there are sufficient grounds for the charge, *articles of impeachment* are prepared and delivered to the upper house, and a committee of *managers* is selected from the members of the lower house to conduct the prosecution.

**2. Trial**—The upper house (senate) then convenes

as a court, the accused person is summoned to answer the charge, and a time is fixed for the trial. The trial is conducted in much the same way as a trial in other courts, and at the close the senate votes upon his guilt, a two-thirds vote being generally required to convict. If convicted, the court may remove him from office, or disqualify him to hold any office in the State, for a time, or for life; or may both remove and disqualify him. This court can pronounce no other sentence. But if the act committed is a crime, the offender may also be indicted, tried, and punished in a court of justice.

### *b. Proceedings in Ordinary Civil Cases*

**3. Parties**—In both civil and criminal cases the party suing is called the *plaintiff* (*i.e.*, the one complaining), and the party sued the *defendant* (*i.e.*, the one defending himself).\*

We will now give a sketch of the ordinary steps in a civil action in their order.

**4. Summons**—Except in the lowest courts, all the proceedings in a lawsuit are taken by means of written papers. This is that they may be preserved. The first paper is ordinarily a *summons*. This is a writ issued by the court at the instance of the plaintiff, and

---

\* In a criminal case the State is the plaintiff, and the accused the defendant. The State—*i.e.*, the whole people—are the ones injured by a crime. For example, in New York State the title of a criminal case is "The People of the State of New York against John Smith." Also, the person against whom the offence is committed has his civil remedy, a suit for damages, against the offender. So that in the case of a criminal offence (for instance, assault and battery) the injured party can sue the offender for damages, and the State can punish him at the same time.

served upon the defendant, summoning him to appear in court. Generally this appearance is made not by coming into court in person, but by the defendant's attorney \* filing a notice in the clerk's office. If he does not appear within a certain time, the plaintiff may take judgment and issue execution immediately. (See page 86.)

**5. Pleadings**—If the defendant appears, the plaintiff is then required to file or serve his *declaration* or *complaint*, setting forth what he claims, and the facts on which he bases the claim. The defendant then files or serves his *plea*, or *answer*, or *demurrer*,† setting forth his defence; that is, the reasons why he thinks he should not be compelled to do what the plaintiff demands. These papers are called the *pleadings*. Sometimes other papers are necessary. If the pleadings agree as to the facts, the matter is then presented to the court, and it makes its decision, without—what is popularly called—a trial. But if the pleadings do not agree as to the facts—if, for instance, the plea denies any fact the declaration sets out—this dispute must be settled by a trial.

**6. Jury**—Trials may be had before the court alone, but in many cases either party may claim the right to have disputed facts decided by a *jury*.‡ In the higher courts a jury consists of twelve men; in justices' courts, of six. At every term of court (except in jus-

---

\* In this connection an *attorney*, or *counsel*, is a lawyer who conducts a lawsuit for a person. In a broader sense, attorney often means an agent to transact any business.

† These words have different meanings, unnecessary to state here.

‡ So important is this right considered that it is guaranteed to every one, in certain cases, by most of the State constitutions. It was derived from England, where it has been enjoyed many centuries.

tices' courts) a number of men residing in the county are summoned to attend court to serve as jurors during the term, which lasts one or two weeks. From these the jury in each particular case is chosen by lot.

**7. Trial**—As soon as the pleadings are filed or served either party may summon the other to trial. If either party does not appear at the trial, the other may have judgment against him. If the witnesses are unwilling to come, a subpoena (pronounced *suppēna*) may be issued to them. This is a writ from the court commanding them to attend, under heavy penalties if they do not. A judge always presides at the trial, and decides whether the evidence offered by either side is proper to be admitted in the case. The usual course of proceeding is as follows : The plaintiff's counsel opens the trial by briefly stating what the case is, and then examines such witnesses as he chooses, the defendant's counsel having the right to cross-examine each one, if he thinks the testimony needs to be made clearer ; this examination and cross-examination is made by the counsel asking questions which the witness must answer, and the witness is not allowed to do anything but answer the questions put him ; after the plaintiff has presented all his witnesses, the defendant's counsel, in turn, briefly states what his defence is, and examines his witnesses, the other side cross-examining each one if he desires ; the defendant's counsel then makes an argument upon the case, and the plaintiff's counsel closes with his argument. This ends the trial if it is before the court alone. But if it is before a jury, the judge delivers a *charge* to the jury, giving them a summary of the evidence on both sides and pointing

out to them the points they are to decide. The jury then retire, and deliberate in secret.

**8. Verdict**—If the jury cannot agree, they are discharged, and another trial may be had; but if they agree, they return to court and announce their *verdict*. This word is from the Latin *verum*, true, and *dictum*, saying. In most States all the members of a jury must agree before a verdict can be rendered.

**9. Judgment**—After a verdict, or decision of a case by the court, formal judgment is entered (*i.e.*, filed or recorded), and the successful party may add as a part of it what are called *costs*. These are certain sums of money allowed to him to compensate for his expenses. It is considered just that the one who is decided to be in the wrong should pay all the expense.

**10. Appeal**—If the defeated party thinks justice has not been done, he may appeal to the next higher court. This court does not try the case over again, but simply examines all that was done in the lower court to see if any error was committed. If there was none, it *affirms* the judgment; but if any—even a slight—error was committed, it *reverses* the judgment and grants a *new trial*, which is conducted in the same way as the first. In many cases, if either party is dissatisfied with the decision of the higher court he may appeal to a still higher one, which, in turn, affirms or reverses. In this way a single case may have three or four trials, and five or six appeals, though that is very unusual. Small cases cannot generally be appealed to the highest court.

**11. Execution against Property**—After judgment is obtained against one, if he does not pay it, a writ called an *execution against the property* may be issued



to the sheriff. This commands him to seize the debtor's property and sell it until he has sold enough to satisfy (*i.e.*, pay) the judgment. Certain articles, such as household goods and clothing, cannot be sold by the sheriff.

**12. Execution against the Person**—Formerly, in addition to the execution against property, an *execution against the person* could be issued in all cases. This commanded the sheriff to put the debtor in jail until he paid the judgment. But now this extreme remedy is abolished, except in cases where the judgment is obtained for some act implying moral turpitude, such as libel, assault, fraud, etc. In cases of ordinary debt, such as for goods sold, money borrowed, etc., this execution cannot be had.

### *c. Proceedings in Criminal Cases*

**13. Indictment \***—It is usual for State constitutions to contain provisions requiring that before one can be tried for a criminal offence (except a petty one) he must be indicted by a grand jury. A *grand jury* is a body of citizens (usually twenty-three) summoned in every county several times during the year, to inquire what crimes have been committed in the county. An *indictment* is a formal accusation made by a grand jury against a person that he has committed a crime. The process of indictment is as follows: Some one, usually the district attorney, brings the fact of a crime to their notice; the jury then summon the witnesses† named and examine them; if twelve of the jurors vote that there is sufficient cause for putting him on trial, the

---

\* Pronounced *inditement*.

† No witnesses in favor of the accused are examined by the grand jury.



indictment is drawn up by the district attorney, endorsed "a true bill" by the foreman of the grand jury, and then sent to the court. These proceedings are kept secret, in order to prevent the offender's escape.

**14. Arrest and Bail**—A warrant may then be issued for the arrest of the accused. If arrested, he may give *bail*, except in cases of crimes punishable by death, like murder. Giving bail consists of giving a bond, by which the bondsmen agree to pay the State a certain sum of money if the prisoner does not appear when he is wanted. The prisoner is then released until his trial. He is then supposed to be in the custody of his bondsmen, and they can arrest him at any time.

**15. Examination**—But often it is feared that if an indictment is awaited the offender may escape. In such case a complaint is sworn to before a justice of the peace, or other magistrate, and he issues a warrant. When the arrest is made the accused is brought before him, and he makes a short examination of the case. If the evidence is such that he thinks the accused should be tried, he commits him to prison to await the action of the grand jury, or if the case be not indictable, to be tried at the next court. He may then give bail.

**16. Habeas Corpus** \*—If the prisoner thinks that

---

\* This is the most famous writ in the law. It applies to all cases where one person is unlawfully restrained by another, as well as to persons charged with criminal offences. It is often used by a father to gain possession of his child which has been unlawfully taken from him. So important is it considered that State constitutions often provide that the right of having the writ shall not be suspended by the legislature except in time of rebellion or invasion. It protects the right of personal liberty by causing the ground of arrest or restraint to be examined by a competent judge.

his arrest is unlawful, he, or any one in his interest, may apply to any judge of a higher court for a writ of *habeas corpus*. This commands the sheriff, or whoever has him in custody, to bring him before the judge. The case is not tried then, but the judge simply examines the case to see whether the arrest is lawful; that is, whether any crime is charged, or whether there is any proper complaint. If he decides that the prisoner is lawfully held, he remands him to prison; if not, he orders him released.

**17. Trial**—Due notice being given to the prisoner, and a counsel to conduct his case being furnished him by the State, if he has none, he is brought to trial, and, except in petty cases, has the constitutional right to be tried by a jury. He is first called upon to *plead* to the indictment (*i.e.*, answer it), and he may plead “guilty” or “not guilty.” This is called *arraignment*. If he pleads “guilty,” he is immediately sentenced; if “not guilty,” the trial proceeds. The course of the trial is the same as in civil cases: the opening addresses; examination and cross-examination of the witnesses on each side; the arguments of counsel; the charge; and the verdict (see page 86). After verdict he is discharged or sentenced, according as he is found innocent or guilty.

#### *d. Other Proceedings*

**18. In Probate Courts**—Here the proceedings, though somewhat different, bear a resemblance to those in other courts. Generally there is no contest; but when there is the court proceeds in much the same way as other courts, but without a jury.

**19. Special Proceedings**—The proceedings already

described do not embrace all the varieties. Courts are applied to for a great many objects, which cannot be enumerated here, and the proceedings taken differ in different classes of cases. But in all legal proceedings the object is to bring all the parties interested before the court, so that it may learn what all claim, and give each one a chance to disprove misstatements made by any one else.

---

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

### GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF GOVERNMENT

#### *Necessity for Society and Government*

1. Why is civil society necessary to mankind ?
2. From what does the right of private property come ?
3. What is law ? Why necessary ?
4. Why is government necessary ?

#### *Classification of Rights and Law*

5. What is a right ?
6. What are political rights ? In what act does a man exercise them ?
7. Name the different classes of civil rights.
8. To what class do religious rights belong ?
9. What is the difference between the moral law and the law of nature ?
10. What is the difference between the moral law and municipal law ? Which is the broader ? Why ?

*Forms of Government*

11. Name and define the three fundamental forms of government.
12. What is a despotism ?
13. To what form of government does England belong ? Is it absolute or limited ?
14. Explain the difference between a Republic and a Pure Democracy.
15. To which form does the United States Government belong ? To which do the State Governments ? Why ?

STATE GOVERNMENTS

*Constitution : Election : Departments*

1. What is a constitution in this country ? How many are there here now ?
2. How are constitutions framed ? By whom, and how, adopted ?
3. Name the usual qualifications of voters, as to age, sex, residence, property, character, and color.
4. Describe the manner of conducting an election.
5. What is registration ?
6. What is the difference between a majority and a plurality ? Which, usually, is necessary to elect a person ?
7. How many departments of government are there ? Give the name and duties of each. Why are they kept distinct ?

*Legislative Department*

8. Name the two branches of the legislature. Which is the larger house ? Which the more select ?
9. Are legislators elected or appointed ?
10. How often do legislatures meet ? What does organization consist of ?
11. What is a quorum ? How many usually constitute it (*i.e.*, what proportion) ?
12. Are the proceedings of legislatures open or secret ?
13. Describe the usual method of enacting laws.
14. What are the purpose and use of committees ?
15. What is a veto ? Its effect ?
16. Is a law valid which is passed with all the formalities which the constitution prescribes, but not according to the rules of the legislature ?

*Executive Department*

17. Who is the chief executive officer of a State ? How does he differ from a king ?
18. Name his principal powers.

19. Name the other high executive State officers, and their duties.
20. What are the territorial divisions of a State? Their purpose?
21. Which is the more important political division (county or town) in the Southern States? In New England?
22. What is a municipal corporation? Give some examples.
23. Name the principal county officers, and their duties.
24. Which represent the county, and which the State?
25. Name the principal town officers, and their duties.
26. Are officers of the executive department elected or appointed?
27. What is a city? A village? Why are they incorporated?
28. Are inhabitants of cities and villages subject to the general laws of the State?
29. In what particulars do municipal corporations differ from private? The State from other municipal corporations?
30. What is a tax? Its purpose?
31. Upon what kind of property are most of the taxes collected?
32. What are assessors?
33. How is a tax collected when the party will not pay it, in case he is taxed for personal property? How, in case he is taxed for land?
34. Explain why any government should furnish some education to its citizens. Why should we in this country especially?
35. How are common schools supported?
36. Name some public institutions supported by the State.
37. How does a railroad or canal company acquire its land?
38. Explain the difference between militia and a standing army.
39. Of what is a State militia composed? Of what, the United States militia?
40. Who is the highest officer of the State militia?
41. What are volunteer regiments?

### *Judicial Department*

42. What duties does the judicial department perform?
43. What is impeachment? What body tries impeachments? What judgment may it render?
44. What is the difference between a civil and a criminal case? Between original and appellate jurisdiction?
45. Name the three grades of law courts in a State, with the usual jurisdiction of each. About how many courts are there in each grade?
46. What are the duties of probate courts?
47. Describe the progress of an ordinary civil case. Describe the course of a trial.
48. In what civil cases may a defendant be arrested?
49. What is an indictment? A grand jury?
50. Describe the progress of an ordinary criminal case.
51. Who is the plaintiff in a criminal case?

## DIVISION III

### NATIONAL GOVERNMENT

#### SECTION I.—ITS ORIGIN AND NATURE

#### CHAPTER XXI

##### GOVERNMENT BEFORE THE REVOLUTION

**1. The United States a Nation**—Besides the State governments that we have described, there is in this country another government, to which all the people of all the States are subject, and which, in its own sphere, has paramount authority over all the State governments. This is the United States Government. The people of all the original States severally adopted another constitution, the United States Constitution. This established another and superior government for all the people, which is therefore called the National Government. In this document the Nation is called "The United States of America." To assist the reader in understanding the Constitution and government of the United States, we shall first give a sketch of the governments which preceded the Revolution, and of the principal causes which led to it.

**2. The Colonies**—Most of those who study this work probably know that our present State and national governments were not established by the early settlers in this country. The first inhabitants (except the Indians) were *colonists*. A *colony* is a settlement



of persons in a distant place or country, who remain subject to the government of the country from which they came. At the time of the Revolution there existed here thirteen colonies, settled mostly from Great Britain, all subject to the British sovereign, but independent of each other.

**3. Colonial Governments**—The political rights and privileges enjoyed by the Colonists as British subjects were limited. The people had not then, as now, constitutions of their own choice. There were colonial governments; but they were such as the king was pleased to establish, and, generally, might be changed at his pleasure. These governments were in *form* somewhat similar to that of our State governments. There was what might be called a legislature; also an executive or governor; and there were judges. But of the officers of these departments of the government, only the members of the lower branch of the legislature were elected by the people. The other branch was composed of a small number of men, called a *council*; but they were appointed by the king and subject to his control, as was also the governor, who had the power of an absolute negative or veto to any proposed law. And laws, after having received the assent of the governor, had to be sent to England and approved by the king before they could go into effect. The judges were appointed by the governor. The Colonies were also subject to the laws of the British Parliament.

**4. Good Laws Denied**—Hence we see that the colonists had no security for the passage of such laws as they wanted. And the consequence was that they were often denied good laws.

**5. Oppressive Laws of Parliament**—Not only so; many laws enacted by Parliament were very unjust and oppressive. The object of these laws was to secure to Great Britain alone the trade of the Colonies. One law declared that no goods should be imported by the Colonists but in British vessels; if brought in other vessels, both the goods and vessels were to be forfeited to the British Government. Another law declared that no iron wares should be manufactured by the Colonists, so as to compel them to buy of Great Britain. So also the Colonists were permitted to ship to foreign markets such products only as British merchants did not want. They were prohibited from selling abroad any wool, yarn, or woollen manufactured goods, in order to keep the foreign markets open for British wool and manufactures.

**6. Duties**—One way taken to compel the Colonies to buy of Great Britain alone was to impose heavy duties on goods imported from anywhere else. For instance: the Colonists traded with the West India islands, some of which belonged to Great Britain, some to France, and some to Spain. To secure the whole trade to the British islands, the British Government imposed high duties upon the molasses, sugar, and other articles imported into the Colonies from the French and Spanish islands. The people of the Colonies were therefore obliged to import the above-mentioned goods from the British islands only, while, if there had been no duty, they could have obtained them more cheaply from the others.

**7. Taxation without Representation**—Not satisfied with these acts, Parliament claimed the right to tax the Colonies “in all cases whatsoever”; and an

act was passed accordingly, laying duties upon all tea, glass, paper, etc., imported into the Colonies; and the money thus collected was put into the British treasury. The Colonists petitioned the king and Parliament to repeal these obnoxious laws, claiming that under a free government there should be no *taxation without representation*; that is, that no legislative body had the right to tax them, unless they had representatives of their own in that body; and they had none in Parliament. These petitions were, however, disregarded.

**8. Result**—The Colonies resisted the payment of these unjust taxes. Troops were then sent to compel submission, and the Colonists, too, began to arm. Finally, the Congress, which was a body of delegates from the several Colonies, giving up all hope of relief, declared by the Declaration of Independence, on July 4, 1776, the Colonies to be free and independent States, no longer subject to the government of Great Britain. This declaration was maintained by a war which lasted about seven years, when Great Britain gave up the contest and acknowledged the independence of the States; and the *Revolution* was accomplished. By this declaration the thirteen Colonies became thirteen States, independent not only of Great Britain, but also, in most respects, of each other.

## CHAPTER XXII

### THE CONFEDERATION

**1. Continental Congress**—As early as the year 1774, the Colonies united in the plan of a congress, to be composed of delegates chosen in all the Colonies, for

the purpose of consulting on the common good and of adopting measures of resistance to the claims of the British Government. The Continental Congress, convened in September, 1774, conducted the affairs of the country until near the close of the war. This body was in reality a revolutionary body. It had nothing to define or limit its powers. But the people relied upon the honor, wisdom, and patriotism of its members, and acquiesced in their acts.

**2. Confederation**—But it was seen from the first that the Colonies (now States, by the Declaration of Independence) ought to be united, and that a central government with clearly defined powers must be established. With a view to a permanent union the Congress, in November, 1777, agreed upon a frame of government, contained in certain articles, called "Articles of Confederation and Perpetual Union between the States." These articles were to go into effect when they should have received the assent of all the States. But as the consent of the last State (Maryland) was not obtained until March, 1781, they went into operation only about two years before the close of the war.

**3. Defective**—As a plan of national government, the Confederation was soon found to be very defective. The union formed under it was a very imperfect one. Having been framed in time of war, it had respect to the operations of war rather than to a state of peace. Its defects appeared almost as soon as it went into effect; and after the return of peace it was found that the union, instead of being strengthened and perpetuated by it, could be preserved only by a radical change.

**4. Weakness**—The leading defect of the Confederation was its weakness. It consisted merely of a legislature, called the *Congress*, and had no executive or judicial departments. This body could do little more than recommend measures. As it could not legislate directly upon persons, its measures were to be carried into effect by the States; but the States were not in all cases willing, and some of them did at times refuse to do so, and Congress could not compel them. It belonged to Congress to determine the number of troops and the sums of money necessary to carry on the war, and to call on each State to raise its share; but Congress could not enforce its demands. It borrowed money in its own name, but it had no means of raising money to pay it. Hence we see that Congress was dependent for everything upon the good-will of thirteen independent States. It is a wonder that a government of such inherent weakness should bring the war to a successful issue. It was a sense of danger from abroad, rather than any power in the government, that induced a sufficient compliance with the ordinances of Congress to achieve the independence of the States.

**5. Taxes and Duties**—Congress had no power to levy taxes or to impose duties. These powers were reserved to the States. Even during the war the necessary means to carry it on were with difficulty collected from the States. But after the war not only was money needed for the ordinary expenses of the government, but there was a heavy debt to be paid. Duties were necessary also to regulate foreign trade, but each State imposed such as it saw fit, and there was no uniformity. Hence American commerce was

fast being destroyed through the want of power in the central government to regulate it.

**6. Discord between States**—Another of the numerous troubles which arose from this imperfect union was the want of peace and harmony between the States. Laws were enacted in some States with a view to their own interests, which operated injuriously upon other States. This induced the latter to retaliate, by passing laws partial to themselves and injurious to the former. The States soon became disaffected toward each other; and their mutual jealousies and rivalries and animosities at length became so great as to cause fears that some of the States would become involved in war among themselves, and that thus the union would be broken up.

**7. Attempts at Amendment**—In view of these difficulties, attempts were made to change the Articles of Confederation so as to give the Congress more power, especially in the matter of regulating trade; but the attempts failed.

**8. Convention of 1786**—In January, 1786, the legislature of Virginia proposed a convention of commissioners from all the States, to take into consideration the situation and trade of the United States and the necessity of a uniform system of commercial regulations. A meeting was accordingly held at Annapolis in September, 1786; but as commissioners from only five States\* attended, the commissioners deemed it unadvisable to proceed to business relating to an object in which all the States were concerned; but they united in a report to the several States and to Congress, in which they recommended the calling of a gen-

---

\* New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, and Virginia.



eral convention of delegates from all the States, to meet in Philadelphia in May, 1787, with a view not only to the regulation of commerce, but to such other amendments of the Articles of Confederation as were necessary to render them "adequate to the exigencies of the union."

**9. Convention of 1787**—In pursuance of this recommendation, Congress, in February, 1787, passed a resolution providing for a convention. All the States except Rhode Island appointed delegates, who met pursuant to appointment and framed the present Constitution of the United States. They also recommended it to be laid by Congress before the several States, to be by them considered and ratified in conventions of representatives of the people.

**10. Adoption of Constitution**—By this Constitution, as soon as the people of nine States ratified it, it was to go into effect as to the States so ratifying. Conventions of the people were accordingly held in all the States. The ninth State, New Hampshire, sent its ratification to Congress in July, 1788; and measures were taken by Congress to put the new government into operation. North Carolina and Rhode Island, the last States to accept the Constitution, did not send their ratifications until the year after the government was organized.

## CHAPTER XXIII

### THE UNION UNDER THE CONSTITUTION

**1. Confederacy and Nation**—The Confederation and the Union under the Constitution were each a union of the States, but they differed vastly from each

other. This difference may be best summed up by saying that the first made a Confederacy, the second a Nation.\* Under the Confederation the States, though united as States “in a firm league of friendship with each other,” yet expressly “retained each its sovereignty, freedom and independence.” The people were citizens of the several States rather than of a consolidated Nation. Under the Constitution the States are no longer sovereign. The Nation is above them, and they can do nothing contrary to the Constitution. They have in many respects surrendered their sovereignty to the Nation for the good of all. If they attempt to withdraw, the Nation can coerce them.† The people of the States are also citizens of the United States. We will give in the following sections the chief differences between the Confederation and the

---

\* A *confederacy* is a league, or compact between individuals, whether persons or nations: a nation, as distinguished from a confederacy, is a people indissolubly bound together as a unit, a single people. One is a combination, the other a consolidation. There is another sense in which the word nation is often used, that of a people, or combination of peoples, having a common central authority, which represents them in all relations with foreign nations. The States were never known or treated by foreign powers as separate nations, and therefore in this sense the whole people were one nation even under the Confederation. Further than this, it may be said that even before the Constitution the whole people, besides being bound together by ties of common parentage and mutual dependence, often acted as a consolidated nation, a single sovereignty instead of thirteen.

† At the time of the late Civil War the Southern States claimed that the Nation was but a Confederation, and that therefore they could withdraw. This they attempted to do, and set up a government of their own, calling it the “Confederate States of America.” But—if force of arms can ever settle a logical question—it is now settled that our country is not a mere Confederation, but a Nation.

present Union, which taken together make one a Confederacy and the other a Nation.

**2. Name**—The document which established the Confederation professed in its name to make nothing but a league between the States, as States, calling itself “Articles of Confederation . . . between the States.” The Constitution, on the other hand, professes to make a union of the people, and not of the States: thus its preamble reads, “We, the People of the United States . . . do ordain and establish this Constitution.”

**3. By Whom Adopted**—The Articles of Confederation were adopted by the State legislatures, acting for the States, as States; the Constitution was adopted by conventions elected by the people in the several States. By whom they were framed is of little import.

**4. Power**—But the chief difference between the two was in their power. We have seen that the Confederation had no power except to pass laws, and States and individuals could disobey them without fear of punishment, for it had no executive department to enforce, and no judicial department to judge of, its laws. But the Constitution gives the National Government all necessary powers to enforce obedience to its laws; a complete executive department, with armies and money (or the power to raise them) at its command; and also a judicial department free from State control.

**5. State Equality**—Again, under the Confederation, as in confederacies generally, the States were equal. They were entitled to an equal number of delegates in the Congress, in which they voted by States, each State having one vote; that is, if a majority of the delegates of a State voted in favor of or against a proposed measure, the vote of the State was so counted;

and a proposition having in its favor a majority of the States was carried. Under the Constitution both branches of the legislature vote *per capita*, the vote of each member counting one, and in the lower branch the representation is according to population, and thus the larger States have more members. The President, too, is elected, not by States, but by a majority vote of the Electors. (See pages 132, 170.)

**6. National Government**—The government of the Confederation, although sometimes called the National Government, was not really such, nor was it generally so regarded, as appears from the proceedings of the Convention that framed the Constitution. Early in the session of the Convention a resolution was offered, declaring “That a National Government ought to be established, consisting of a supreme legislative, judiciary, and executive.” This resolution was strongly opposed by a large portion of the delegates, because it proposed to establish a *national* government. They were in favor of continuing the Confederation with a slight enlargement of the powers of Congress, so as to give that body the power to lay and collect taxes and to regulate commerce. But the friends of a national government prevailed; and history has proved their wisdom.

**7. Federal Union**—But although the present government, with its three departments, its powers, and its supremacy over the States, is properly a national government, yet it is not wholly such, but partly national and partly federal; some of the federal features of the Confederation having been retained in the Constitution, as will appear on a further examination of this instrument. Hence the Union is still called,

with propriety, the *Federal Union*, and the government the *Federal Government*.

## CHAPTER XXIV

### CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES

[NOTE.—The following is the text of the Constitution and Amendments. It should be studied until the pupil can give the subject and substance of each paragraph. The titles of the articles and sections form no part of the document, but are added here for the purpose of convenience in reference. The large numbers at the left are placed there that the paragraphs may be referred to by number in the rest of the book.]

#### PREAMBLE

- 1 WE, the People of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

#### ARTICLE I

##### LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT

##### Section 1. Division into Two Houses

- 2 1. All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

##### Section 2. House of Representatives

- 3 1. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States; and the electors in each State shall have the

qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

4 2. No person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

5 3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one Representative ; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose *three* ; Massachusetts, *eight* ; Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, *one* ; Connecticut, *five* ; New York, *six* ; New Jersey, *four* ; Pennsylvania, *eight* ; Delaware, *one* ; Maryland, *six* ; Virginia, *ten* ; North Carolina, *five* ; South Carolina, *five* ; and Georgia, *three*.

6 4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

7 5. The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other officers, and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

### Section 3. Senate

8 1. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature



thereof, for six years ; and each Senator shall have one vote.

9     2. Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided, as equally as may be, into three classes. The seats of the Senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year ; of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year ; and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year ; so that one third may be chosen every second year ; and if vacancies happen, by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the Legislature of any State, the Executive thereof may make temporary appointments, until the next meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

10     3. No person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

11     4. The Vice-President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

12     5. The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a President *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

13     6. The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments : when sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief-Justice shall preside ; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

14     7. Judgment, in cases of impeachment, shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit, under

the United States ; but the party convicted shall, nevertheless, be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment and punishment, according to law.

#### Section 4. Elections and Meetings of Congress

- 15** 1. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for Senators and Representatives shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof ; but the Congress may at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing Senators.
- 16** 2. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year; and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall, by law, appoint a different day.

#### Section 5. Powers and Duties of the Houses

- 17** 1. Each House shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members ; and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties, as each House may provide.
- 18** 2. Each House may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two thirds, expel a member.
- 19** 3. Each House shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may, in their judgment, require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either House, on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.
- 20** 4. Neither House, during the session of Congress, shall,

without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

### **Section 6. Rights, Privileges and Disabilities of Members**

- 21** 1. The Senators and Representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.
- 22** 2. No Senator or Representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either House during his continuance in office.

### **Section 7. Revenue Bills: President's Veto**

- 23** 1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose, or concur with, amendments, as on other bills.
- 24** 2. Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it; but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their

journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that House shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and, if approved by two-thirds of that House, it shall become a law. But, in all such cases, the votes of both Houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bills shall be entered on the journal of each House respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress, by their adjournment, prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

- 25** 3. Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment), shall be presented to the President of the United States, and before the same shall take effect shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

### Section 8. Legislative Powers of Congress

The Congress shall have power :

- 26** 1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States:
- 27** 2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States:
- 28** 3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes:
- 29** 4. To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uni-

form laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States:

- 30 5. To coin money; to regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin; and fix the standard of weights and measures:
- 31 6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States:
- 32 7. To establish post-offices and post-roads:
- 33 8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries:
- 34 9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court:
- 35 10. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations:
- 36 11. To declare war; grant letters of marque and reprisal; and make rules concerning captures on land and water:
- 37 12. To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years:
- 38 13. To provide and maintain a navy:
- 39 14. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces:
- 40 15. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions:
- 41 16. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States; reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress :
- 42 17. To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the Legislature of the State in which the same

shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings: And

- 43** 18. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

### **Section 9. Prohibitions upon the United States**

- 44** 1. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight; but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

- 45** 2. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended unless when, in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it.

- 46** 3. No bill of attainder or ex post facto law shall be passed.

- 47** 4. No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

- 48** 5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State. No preference shall be given, by any regulation of commerce or revenue, to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to or from one State be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

- 49** 6. No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

- 50** 7. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them shall, without the consent of the Congress, ac-



cept of any present, emolument, office, or title of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign State.

### Section 10. Prohibitions upon the States

**51** 1. No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation ; grant letters of marque and reprisal ; coin money ; emit bills of credit ; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts ; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts ; or grant any title of nobility.

**52** 2. No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws ; and the net produce of all duties and imposts laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States ; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress. No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

## ARTICLE II

### EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT: THE PRESIDENT AND VICE-PRESIDENT

#### Section 1. Term: Election: Qualifications: Salary: Oath of Office

**53** 1. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

**54** 2. Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a number of Electors equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress ; but no Senator or Representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an Elector.

The following clause has been superseded by Article XII. of the Amendments :

**55** 3. The Electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each, which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed, and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for President ; and if no person have a majority, then, from the five highest on the list, the said House shall, in like manner, choose the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote ; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the Electors shall be the Vice-President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them, by ballot, the Vice-President.

**56** 4. The Congress may determine the time of choosing the Electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes, which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

**57** 5. No person except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President ; neither

shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

**58** 6. In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President, and the Congress may, by law, provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President ; and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

**59** 7. The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected ; and he shall not receive, within that period, any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

**60** 8. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation :

“I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States ; and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

## Section 2. President's Executive Powers

**61** 1. The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States when called into the actual service of the United States ; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive Departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices ; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and

pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

**62** 2. He shall have power by and with the advice and consent of the Senate to make treaties, provided two thirds of the Senators present concur ; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate shall appoint, ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law ; but the Congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the Heads of Departments.

**63** 3. The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

### Section 3. President's Executive Powers (continued)

**64** 1. He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union ; and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient. He may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them ; and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper. He shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers. He shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed ; and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

### Section 4. Impeachment

**65** 1. The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States shall be removed from office on impeach-

ment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

## ARTICLE III

### JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT

#### Section 1. Courts: Terms of Office

- 66** 1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may, from time to time, ordain and establish. The judges both of the Supreme and inferior Courts shall hold their offices during good behavior; and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

#### Section 2. Jurisdiction

- 67** 1. The judicial power shall extend to all cases in law and equity arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party, to controversies between two or more States; between a State and citizens of another State; between citizens of different States; between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States; and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign States, citizens, or subjects.
- 68** 2. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be a party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with

such exceptions, and under such regulations, as the Congress shall make.

- 69 3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

### Section 3. Treason

- 70 1. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

- 71 2. The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason; but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

## ARTICLE IV

### RELATIONS OF STATES

#### Section 1. Public Records

- 72 1. Full faith and credit shall be given, in each State, to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

#### Section 2. Rights in one State of Citizens of another

- 73 1. The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all the privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.



**74** . 2. A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

**75** 3. No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor ; but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

### **Section 3. New States: Territories**

**76** 1. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union ; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State, nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned, as well as of the Congress.

**77** 2. The Congress shall have power to dispose of, and make all needful rules and regulations respecting, the territory or other property belonging to the United States ; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

### **Section 4. Protection afforded to States by the Nation**

**78** 1. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government ; and shall protect each of them against invasion, and on application of the Legislature, or of the Executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V

AMENDMENT

**79** The Congress, whenever two thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the Legislatures of two thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments ; which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress : provided, that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article ; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

ARTICLE VI

NATIONAL DEBTS : SUPREMACY OF NATIONAL LAW : OATH

**80** 1. All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution as under the Confederation.

**81** 2. This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made or which shall be made under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land, and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

**82** 3. The Senators and Representatives before mentioned,

and the members of the several Legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound, by oath or affirmation, to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

## ARTICLE VII

### ESTABLISHMENT OF CONSTITUTION

- 83** The ratification of the conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

[Constitution ratified by States, 1787-1790.]

## AMENDMENTS

### ARTICLE I

#### FREEDOM OF RELIGION, OF SPEECH, AND OF THE PRESS : RIGHT OF PETITION

- 84** Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof ; or abridging the freedom of speech or of the press ; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

[Adopted 1791.]

### ARTICLE II

#### RIGHT TO KEEP ARMS

- 85** A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed,

[Adopted 1791.]

## ARTICLE III

## QUARTERING OF SOLDIERS IN PRIVATE HOUSES

- 86 No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner ; nor in a time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

[Adopted 1791.]

## ARTICLE IV

## SEARCH WARRANTS

- 87 The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrant shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched and the person or things to be seized.

[Adopted 1791.]

## ARTICLE V

## CRIMINAL PROCEEDINGS

- 88 No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia when in actual service, in time of war or public danger ; nor shall any person be subject, for the same offence, to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb, nor shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself ; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property without due process of law ; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

[Adopted 1791.]

## ARTICLE VI

## CRIMINAL PROCEEDINGS

- 89** In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation ; to be confronted with the witnesses against him ; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor ; and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.
- [Adopted 1791.]

## ARTICLE VII

## JURY TRIAL IN CIVIL CASES

- 90** In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States than according to the rules of the common law.
- [Adopted 1791.]

## ARTICLE VIII

## EXCESSIVE PUNISHMENTS

- 91** Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.
- [Adopted 1791.]

## ARTICLE IX

## RIGHTS OF PEOPLE NOT NAMED

- 92** The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.
- [Adopted 1791.]

## ARTICLE X

## POWERS RESERVED TO STATES

- 93** The powers not delegated to the United States, by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

[Adopted 1791.]

## ARTICLE XI

## SUITS AGAINST STATES

- 94** The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State.

[Adopted 1798.]

## ARTICLE XII

## ELECTION OF PRESIDENT AND VICE-PRESIDENT

- 95** 1. The Electors shall meet in their respective States and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate;—the President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the



votes shall then be counted;—the person having the greatest number of votes for President shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then, from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the Representatives from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President.

96     2. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then, from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

97     3. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

[Adopted 1804.]

## ARTICLE XIII

## SLAVERY

## Section 1. Abolition of Slavery

98 Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

## Section 2. Power of Congress

Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

[Adopted 1865.]

## ARTICLE XIV

CIVIL RIGHTS : APPORTIONMENT OF REPRESENTATIVES :  
POLITICAL DISABILITIES : PUBLIC DEBT

## Section 1. Civil Rights

99 All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States ; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

## Section 2. Apportionment of Representatives

100 Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the

whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of Electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

### Section 3. Political Disabilities

**101** No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or Elector of President and Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

### Section 4. Public Debt

**102** The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obliga-

tion incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for loss or emancipation of any slave ; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

### Section 5. Power of Congress

The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

[Adopted 1868.]

## ARTICLE XV

### RIGHT OF SUFFRAGE

#### Section 1. Right of Negro to Vote

103

The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

#### Section 2. Power of Congress

The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

[Adopted 1870.]

# SUBJECT ANALYSIS

## 1. CONSTITUTION

### I. LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT; [Art. I.]

#### I. Its Composition;

- { 1. Division into Two Houses. [Sec. 1.]
- { 2. House of Representatives. [Sec. 2.]
- { 3. Senate. [Sec. 3.]

#### II. Legislative Regulations;

- { 1. Elections and Meetings. [Sec. 4.]
- { 2. Powers and Duties. [Sec. 5.]
- (Except law-making powers.)
- { 3. Privileges of and Prohibitions upon Members [Sec. 6.]

#### III. President's Veto Power. [Sec. 7.]

#### IV. Legislative Powers of Congress. [Sec. 8.]

#### V. Prohibitions upon the United States. [Sec. 9.]

#### VI. Prohibitions upon the States.\* [Sec. 10.]

### II. EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT—President and Vice-President; [Art. II.]

- { 1. (1) Term, (2) Election, (3) Qualifications, (4) Salary, (5) Oath. [Sec. 1.]
- { 2. President's Executive Powers. [Secs. 2 and 3.]
- { 3. Subject to Impeachment. [Sec. 4.]

### III. JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT; [Art. III.]

- { 1. (1) Courts, (2) Term of Office, (3) Salary. [Sec. 1.]
- { 2. Jurisdiction. [Sec. 2.]
- { 3. Treason. [Sec. 3.]

\* This logically does not belong to the division "The National Government," but to "Miscellaneous Provisions," but it is thought best to retain the order of the

**I. RELATIONS OF STATES; [Art. IV.]**

- 1. Records of one State in another. [Sec. 1.]
- 2. Rights in one State of Citizens of another. [Sec. 2.]
- 3. (1) New States, (2) U. S. Territory. [Sec. 3.]
- 4. Protection of States by Nation. [Sec. 4.]

**II. AMENDMENT. [Art. V.]**

**III. (1) NATIONAL DEBT; (2) NATIONAL SUPREMACY; (3) OATH. [Art. VI.]**

**IV. ESTABLISHMENT OF CONSTITUTION. [Art. VII.]**

**II. AMENDMENTS**

1. Arts. I.-VIII. Prohibitions on Congress as to Personal Rights.
2. Arts. IX. and X. Rights not named in Constitution.
3. Art. XI. Judicial Jurisdiction.
4. Art. XII. Election of President and Vice-President.
5. Art. XIII. Abolition of Slavery.
6. Art. XIV. (1) Equal Civil Rights, (2) Apportionment of Representatives, (3) Political Disabilities, (4) Public Debt.
7. Art. XV. Right of Suffrage.

---

Constitution itself. There are some other cases where the true logical order is not followed in the Constitution. The provisions regarding the choosing of officers and impeachment in sections 2 and 3 of Article I. would more properly come in section 5, as they relate to certain powers of the Houses. That regarding revenue bills in section 7 would properly fall in the following section, as it relates to the law-making powers of Congress.



## SECTION II.—LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT

## CHAPTER XXV

## HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES

**1. Preamble**—The preamble is an important part of the Constitution. The object of the Constitution was to remedy the defects existing under the Confederation, and some of the clauses of the preamble refer to those defects (1).\* We have seen that the Union then was a very imperfect one. Instead of there being “domestic tranquillity,” the States were continually quarrelling. It was impossible to “provide for the common defence” of the country against foreign enemies, or to “promote the general welfare” by broad measures, unless there were a strong central government. Had the Constitution not been adopted and had the States remained independent, it is not probable that the country would have had the unexampled prosperity that it has.

**2. Congress**—This is the name of the national legislative body, and like the State legislatures it is divided into two Houses, called the Senate and House of Representatives (2). The former represents the States, and the latter the people. The members of the House,† called Representatives, are elected by the people of the States every second year (3). Members

---

\* These numbers refer to the paragraphs of the Constitution. The pupil should turn back to it at each reference.

† The House of Representatives is frequently called simply the “House” when spoken of in connection with the Senate.

of the Congress under the Confederation were appointed by the State legislatures, and for one year.

**3. Electors**—There was much discussion and difference of opinion in the Convention as to what should be the qualifications of the voters who should elect the Representatives. The qualifications of electors were various in the different States. In some of them owners of property, or tax-payers, in others freeholders\* only, were voters. In some, only the latter voted for the higher officers; in a few, suffrage was almost universal. Finally, as a compromise, it was decided that the qualifications should be the same in each State as those requisite for electors of its lower house, as it was presumed no State would object to such a rule (3).

**4. Qualifications**—A Representative must be twenty-five years of age, must have been a citizen seven years, and must live in the State from which he is chosen (4). The reasons for this will be readily understood. If voters must have certain qualifications, surely those who make laws for them should have higher ones. (See Chap. V.)

**5. Number**—The Constitution does not limit the House to any definite number of Representatives; it only declares that the number shall not exceed one for every 30,000 inhabitants. Otherwise it might become too large. It requires an enumeration of the inhabitants every ten years; and the next Congress thereafter determines the ratio of representation† and the

---

\* A freeholder is one owning land, either absolutely or during his own or another's life.

† The word *ratio* signifies rate, or proportion. It here means the number or portion of the inhabitants entitled to a Representative.

number of Representatives, and apports them among the States (5).

**6. Present Number**—The first House of Representatives consisted of sixty-five members, and the ratio was about one to every 50,000 inhabitants. Since then, as the population has increased, Congress has increased the ratio, in order that the House might not grow too large to transact business; but in spite of that the House has grown, until now (1901) it consists of three hundred and fifty-seven members, being about one for every 173,901.

**7. Every State Represented**—But it may happen (and has happened) that some States have not a population equal to the ratio. In view of this the Constitution provides that no State shall lose its representation in the House, by declaring that each State shall have at least one Representative (5).

**8. Apportionment**—With regard to how many Representatives the different States should have, the Convention found it difficult to agree. In the Congress under the Confederation, it will be remembered, the States were entitled to an equal number of delegates, and each State had one vote. But now it was proposed to apportion the Representatives according to population. On this point there were two causes of contention. First: The small States opposed it, because it gave them fewer Representatives, and therefore less power in Congress. The large States insisted on it, saying that they ought to have greater power because they had greater interests. Finally the small States yielded with regard to the House of Representatives. Second: The slaveholding (Southern) States claimed that, in reckoning the population for the pur-

pose of apportioning Representatives, slaves should be included ; the non-slaveholding (Northern) States \* insisted that only free persons should be included, as the slaves could not vote themselves, and it was unjust to give the free persons extra votes simply because they owned certain property—that being what slaves were considered. The controversy on this point rose so high, and the parties were for a long time so unyielding, that fears were entertained of a sudden dissolution of the Convention.

**9. Result**—The result was a compromise. The Northern States finally consented that three-fifths of the slaves [the words “all other persons” in section 2 (5) mean slaves] should be counted, and the Southern States consented that direct taxes should be laid on the same basis ; so that the Southern States would have the larger share of Representatives, but would pay the larger share of direct taxes.† But, as it resulted, the advantage, contrary to anticipation, was almost wholly on the side of the Southern States, for very few direct taxes were laid before the late Civil War, and thus they obtained the increased represen-

---

\* Slavery then existed in all the States except Massachusetts ; but as there were very few slaves in the Northern States, they are generally spoken of as if they were at that time non-slaveholding States.

† To illustrate this rule by an example : Suppose a State contained 600,000 free persons and 500,000 slaves. Adding three-fifths of the number of slaves (300,000) to the number of free persons gives 900,000 as the number of the representative population : and the State would have been entitled to *three* Representatives for every *two* that a State which contained 600,000 free inhabitants and no slaves would have. So in apportioning taxes according to population, the State in the case we have supposed would have been obliged to raise *three* dollars for every *two* that it would have been obliged to raise if no slaves had been counted.

tation without the corresponding increase in taxation.

**10. Present Rule**—The state of things described in the last section with regard to apportionment existed up to the Civil War. The 13th, 14th, and 15th Amendments changed the system. Now Representatives are apportioned in proportion to the total population, whether white or black (100).\*

**11. Territories**—By an act of Congress, every Territory in which a government has been established is entitled to send a delegate to Congress, who has a right to take part in the debates of the House, but not the right of voting there.

## CHAPTER XXVI

### SENATE

**1. Reasons for Two Houses**—In this country and in England it is thought best that the legislative body should consist of two houses. If there were only one house it might pass some very harmful or unjust laws, either through undue haste, ignorance, popular excitement, or the undue influence of popular but mistaken leaders. But if there were another house, it would be improbable that the very same influences should exist in both, and thus one house would correct the hasty legislation of the other. And if one house were of a higher grade than the other, composed of wiser men, it is seen that its restrictive influence would be of the greater value.

---

\* The number of Indians not taxed is so small that it need not be considered.

**2. Character of Senate**—For these reasons the Constitution has established the Senate, and has made it a body of greater dignity than the House of Representatives. The causes which make the Senate the more select body are four in number: (1) It has fewer members; (2) they are elected by the State legislatures instead of by the people; (3) the term of office is longer; and (4) the qualifications are higher.

**3. State Equality**—In the Senate the States are equal in power, each having two members (8). The Convention readily agreed upon dividing Congress into two branches; but, as has been observed, it was difficult to settle the mode of representation. The delegates from the large States insisted upon a representation in proportion to population, in the Senate as well as in the House; and the small States contended for equality in both branches. The debate was long and animated; and it became apparent that, as in the case of slave representation in the House, there must be a compromise. This was at length effected; the small States consenting to a proportional representation in the House, and the large States to an equal representation in the Senate.\* Thus while the House represents the people, the Senate represents the States, and this is one instance in which the federation principle is retained. (See page 103, sec. 7.)

**4. Voting**—In the Congress under the Confederation the voting was by States, but the Senate differs

---

\* It will be noticed that in the Convention which framed the Constitution there were many opposing interests, and that compromises were frequently necessary, each State giving up something. It was a spirit of patriotism which caused this, as well as the instinct of self-preservation, for without compromise no permanent union could have been formed, saving the rights of all.



in that respect. There the Senators vote separately, the vote of each Senator counting one, as in the House; and a question is decided by the united votes of a majority of the members, and not by the vote of a majority of the States (8).

**5. Term**—The period of six years was also the result of a compromise in the Convention (8). The terms proposed varied from three to nine years, or even longer. One object in making it longer than a Representative's term was to obtain a body of men wiser and more experienced than the House would contain. Where a man is to be elected for a long term, greater care will be used in selecting him. A second object was to obtain independence of popular impulses. The Representatives were to reflect the will of the people, and so it was provided that they might be often changed: but the Senators were to serve as a check upon hasty action by the people's representatives, and for this purpose they must feel independent of the people to a certain degree. A long term tends to give this independence. A third object was to check frequent changes in the laws. The oftener a legislature is changed the more changeable and uncertain will be the laws; and uncertainty and change often do more injury than evil laws.

**6. Gradual Change**—Senators are not all elected at the same time. One-third go out of office every two years (9). In favor of this arrangement are two important considerations. First: It secures to the public at all times the benefit of the experience of at least two-thirds of the body. Whereas, if the terms of all the Senators expired at once, their places might be supplied mainly by new members without the requi



site knowledge and experience. Second: While a long term is intended to guard against the too frequent changes in the laws, it may also prevent, for too long a time, the amendment or the repeal of bad laws. Such amendment or repeal may be hastened by the election of new members in the place of the one-third who retire every two years.

**7. Qualifications**—Why these are higher than in the case of Representatives has been explained (see sec. 2). An additional reason for requiring them to have been citizens of the United States nine years is found in the fact that, with the President, they make treaties with foreign nations (62). A Senator should therefore have lived here long enough to have become free from bias in favor of his native country.

## CHAPTER XXVII

### GENERAL LEGISLATIVE REGULATIONS \*

**1. Choice of Officers**—It is considered important in legislative bodies that each house should have the choice of its own officers, in order that it may have proper control of them. A Speaker not responsible to the House of Representatives (*e.g.*, if appointed by the President) might baffle the will of the entire House. One exception to this rule is that the Vice-President presides in the Senate. The States follow this by having the Lieutenant-Governor preside in the State Senate (7, 12).

---

\* Most of the provisions contained in sections 4, 5, 6, and 7 of Article I. will be easily understood, and many of them are similar to provisions in the State constitutions. We will speak only of a few which require some explanation.

**2. Impeachment**—Impeachment and its trial have been described before (see page 82). As in the State legislatures, so in Congress, the lower House impeaches and the upper House tries. The officers subject to impeachment by the national House of Representatives are the President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States (not of any State) (65). This means all members of the civil (*i.e.*, not military), executive, and judicial departments of the nation. Thus neither members of Congress nor of the army or navy can be removed in this way. In practice only officials of the highest rank are ever impeached.

**3. Meetings of Congress**—Congress meets every year, in December (16). But as every second year the entire House of Representatives and one-third of the Senate are elected anew, the two sessions following an election are classed together and called "A Congress." The meeting of Congress in December, 1893, was the first session of the 53d Congress.

**4. Rules**—Like State legislatures, each House of Congress has its rules, which in most cases are strictly followed. A bill is introduced, referred to its appropriate committee, reported by the committee, read, debated, and passed (or rejected), in substantially the same manner as in State legislatures (see page 44). But at any time either House may set aside all its rules, and pass laws in any manner it sees fit, provided no provision of the Constitution is violated.

**5. Salary**—In the Convention there was much discussion as to whether it would be wise to allow salaries to members of Congress. On the one hand it was said salaries would tempt unworthy men to intrigue for an election; on the other hand, the worthiest men

might be shut out through poverty if no compensation were allowed. It was decided to allow compensation. The amount is fixed by Congress itself (21).

**6. Arrest of Members**—Members of Congress (except in certain cases) cannot be arrested when Congress is in session (21). This is in order that the people who elect them may not be deprived of their services.

**7. Liberty of Speech**—The clause which says that a member “shall not be questioned in any other place” for any speech, means that he shall not be sued, either civilly or criminally, for anything he says in debate (21). This is in order that members may feel the fullest freedom and independence.

**8. Revenue Bills**—These are bills for raising money for the government, either by direct or indirect taxation. All other laws may originate in either House, but these must be passed by the House of Representatives first (23). The reason for this is that since the people pay the taxes, it is appropriate that the Representatives elected directly by them should propose all such laws.

**9. Veto**—But a bill having passed both Houses is not yet a law. It must be presented to the President, who is thus a part of the legislative department. There are three ways in which a bill, after having passed both Houses, may become a law: (1) it may be signed by the President; (2) he may neglect to sign it for ten days; and (3) he may return it to Congress within ten days, and each House may pass it a second time by a two-thirds vote (24, 25).

## CHAPTER XXVIII

## POWERS OF TAXATION

**1. Nature of the National Government**—Before treating of the several legislative powers we will first speak of a certain characteristic of the General Government in which it differs from the States, and which must be always kept in mind when considering its law-making powers. The United States Government is a government of *delegated* powers; that is, powers which have been *delegated* to it by the States, or the people of the States. It has only such powers as the People have given it, in the Constitution. Hence it is called a government of *limited* powers. The States, on the other hand, existing before the General Government, and possessing entire sovereignty, at least in theory, may exercise all powers which they have not surrendered to the General Government. In other words, their powers are *unlimited*, except so far as they have parted with any of their original powers. Therefore, when the question arises whether the President or Congress have certain powers, we look in the Constitution, and if they are not there granted, they do not exist. But when the question arises, with regard to a State, whether its people have a certain power, we approach it from the other side and say they have the power unless the United States Constitution has received it. Most of the legislative powers of Congress are enumerated in Article I., section 8. The first one grants the power to tax (26).

**2. Necessity for the Taxing Power**—This is one of

the most important powers of government. A government without the power to raise money hardly deserves the name. Without money it would have no power to enforce obedience to its laws, for it could not pay soldiers or civil officers, and men will not serve without pay. We have seen how the Confederation tried the experiment and failed.\* This was one of its errors, corrected in the Constitution.

**3. Manner of Taxation**—Taxes† may be laid by the General Government in three ways: (1) upon persons directly, as poll or property taxes; (2) upon goods when they are imported into the country from abroad; or (3) upon goods when they are manufactured and used here. This clause (26) would also grant the power to lay export duties—that is, duties to be paid

---

\* See page 98.

† The four words, *taxes*, *duties*, *imposts*, and *excises*, are not used to mean four different things, but only to cover all the usual methods of taxation. These words have not fixed meanings. Some of them have different meanings in different connections. At times some have the same meaning as others. Their most usual meanings when used in connection with one another are perhaps these: *taxes*, direct taxes laid on individuals, either as poll taxes, or taxes in proportion to property (see Chap. XV. for distinction between direct and indirect taxes); *duties*, indirect taxes of all kinds, including taxes on exports, imports, and excises; *imposts*, duties on imports; *excises*, duties on goods manufactured and used here. Another word, *customs*, usually means duties on imports and exports, but in this country, since there are no export duties, it usually means the same as *imposts*.

Duties are *specific* and *ad valorem*. A *specific* duty is a specified sum of money charged upon every yard, pound, or gallon of any commodity. Thus, a duty of ten cents on a pound of tea, or of one dollar on a yard of cloth, or of fifty cents on a gallon of wine, is a specific duty. *Ad valorem* is a Latin phrase, signifying *according to the value*. An *ad valorem* duty is a certain *percentage on the value or price*.

on goods when sent from this to foreign countries—did not a later provision forbid it (48).

**4. Objects**—The objects for which taxes may be laid are also enumerated in the same clause (26). Since it is the theory of the Constitution that Congress shall have power over only those matters which affect the whole country, leaving all local matters to the States, so no tax can be laid except for some purpose of interest to all the people of the Nation. But the phrase “general welfare” is very broad.

**5. Uniformity**—The Constitution is careful to provide that no State shall pay more than its just share of taxes. There are several provisions regulating this. First, direct taxes must be laid in proportion to population (5); second, all indirect taxes which may be laid (*i.e.*, imposts and excises) must be uniform throughout the country (26); third, no export duties can be laid (48). The reasons for the last provision are that a tariff\* of export duties which would bear equally on the States would be very difficult to make, since they do not export the same articles, some exporting cotton, others grain, and others manufactures, and that it would constitute a constant cause of irritation between the States. For instance, the Representatives of the cotton and grain States might combine and pass a law laying very low duties on cotton and grain and high ones on manufactures.

**6. Taxes which have been laid**—Up to the late Civil War very few direct taxes had been laid by the National Government. They were then laid for a few years, but now (1894) there are none. Some excise duties have been and are now laid, chiefly on liquors

---

\* A *tariff* means a list of duties laid.



and tobacco, articles that are not necessary to the people, but are luxuries. During the Civil War the excise duties collected were about equal to the customs. But from the beginning very many duties on imports have been laid, and it is from this source that most of the revenue has been raised.

**7. Power to Borrow Money**—This is given to Congress for the reasons already described, which justify State debts (page 74, sec. 7) (27). This power was exercised during the war until the national debt nearly reached the sum of \$3,000,000,000. Without this power the government would have been almost helpless, for its regular income would have been wholly inadequate.

## CHAPTER XXIX

### POWER TO REGULATE COMMERCE (28)

**1. Why given to Congress**—This was for two reasons: (1) because it was a matter of general and universal interest, and (2) because of the benefits that would flow from uniformity. The need of no power was more deeply felt under the Confederation than the power to regulate foreign trade. We thus see that the power to lay duties comes from two clauses. One (26) gives Congress the power, but only for purposes of revenue. If none should be needed for that purpose, or if the duties laid for revenue were not sufficient to regulate commerce, they might be laid under the other clause (28) to any amount.

**2. Nature of Regulation**—This regulation is of two kinds: (1) the laying of duties on goods imported from

abroad, for the purpose of protecting the commercial interests of this country; and (2) making regulations which shall tend to render navigation less dangerous. The manner and object of regulating commerce by means of import duties will be seen if we consider the trade of England and America as it was after the Revolution.

**3. Retaliatory Duties**—England pursued the policy, for her own benefit, of laying heavy duties on merchandise imported there from this country. That injured us, and so, in order to compel her to abandon the policy, we wished to lay duties on articles sent here by the English merchants.\* Under the Confederation this was attempted, but as each State could lay what duties it chose, there was no uniformity, and each would try to secure the trade by laying lower duties than the rest. So the Constitution gave Congress exclusive authority over the whole subject, and retaliatory duties were laid.

**4. Protection**—Another way in which it was

---

\* The effect of these duties may not be quite clear: Suppose the market value of a bushel of wheat in Great Britain to be \$1, and the cost of raising the article here and carrying it there to be (together) \$1. We can then raise it here and sell it there along with the English producer. If now a duty of 40 cents a bushel is laid upon wheat from abroad, we cannot sell it for less than \$1.40, and the English consumer, instead of buying it with this duty added, will buy of the English producer. But, the people of this country being then chiefly agricultural, more wheat was produced here than there was a market for, and the American farmer was dependent on the foreign markets. Being shut out of the English market, the value of our products fell, and we suffered loss. It was thought then that if we retaliated and laid duties on manufactured articles (of which England sent us a great number), and so shut them out, she would be influenced to abandon her duties.

thought duties on imports would protect the commercial interests of the country was in encouraging and protecting the manufacturing interests.\* This theory is called *protection*, and is the policy which the country has followed. High protective duties have been laid almost from the beginning, on articles manufactured from cotton, wool, and iron.

**5. Free Trade**—But it is believed by many that protection is a mistaken policy, at least in this country at present, and that while it encourages manufactures it injures some other interests. The opposing policy is called *free trade*. Its supporters urge that if the yard of cloth can be brought here and sold for less than it can be made here, the people who pay for it lose by shutting it out, and the few manufacturers are the only ones who gain.† The British Government now acts on the policy of free trade.

**6. Collection of Duties**—Certain places on the coast are designated by the laws of Congress, called

---

\* Suppose foreign cloth of a certain quality is sold in this country for \$2.50 a yard, and cloth of the same quality manufactured here cannot be made for less than \$3 a yard. There would now be no encouragement to any one to engage in the manufacture of such cloth, because, in order to sell it, he must reduce the price to that of the foreign article, which would subject him to a loss of 50 cents a yard. Let now a duty of \$1 a yard be laid upon the foreign cloth, and the price would be \$3.50, and preference would be given to the domestic article, unless the importer should reduce the price of his foreign cloth to \$3; in which case, it is to be presumed, about an equal quantity of each would be consumed, and the duty of \$1 a yard on the foreign cloth would go into the United States Treasury.

† The question of free trade or protection belongs to the science of Political Economy; and it is therefore necessary in a work of this character only to refer to the matter and not attempt to give the arguments used in support of either policy.

*ports of entry*, and a vessel must first come to one of these, where the master delivers a statement of the cargo to an officer, appointed by the President, called a *collector of customs*. The cargo is then examined, and the duties calculated and paid to the collector. If not paid the collector seizes the goods, which are forfeited to the government.

**7. Registry**—Another regulation of commerce is that by which a vessel built and owned in this country may be *registered* on the collector's books as an American vessel. As such it has certain privileges which foreign vessels do not have. A foreign vessel is not allowed to engage in the coast trade here. An American vessel, registered, is in all places entitled to the full protection of our government, and if it is taken or injured by foreigners in foreign waters, the United States Government must demand reparation from the government to which they belong.

**8. Clearance and Entry**—Every time a vessel (foreign or domestic) leaves a port, what is called a *clearance* must be obtained. This is a certificate by the collector that all the fees upon the vessel have been paid, and the law been complied with in all respects. So when a vessel arrives at a port, the master must report its arrival to the collector of the port, deliver up a statement of its cargo and the clearance he received at the port from which he came. This is called *entering* the vessel.\*

**9. Navigation Laws**—Coming now to the second class of regulations of commerce, Congress has passed many laws to render navigation less dangerous. The

---

\* In the coasting trade between ports of the United States, clearance and entry are not required, in general.

following are some of the subjects: providing for light-houses, buoys, signal stations, and life-saving stations along the coast; improving harbors; requiring vessels to take licensed pilots when near the coast; prescribing how many passengers and what provisions shall be carried; quarantine;\* and many similar ones.

**10. Commerce with Indians**—In granting to Congress the power to regulate commerce† “with the Indian tribes,” it was intended to lessen the dangers of war. Murders and war had been provoked by the improper conduct of some of the States. It was believed that by a uniform policy difficulties would be more likely to be prevented. This was more important then than now, when the number of Indians has become so insignificant.

## CHAPTER XXX

### OTHER POWERS RELATING TO PEACE

**1. Citizens and Aliens**—The general distinction between them is this: *citizens* are those born in this country;‡ *aliens* are those born in a foreign country, whether living here or in the foreign country. Both

---

\* This means a period of time for which vessels are detained before entering a port, so that they may be examined to see if there is any malignant disease on board. Quarantines are required by the health laws of the States; and by the laws of Congress vessels are to be subject to the health laws of the State at whose ports they arrive.

† Commerce, in a broad sense, as used in this clause of the Constitution, means not only trade by sea and land, but all intercourse.

‡ Prior to the Civil War white people alone were citizens in the Southern States, but now under the 14th Amendment white and black stand on the same basis (99).

Children take the citizenship of their parents.

include men, women, and children. But after living here a certain time an alien may become a citizen. Aliens have not all the rights of citizens. They usually cannot vote (see page 27).<sup>\*</sup> In many States they have not full power to own real estate. In general, they are considered subjects of the nation from which they come, and not of this.

✓ **2. Naturalization**—But to deny foreigners the rights of citizens after they shall have acquired a fixed residence here, and a knowledge of their civil and political duties, would be illiberal and unjust. The process by which an alien may become a citizen is called *naturalization*. Congress has the power to make a uniform rule (29). The reason for this is that if it were left to the States, a person having become naturalized in one State might, on removing into another, be deprived of the rights of citizenship until he should have been naturalized by the laws of such State. Besides, by the Constitution a citizen of any State is entitled to the privileges of a citizen in any other State (73). Now, after a person is once naturalized, he is a citizen of the United States and also of the State in which he resides at the time (99). By removing to another he becomes a citizen of that.

**3. When Allowed**—The laws of Congress prescribe that an alien may be naturalized after living in this country five years. The first step is to declare on

---

\* Naturalization and the right to vote are two separate matters, which must not be confused. Not all of those who are naturalized are given the right to vote (*e.g.*, women and children). Although most States do give foreigners the right to vote, when naturalized, still they need not; and some States even allow some aliens to vote. The State regulates voting, the United States naturalization.



oath before a court that it is his intention to become a citizen. This declaration he may make as soon as he arrives, or at any time. After the declaration he must wait two years. After that, the court, if satisfied that he has resided five years in the United States, and one year in the State in which the court is held, may admit him as a citizen. He then, before the court, renounces his allegiance to his old country, and swears to support the Constitution of the United States. But no alien can be compelled to become a citizen against his will.

**4. Bankrupt Laws**—A *bankrupt* is an insolvent debtor; that is, a person who is unable to pay all his just debts. A *bankrupt law* is a law which, upon an insolvent's giving up all his property to his creditors, discharges him from the payment of his debts. Such laws are designed for the benefit of honest and unfortunate debtors, who, by having the enjoyment of their future earnings secured to them, are encouraged to engage anew in industrial pursuits. The reason the power was given to Congress to pass such laws (29) was that if it were left to the States the object could not be accomplished. No State law could release a debtor from debts to a creditor living out of the State, nor from debts contracted in another State. The dissimilar and conflicting laws of the different States, and the entire want of them in others, had caused great inconvenience. The most recent national bankrupt law was passed in 1898.\*

---

\* Four such laws have been passed by Congress. Two of them existed but a year or two. The third was passed in 1867 and lasted until 1878. The reason for this short duration was the general sentiment that it allowed many dishonest debtors to procure a release from their debts.

**5. Coinage**—The coinage of the money is in every country a prerogative of the government. Congress has several powers with regard to coinage (30). No State can coin money (51). The object here, also, was to make uniformity throughout the country. Exercising these powers Congress has passed laws by which we have a uniform currency throughout the Nation, and the convenient decimal system of dollars and cents, instead of the awkward system of pounds, shillings, and pence which existed before the Constitution. The value of coin has been regulated in different ways: such as, by deciding how much metal (gold or silver) shall be put in a given coin, or what domestic coins foreign coins shall be equal to. The place where money\* is coined is called a *mint*. There are several in the country, the principal one being at Philadelphia.

**6. Weights and Measures**—For the convenience of trade between the States, the weights and measures, like the coinage, should be the same in all the States. Without such uniformity commerce among the States would meet with very great embarrassment. Yet Congress has never exercised the power given it on this subject (30). The States still have the power to adopt their own standard.†

---

\* It must be remembered that coin is not the only money in the country. We have now in use United States notes, national-bank notes, gold and silver certificates, etc. Only coin and the United States notes are legal tender—i.e., if a man wishes to pay a debt he must pay with one of those two, if the creditor insists upon it.

† The weights and measures used throughout the States are, however, substantially the same. In 1836 the United States Government sent to each State a full set of weights and measures, as used in the Custom House, and these have been adopted by the States as their standards.

**7. Post-Office**—The power of Congress over the mail is one of the most important it has (32).<sup>\*</sup> In every nation the government assumes charge of the Post-office. It is impossible to conceive all the difficulties which might attend the exercise of this power had it been left to the different States. A uniform system of regulations is indispensable to efficiency, and could be secured only by placing this power in the hands of Congress.

**8. Protection of Authors and Inventors**—This Congress has power to effect by granting *copyrights* and *patents* (33). “Science and useful arts” are promoted by new books and new inventions. But if every man had the right to print and sell every book or writing, without compensation to the author, there would be little to encourage men of ability to spend, as is often done, years of labor in preparing new and useful works. Nor would men of genius be likely to spend their time and money in inventing and constructing expensive machinery, if others had an equal right to make and sell the same. This power is given to Congress for the reason that if the States alone exercised it, no State could punish infringers beyond its own limits. In pursuance of the power here given, Congress has enacted the copyright and patent laws.

**9. Copyright**—A *copyright* is the sole right to print and sell a book, map, etc. It is obtained by the author by following a few simple requirements, the chief one of which is the mailing of two copies as soon as it is published to the Librarian of Congress.

---

<sup>\*</sup> A post-road is a road over which the mail is carried. All rail-roads are by law made post-roads, and there are very many others besides.

This secures to the author the sole right to print and sell his work anywhere in the United States for twenty-eight years, at the expiration of which time he may have his right continued for fourteen years longer.

**10. Patents**—A *patent* is the sole right to make, use, or sell a new invention. It is obtained by the inventor from the government, but there is much more to be done than in the case of a copyright. The Commissioner of Patents superintends the granting of patents. The Patent Office is a part of the Department of the Interior (see page 178). To secure his patent the inventor must send to the Commissioner of Patents a written description of his invention, with drawings and model, and specify the improvement which he claims as his own discovery. If the examiners do not find that the invention had been before discovered, a patent is issued therefor, on the payment of certain fees. This secures to the inventor the sole right to make, sell, or use his invention anywhere in the United States for seventeen years.\*

**11. Courts**—Under the power to establish inferior courts (34) Congress has established a system of courts which will be described later (see page 180).

**12. Piracy**—Congress (and not the States) has power to define and punish crimes committed on the high seas (35). *Piracy* is commonly defined to be forcible

---

\* In the case of both copyrights and patents, the granting of them is not proof that the book or invention is new. If any one is sued for infringement (*i.e.*, printing the book or using the invention without permission from the one holding the copyright or patent) he may claim that the book or the invention is not new, and if he proves it the court adjudges the copyright or patent to be void.

robbery or depredation upon the high seas. But the term *felony*\* was not exactly defined by law, consequently its meaning was not the same in all the States. It was sometimes applied to capital offences only; at other times, to all crimes above misdemeanors. The power to define these offences is given to Congress for the sake of uniformity, and the power to punish them, because the States have no jurisdiction beyond their own limits.

**13. Offences against the Law of Nations**—Nor were these clearly defined. The power to define and punish them is given to Congress (35), because our citizens are regarded by foreign nations as citizens of the United States and not as citizens of their respective States; and therefore the General Government alone is responsible to foreign nations for injuries committed on the high seas by our citizens.

**14. District of Columbia**—In 1790 this became the seat of government. Over it, and over all the forts, arsenals, etc., belonging to the United States, Congress has exclusive authority† (42). This authority is necessary for the protection of the government. If the seat of government were within the jurisdiction of a State, Congress and other public officers would be dependent on the State authority for protection in the discharge of their duties, and the State might refuse them protection. ‡

---

\* Generally used to denote an offense of a high grade, punishable either capitally, or by a term of imprisonment.

† So also with regard to all territory not included within any State (see page 190).

‡ This actually happened to the Continental Congress. It was once, near the close of the Revolution, treated with insult and abuse while sitting at Philadelphia; and the executive authority of Pennsylvania having failed to afford protection, it adjourned to Princeton, in the State of New Jersey.

**15. Implied Powers**—It is a general rule that where one is granted the power to do a thing, it implies that he shall have power to use all the necessary means to accomplish it. The last clause of section 8 (43) then was unnecessary, for the granting of the “foregoing powers” granted also the power “to make laws necessary and proper for carrying them into execution.” \* The reason the clause was added was to satisfy all possible doubt. Under this right of implied powers Congress has passed laws which it has been difficult to refer to their proper clauses in the Constitution, and which have occasioned much discussion; such as laws establishing the national banks, incorporating railroads, purchasing foreign territory (such as Louisiana and Florida), and making the United States notes legal tender. In very many cases the laws passed under implied powers are wider in their scope and more important than those expressly authorized.

**16, Other Powers**—In other parts of the Constitution other legislative powers are given to Congress. They will be noticed in their order.

---

\* For example: The power “to regulate commerce” includes the power to cause the construction of breakwaters and light-houses, the removal of obstructions from navigable rivers, and the improvement of harbors; for in regulating and facilitating commerce these works and improvements are necessary. So the power “to establish post-offices” implies the power to punish persons for robbing the mail.



## CHAPTER XXXI

## POWERS RELATING TO WAR

**1. Declaring War**—Congress alone has this right (36). It is very evident that a single State ought not to be allowed to make war. The power to declare it is justly given to the National Government, because the people of all the States become involved in its evils. In monarchical governments this important power is exercised by the king, or supreme ruler. But here it is entrusted, not to the President, but to the representatives of the people, because the people are they who have to bear the burdens of war.

**2. Letters of Marque and Reprisal**—These are commissions issued by a government to private persons authorizing them to seize the property of a foreign nation or its subjects, as a reparation for some injury.\* Congress has exclusive power to grant them (36, 51). A State should not be permitted to authorize its citizens to make reprisals; for, although such authority, when granted in time of peace, is designed to enable the citizens of one country to obtain redress for injuries committed by those of another, without a resort

---

\* They are sometimes called simply *letters of marque*, and are often issued in time of war, and sometimes in time of peace. When issued, it is generally to the owners or master of some armed vessel, which then goes out and captures the vessels and property of the foreign nation on the ocean. Such a vessel is called a *privateer* (see page 281).

This method of obtaining reparation seems more like retaliation. But many things are allowed in war which are not justifiable at other times. Privateering is not as extensively practised as formerly.

to war, the tendency of reprisals is to provoke rather than to prevent war; and when granted in time of war it is merely one means of carrying on the war. In both cases the National Government alone should have the power to grant the commissions, as it alone has the power to declare war, because the whole country may become involved. The entire subject of war is taken away from the States and given to the Nation.

**3. Captures**—As a part of its power over war, Congress has power to make rules concerning the property captured in time of war. The general practice is to distribute the proceeds of the property among the captors as a reward for bravery and a stimulus to exertion. The property captured is called *prize*. But proof must be made in a court of the United States that the property was taken from the enemy, before it is condemned by the court as a prize.

**4. Army and Navy**—So also Congress has power to raise, maintain, and make rules for the government of an army and navy (37-40).<sup>\*</sup> Under the Confederation the Congress could declare war, but could not raise or pay a single soldier (see page 98). A government must have an army, or at least the power to raise one. Without one it is virtually powerless, for not only must a nation be ready to fight foreign foes, but also occasions will arise when its supremacy can be

---

<sup>\*</sup> The policy of the country has been to maintain a very small army and navy, and undoubtedly much of our prosperity, as compared with other nations, is due to this. In European nations not only do the people have to bear the burden of an immense standing army, but in many of them several years of the best part of every man's life must be spent in service.

maintained against insurrections or rebellions among its own subjects in no other way. So also maritime nations must have a navy to protect their commerce. In ordinary times the United States army and navy are filled by voluntary *enlistments*, but when these do not furnish enough men Congress provides for a *conscription*, called during our late war a *draft*. By this the number needed are chosen by lot from among the citizens, and they are compelled to go, or furnish substitutes. In order that Congress shall not lose control of the army when raised, it is provided that no appropriation shall be made for a longer period than two years. It may, however, make as many successive appropriations as it sees fit, and they are now made every year for such year.

**5. Militia**—Congress also can provide for calling out the militia (40). It has so provided by delegating the power to the President, to be so exercised when he thinks the necessity provided for by the Constitution has arisen.\*

\* Though the President is Commander-in-Chief of the army, navy, and militia, Congress still has practical control of all, for before they can be paid Congress must raise the money and appropriate it (49). In ordinary times this is done every year.

## EXPRESS POWERS OF CONGRESS

[Under Art. I. sec. 8.]

## I. ORDINARY PEACE POWERS

## I. RAISING MONEY;

- |   |                  |  |   |                          |   |                      |                  |
|---|------------------|--|---|--------------------------|---|----------------------|------------------|
| { | {                | 1. By Levying,   | { | For the<br>purpose<br>of | { | 1. Payment of Debts, |                  |
|   |                  | <table border="0"> <tr> <td style="padding: 0 10px;">{</td> <td>1. Direct Taxes,</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 0 10px;">{</td> <td>2. Imposts, or</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 0 10px;">{</td> <td>3. Excises :</td> </tr> </table> |   |                          |   | {                    | 1. Direct Taxes, |
| { | 1. Direct Taxes, |  |   |                          |   |                      |                  |
| { | 2. Imposts, or   |  |   |                          |   |                      |                  |
| { | 3. Excises :     |  |   |                          |   |                      |                  |

2. By Borrowing.

## II. COMMERCE, REGULATION OF;

- |   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| { | 1. Foreign,          |
|   | 2. Among States, and |
|   | 3. With Indians.     |

## III. NATURALIZATION.

## IV. BANKRUPTCY.

## V. COINAGE;

- |   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| { | 1. Coining Money,          |
|   | 2. Regulation of Value, of |
- |   |                       |
|---|-----------------------|
| { | 1. Domestic Coin, and |
| { | 2. Foreign Coin.      |

## VI. WEIGHTS AND MEASURES, REGULATION OF.

## VII. POST-OFFICE; Establishment of

- |   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| { | 1. Post-Offices, and |
|   | 2. Post-Roads.       |

**VIII. SCIENCE AND USEFUL ARTS, ENCOURAGEMENT OF, by granting**

- { 1. Copyrights, and
- { 2. Patents.

**IX. INFERIOR COURTS, ESTABLISHMENT OF.**

**X. CRIMES;**

- { 1. Piracies,
  - { 2. Felonies on High Seas,
  - { 3. International Offences,
  - { 4. Counterfeiting ; . . . . . to punish.
- { 1. U. S. Securities, and  
 { 2. U. S. Coin.

**XI. TERRITORY; EXCLUSIVE LEGISLATION OVER**

- { 1. District of Columbia, and
- { 2. Forts, etc.

**II. POWERS RELATING TO WAR**

**I. DECLARATION OF WAR.**

**II. LETTERS OF MARQUE, GRANTING OF.**

**III. CAPTURES, RULES CONCERNING.**

**IV. FORCES;**

- { 1. Army,
  - { 2. Navy,
  - { 3. Militia, to Provide for
- { 1. Raise,  
 { 2. Maintain, and  
 { 3. Make Rules for.
- { 1. Calling out, to  
 { 1. Execute Laws,  
 { 2. Suppress Insurrections, or  
 { 3. Repel Invasions.
- { 2. Organizing,  
 { 3. Arming,  
 { 4. Disciplining, and  
 { 5. Governing,
- { at all times.  
 { when in U. S. service

## CHAPTER XXXII

## PROHIBITIONS ON THE UNITED STATES

**1. Where Found**—Section 9 of Article I. names certain subjects which Congress is forbidden to legislate upon.\* Most of these form exceptions to the powers granted in the preceding section.

**2. Slave-Trade**—From an early period slaves had been imported into the Colonies from Africa. At the time when the Constitution was formed, laws prohibiting the foreign slave-trade had been passed in most of the States, but the delegates from a few States in the Convention insisted on having the privilege of importing slaves secured. A majority of the Convention were in favor of leaving Congress free to prohibit the trade at any time. But as it was doubtful whether certain States would in such case accede to the Constitution, and as it was desirable to bring as many States as possible into the Union, it was at length agreed that the trade should be left free for twenty years to all the States choosing to continue it (44, 79). Once more, a compromise.†

**3. Habeas Corpus**—The nature of this writ has

---

\* It must be remembered that sec. 9 of Art. I. does not apply to the States, but only to Congress. The prohibitions upon the States are found in sec. 10. For instance, a State legislature is not prohibited by the United States Constitution from suspending the writ of habeas corpus, as far as State offences are concerned. For this reason provisions similar to those in sec. 9 are generally found in State constitutions, as to habeas corpus, appropriations, statements, etc.

† Congress did, however, in 1808 wholly prohibit the slave-trade.



been heretofore explained (see page 88). The presence of this clause (45) here shows how important the writ was considered. In England its operation had at times been suspended for slight and insufficient reasons. The clause applies only to United States judges. They can grant the writ only in cases of violation of United States laws (see page 182).

**4. Bill of Attainder**—*Attainder* in this phrase means that forfeiture of property and loss of all civil rights (among them, the right to inherit property or transmit it to heirs) which a person formerly suffered who had been condemned to death for treason or other crime. A *bill of attainder* is an act (*i.e.*, a law) of a legislature inflicting this punishment upon some particular person and condemning him to death, without a regular trial in court. Such laws are inconsistent with the principles of republican government, and are therefore properly prohibited to Congress (46, 71).

**5. Ex post facto Law**—This is a law that makes punishable as a *crime* an act which was not criminal when done, or that increases the punishment of a crime after it has been committed.\* Such laws are unjust, and therefore wholly forbidden to Congress (46).

**6. Direct Tax**—What a direct tax or capitation tax is, has been already described (see Chap. XV., secs. 1 and 11). A prior clause has given the rule of apportionment of direct taxes (5). For greater security it was provided that no direct tax should be laid except

---

\* If, for example, one should commit murder while the penalty was imprisonment for life, and the legislature should then pass a law, and apply it to his case, making the penalty death.

in that way, counting three-fifths of the slaves (47). But now if direct taxes were laid they would be in proportion to true population.

**7. Export Duties**—These are entirely forbidden to Congress (48). The reasons have been given before (see page 142, sec. 5). This clause forms an exception to the one in sec. 8 (26) which gives the right to lay duties.

**8. Equality in Trade**—It was the aim of the Constitution to secure to each State freedom and equality in trade. For this reason any preference of the ports of one State over those of another is forbidden (48).\*

**9. Appropriations**—An *appropriation* is a law providing that a certain sum of money in the treasury shall be paid out for a certain purpose. The Constitution provides that no money shall be drawn out except when so appropriated by Congress (49). This places the public money beyond the reach or control of the Executive or any other officer, and secures it in the hands of the representatives of the people. Even the President cannot draw his salary unless Congress makes the appropriation. In pursuance of this provi-

---

\* The last part of that clause, referring to entry, etc., may not be easily understood. It does not mean that vessels going from one State to another shall not be obliged to enter, clear or pay duties (as it might be literally construed). There are laws of Congress enforcing these things in certain cases. It means only that when a vessel is bound from a certain State it shall be obliged to clear only in that State, and when bound to a certain State it shall be obliged to enter or pay duties only in that State. The purpose was to prevent vessels from being compelled to enter, clear or pay duties at ports from which they did not come or to which they were not bound. This very hardship had been imposed upon American commerce before the Revolution by England, who compelled American vessels sailing to a foreign port to first go to England.

sion, Congress, at every session, passes laws specifying the objects for which money is to be appropriated.

**10. Statements**—The clause requiring statements of the receipts and expenditures to be published makes Congress responsible to the people. Such statements are published annually, and short abstracts are published monthly (49).

**11. Titles of Nobility**\*—Congress is entirely prohibited from granting these (50). They would tend to introduce the distinctions of rank here that exist in many other countries, which the Constitution desires to prevent. As the Declaration of Independence says, "all men are created equal."

**12. Relations of Officers with Foreign Sovereigns**—Officers of the United States Government are forbidden to receive any present, office, or title from any foreign state, unless with the consent of Congress (50). This is to guard them against foreign influence.

## CHAPTER XXXIII

### PROHIBITIONS ON THE STATES

**1. Treaties**—Section 10 of Article I. enumerates certain things which each State is forbidden to do. The first one is, to make any treaty, alliance, or confederation † (51). Another clause forbids a State to make any kind of agreement with another State or with a foreign power without the consent of Congress (52).

---

\* See page 20, sec. 6.

† For the meaning of *treaty* see page 172. An *alliance* is a union for some common object. A *confederation* is a broader word, signifying a closer union.

If the States, separately, were allowed to make treaties or form alliances with foreign powers, the rights and interests of one State might be injured by the treaties made by another. As the States united constitute but one Nation, it is obvious that the power to treat with other nations properly belongs to the General Government.

**2. Letters of Marque**—The States are forbidden to issue these, as by doing so one State might, for local reasons, direct the enmity of a foreign nation against the whole Nation, and perhaps involve the whole country in war.

**3. Coinage**—This is forbidden to each State. One object in giving this power to Congress was that the coinage might be uniform (see page 150), but if each State had the power also, this object might not be attained.

**4. Bills of Credit**—The States are forbidden to emit them. *Bills of credit* are promises to pay certain amounts of money, issued for the purpose of being used as money. The purpose of the clause was to prevent the future occurrence of the evils they had already caused.\* The United States Treasury notes are bills of credit. Bank bills issued by State or national banks are not within the prohibition.

**5. Legal Tender**—The States are forbidden to make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts. Tender, or, as it is usually called, *legal tender*, means that with which a debt may be

---

\* *Bills of credit*, to a vast amount, were issued by the States during the Revolution, and for some time thereafter. This paper money, having no funds set apart to redeem it, became almost worthless.

paid, by law.\* Some of the States had declared their irredeemable paper money a lawful tender. But paper money and property of all kinds are continually liable to fluctuation in value, and might subject those who should be compelled to receive it to great inconvenience and loss. Gold and silver are considered more stable in their value.

**6. Bill of Attainder**—This is forbidden to the State legislatures for the same reason that it is forbidden to Congress (see page 161, sec. 4).

**7. Ex post facto Law**—The States are forbidden to pass such laws, as they are unjust (see page 161, sec. 5).

**8. Law Impairing the Obligation of Contracts**—The passage of such a law by any State legislature is forbidden. Laws that would release men from their obligations would be contrary to the principles of justice, and destroy all security for the rights of property.†

**9. Titles of Nobility**—The granting of these by any State is forbidden, for the same reasons as in the case of Congress (see page 163, sec. 11).

**10. Duties**—States are forbidden to lay duties on

---

\* Not all money is legal tender. The legal tender in this country now is gold, silver, and U. S. notes (see page 150). The creditor may take what he chooses in payment of the debt, but he cannot be compelled to take anything but legal tender.

† As bankrupt laws release debtors from the payment of their debts, and consequently impair the obligation of contracts, the question has arisen whether the States have power to pass them. From decisions of the Supreme Court of the United States, which is the highest judicial authority, it appears that a State may not pass a bankrupt law discharging a debtor from the obligation of a contract made before such law was passed. But it was not to be considered a law impairing the obligation of a contract, if it existed before the contract was made; because the parties, who are presumed to know that such law exists, may guard themselves against loss.

imports or exports (52). The reason that import duties are not allowed is that they may be uniform throughout the country. This has been explained before (page 142). Export duties are generally considered impolitic, as tending to discourage the industries of a country.

**11. Inspection Duties**—The exception allowing a State to lay duties necessary to execute its inspection laws was deemed proper. Laws are passed by the States for the inspection or examination of flour and meat in barrels, leather, and sundry other commodities in commercial cities, to ascertain their quality and quantity, that they may be marked accordingly. By this means the States are enabled to improve the quality of articles produced by the labor of the country, and the articles are better fitted for sale, as the purchaser is therefore guarded against deception. A small tax is laid upon the goods inspected, to pay for their inspection. But, lest the States should carry this power so far as to injure other States, these "laws are to be subject to the revision and control of Congress."

**12. Tonnage Duties**—These are duties laid upon vessels; so much per ton.\* They are forbidden to States (unless with the consent of Congress), as they are a means of regulating commerce, which is a subject given entirely to Congress.

**13. War**—We have seen that war is another subject of which Congress is to have complete control (Chapter XXXI.). For this reason the States are forbidden to keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, or to engage in war, without the consent of Congress.

---

\* A vessel's tonnage is not what she weighs, but the number of tons of freight she can carry.



## PROHIBITIONS

[In Art. I., secs. 9 and 10.]

## I. ON THE UNITED STATES

## I. ON CONGRESS; as to

## I. Taxes;

- { 1. Export Duties,
- { 2. Direct taxes, not in proportion to census

## II. Commerce;

- { 1. Abolition of Slave-Trade prior to 1808,
- { 2. Preference of Ports.

## III. Other Laws;

- { 1. Suspension of Habeas Corpus,
- { 2. Bill of Attainder,
- { 3. Ex post facto Law,
- { 4. Titles of Nobility.

## II. ON U. S. OFFICERS;

- { 1. Paying Money without Appropriation,
- { 2. Receiving from Foreign State, any

- { 1. Present,
- { 2. Emolument,
- { 3. Office, or
- { 4. Title.

## II. ON THE STATES; AS TO

## I. Taxes;

- { 1. Import Duties,
- { 2. Export Duties,
- { 3. Tonnage Duties.

## II. Agreements with other States or Nations;

- { 1. Treaty, etc.,
- { 2. Any Agreement.

## III. War;

- { 1. Letters of Marque,
- { 2. Troops, or War-vessels,
- { 3. Engaging in War.

## IV. Money;

- { 1. Coinage,
- { 2. Bills of Credit,
- { 3. Legal Tender.

## V. Other Laws;

- { 1. Bill of Attainder,
- { 2. Ex post facto Law,
- { 3. Law impairing Contract,
- { 4. Title of Nobility.

## SECTION III.—EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT

## CHAPTER XXXIV

## PRESIDENT AND VICE-PRESIDENT: ELECTION, QUALIFICATIONS, ETC.

**1. Executive**—One of the strongest distinctions between the present Union and the Confederation is that now we have a full and strong executive department, while under the Confederation there was none (see page 98).

**2. Number**—In regard to the organization and powers of the executive department there was great diversity of opinion in the Constitutional Convention. The three principal points discussed were (1) whether it should consist of one person as chief, or more; (2) the term; and (3) the mode of election. First: ought the chief executive power to be vested in one person, or a number of persons? Laws should be executed with promptness and energy. This is more likely to be done by one man than by a number. If several were associated in the exercise of this power, disagreement and discord would be likely to happen, and to cause frequent and injurious delays. For this reason it was decided to have one President (53).

**3. Term**—Second: as to the term. It was argued that the term should not be so short as to induce him to act more with a view to his re-election than to the public good, nor so short that he would not feel some independence of the people, and could not carry out his system of public policy; nor so long that he would

feel too independent of the people. The term of four years was decided upon as the most likely to avoid all the objections (53). It commences March 4th next after the election. A new Congress is elected and begins its term at the same time as each successive Presidential term.

**4. Mode of Election**—Third: as to the manner of electing the President. Several modes were proposed in the Convention, among them these: by Congress, by the State legislatures, by the people directly, and by Electors chosen for the purpose in some way. The last was the one adopted (54). The object was twofold: (1) to keep the legislative and executive departments distinct,\* and (2) to make certain of such a man being elected as would be worthy of the high position. If Congress elected him, it would be practically combining the two departments; and on the other hand, if the people elected him directly, it was thought that they might be led into error through popular enthusiasm or misconception, and that at the time of an election there would be great excitement; but if he was elected by a body of select men, they would act with more deliberation and their judgment would be probably correct. And if they were selected for that one purpose it was thought they would be better fitted for it than the State legislatures would be.

**5. Election of Electors**—The Constitution does not prescribe the manner in which the Electors shall be appointed or chosen; this is left to the States. At first no uniform mode was adopted by the different States, but at present in all the States they are

---

\* For this reason no Member of Congress nor civil officer can be an Elector.

selected directly by the people, by *general ticket*.\* By a law of Congress, the Electors are required to be chosen in all the States on the same day, which is the Tuesday next after the first Monday of November.

**6. Proceedings of Electors**—On the second Monday of January the Electors meet in their respective States and vote for President and Vice-President. What follows is amply described in the Constitution itself (Amend. XII.). In 1804 a change was made in the mode of electing the Vice-President.†

**7. Election by the House**—On the second Wednesday in February after the election the Electoral votes are counted, and if no one has obtained a majority, the House and Senate elect the President and Vice-President respectively. This is described in the Constitution and need not be repeated here (95).‡

**8. Present Practice**—When the Constitution was framed it was intended that the Presidential Electors should exercise their own personal judgment, and that thus the President should be selected by the calm wisdom of a body of men selected for their fitness to perform such a duty. But the existence of political parties and their action has nullified the plan. Now the nominating conventions put forward the candidates for the Presidency, and the Electors are afterward nominated and voted for entirely with reference to those candidates, it being known beforehand which

---

\* That is, every voter votes for as many men as the State is entitled to have Electors.

† The Constitution itself shows what this was (55, 95).

‡ The President has been elected by the House twice ; Jefferson in 1801, and John Quincy Adams in 1825.

one of the candidates they will vote for; and they never exercise their judgment, but simply record the vote of the people. It is unfortunate that the original plan could not have succeeded, for the present practice is open to the objections of an election directly by the people, which it is in effect.

**9. Qualifications**—These the Constitution specifies (57). It will be noted that they are higher than those required for a Senator, because the office is so much more important. No length of residence here by a foreigner will qualify him.

**10. Vacancy**—In case of a vacancy in the office of President, the Vice-President becomes the President.\* Under the provision of the Constitution (58), Congress has enacted that, when there is neither President nor Vice-President, a member of the Cabinet shall, in the following order, act as President: The Secretary of State, Secretary of the Treasury, Secretary of War, Attorney-General, Postmaster-General, Secretary of the Navy, Secretary of the Interior.

**11. Salary**—The President has a salary, its amount being fixed by Congress. Congress may increase or diminish it, but not so as to affect the President in office at the time (59). If Congress could reduce his salary at pleasure, he could never afford to be independent of them. On the other hand, if it could be increased during his official term, he might be tempted to use undue influence to procure a needless increase.

---

\* The Vice-President has no duties to perform as Executive of the Nation. He merely presides in the Senate. In dignity the office of President is much higher.

## CHAPTER XXXV

## POWERS AND DUTIES OF THE PRESIDENT

**1. Commander-in-Chief**—The President is commander-in-chief of the entire military force of the Nation (61). This power must be given into the hands of one man. If there were more (even two) there might be no firmness or promptitude, qualities absolutely necessary to render any army useful. The President is the proper person, for he is the Executive of the Nation. But the President does not take the field himself. The actual operations are conducted by his generals under his supervision.

**2. Reprieves and Pardons** \*—These may be granted by the President, but only in cases of convictions by the United States courts (61). Over State offences he has no jurisdiction. Peculiar cases may arise where, although a person is adjudged guilty of a crime, he does not deserve the punishment the law provides; as if, for instance, new evidence should arise showing him to be innocent. But the pardoning power may be greatly abused, and some claim that it would be better to take it away altogether.

**3. Treaties**—A *treaty* is an agreement between nations, and it may be upon any subject: for peace, for war against some third power, concerning commerce, the mail, the return of escaped criminals, or any other subject. The power to make them for the United States rests with the President. But this is so

---

\* See page 48, sec. 7.



important a duty that it is not intrusted to him alone, but two-thirds of the Senate must concur (62).\*

**4. Ministers**—These are officers sent to a foreign nation to represent their own nation there. In this country they are appointed by the President, with the advice and consent of the Senate. Some are now called *ambassadors*. Our government sends a minister to each of the civilized and semi-civilized nations of the world. They reside abroad and transact any business that our government may have with the government of the country where they are. They often negotiate treaties.†

**5. Consuls**—These the President appoints in the same way. *Consuls* are agents of inferior grade. They reside in foreign cities. Their business is to aid their respective governments in their commercial transactions with the countries in which they reside, and to protect the rights, commerce, merchants, and seamen of their own nation. Hence much of their business is with masters of vessels and with merchants.

---

\* Treaties are *negotiated*; that is, the provisions or terms are arranged and agreed upon, by the agents of the two governments; and a copy of the articles of agreement is sent to each government to be *ratified*. Both governments must ratify, or the treaty fails. Treaties are ratified, on the part of our government, by the President and Senate. This is what is meant by their making treaties.

† Until recently we have rarely sent ambassadors, but *ministers plenipotentiary*. An ambassador who is intrusted with the ordinary business of a minister at a foreign court, and who lives there, is called an *ambassador in ordinary*. An *ambassador extraordinary* is a person sent on a particular occasion, who returns as soon as the business on which he was sent is done. He is sometimes called *envoy*; and when he has power to act as he may deem expedient, he is called *envoy plenipotentiary*; the latter word signifying full power

**6. Judges**—The President and Senate appoint also the judges of the Supreme Court, and of the Circuit and District courts.

**7. Other Appointments**—Thus we see that the President has very important powers of appointment. Nor is he under the control of the Senate always, for under the Constitution (62) Congress has vested the appointment of very many inferior officers in him alone, or in the Heads of Departments, who are appointed by him and more or less under his influence. The advantage is that a President is thus better able to carry out his own policy if he has the selection of those who shall aid him. But the danger is that if we should obtain an ambitious or unprincipled President he might use the power of appointment simply to reward those who would advance his own interests, and greatly to the injury of the people.\*

**8. Vacancies**—But in those cases where the Senate must concur in appointments, vacancies will often occur while the Senate is not in session. In such cases the President may alone make temporary appointments (63). Without such a power somewhere, the public interests would often suffer serious injury. When the Senate acts on appointments it is said to go into *executive session*.

---

\* For some time past the two political parties have used this power to advance their own interests, and when a new party has come into power very many of the civil officers have been removed without cause in order that members of that party might be appointed in their stead. The aim of Civil Service Reform is to establish the custom of retaining officers, at least of inferior rank, as long as they do their duty, and of appointing those best fitted for the office, no matter to which party they belong. This is the policy of England, and ought to be of our country.

**9. Removals**—Most of the officers, clerks, etc., in the Civil Service\* of the United States are appointed for no particular term, but hold office until the appointing authority removes them. Those appointed by the President, or any other officer alone, can be removed by him or such officer at any time. With regard to those whose appointments the Senate must concur in, it was urged at first by many that the consent of the Senate must also be obtained to the removal, but this has not been the practice. Up to 1867 the President exercised the power of removal alone in all cases. In that year the “tenure of office act” was passed, requiring the consent of the Senate to the removal of those officers whose appointment they must concur in. This, however, was repealed March, 1887.

**10. Message**—At every session the President sends to Congress a *message*, containing recommendations of the passage of such measures as he judges expedient (64). This, of course, gives little information, but it serves to fix the responsibility upon them.

**11. Convening Congress**—Besides the regular sessions each year, Congress may be convened by the President when he thinks an extraordinary occasion has arisen such as to render it necessary, but at such times they only act upon the subjects he lays before them.

**12. Reception of Foreign Ministers**—This is devolved upon the President as the proper person to repre-

---

\* The “Civil Service” means the body of persons employed by the United States, from the Cabinet down to the lowest clerks in the Post-Office, except the army and navy. It includes now perhaps 100,000 persons.

sent the Nation. It is usually a merely formal matter, but may be one of great importance. In case a revolution has occurred in some foreign country and a new minister is sent here, the President in deciding whom he will receive must decide whether to recognize the new or the old government, and this might involve us in war.

**13. Execution of the Laws**—This is the most important and most comprehensive duty devolved upon the President. It calls upon him to see that above all things obedience is rendered to all the laws of the Union. It is for this purpose that he is made commander of the army and navy. In 1861 President Lincoln would have disregarded this high obligation had he refused to take every means to subdue those States which had openly revolted from the authority of the Nation.

By comparing this chapter with Chapter XI. it will be seen how similar the powers and duties of the President are to those of a State governor; but those of the former are as much more important in their exercise than those of the latter, as the Nation is greater than any State. The State constitutions generally have been modelled on the United States Constitution.

## CHAPTER XXXVI

### AUXILIARY EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENTS

**1. Departments**—The great amount and variety of the executive business of the Nation require the division of the executive department into several subordinate departments, and the distribution among them

of the different kinds of public business. These departments are nine in number, named as follows: (1) Department of State, (2) Department of the Treasury, (3) Department of the Interior, (4) Department of War, (5) Department of the Navy, (6) Department of Justice, (7) Post-Office Department, (8) Department of Agriculture, and (9) Department of Labor.

**2. Cabinet**—At the head of each of these Departments is a chief officer. These chief officers, sometimes called *Heads of Departments*, are named respectively the Secretaries of State, of the Treasury, of the Interior, of War, and of the Navy, the Attorney-General, Postmaster-General, Secretary of Agriculture, and Commissioner of Labor, and are appointed by the President with the consent of the Senate. The first eight of these form the *Cabinet*, and act as a council of advice to the President. Owing to this close relation between a President and his Cabinet it is usual for the Senate to confirm whomever the President selects for Cabinet officers.

**3. Department of State**—This department has charge of all the business of the Nation with foreign nations. The Secretary of State conducts all our diplomatic \* correspondence, being the official organ of communication with the ministers of foreign governments sent to this country, and with our ministers abroad. He is also the custodian of the seal, the laws, and other official documents of the Nation.

**4. Department of the Treasury**—To this belongs the charge of the finances of the Nation. It collects the revenue from customs and excises, pays the debts

---

\* *Diplomacy* is the science of conducting negotiations between nations.

of the Nation, coins the money, and takes charge of all money paid to the government. The vast amount of business in this department requires a great number of assistants. All the custom-houses, mints, and sub-treasuries form part of it. The building devoted to its business in Washington is one of the largest there.

**5. Department of the Interior**—The chief subjects of which this department has charge are the taking of the *census* every ten years (5), the management and sale of the *public lands*, the management of the *Indians*, the payment of *pensions*,\* the granting of *patents*, and *education*.

**6. Department of War**—This department has charge of the procuring of supplies and equipment and other matters relating to the army. Its duties are of course far more important in time of war than in peace. The coast signal service belongs to this department.

**7. Department of the Navy**—This department has charge of the navy, the procuring of supplies and equipment of vessels of war, etc.

**8. Department of Justice**—The duties of the Attorney-General and his assistants are to attend to all suits in the United States courts in which the United States is interested, and to give their opinions in writing on legal questions when requested by the President or Heads of Departments.

**9. Post-Office Department**—This has charge of the

---

\* A *pension* is a yearly allowance to a person by the government for past services. In this country pensions are granted to those who are disabled in war. If a soldier is killed a pension is granted to his widow or children. The amount of pensions now paid in this country is very large.



mail. All post-offices form a part of it. The Postmaster-General establishes post-offices, provides for carrying the mail, and has general charge of all matters connected with it.

**10. Department of Agriculture**—Here are investigated matters pertaining to the agricultural interests of the country, such as the destruction of injurious insects, the eradication of diseases of live-stock, the best kinds of seed, of manures, etc., etc. Its publications are widely distributed among the farmers, as are also large quantities of seeds of the best varieties.

**11. Department of Labor**—This is a purely statistical bureau, and is engaged in the collection and publication of facts relating to strikes, cost of production, wages, industrial depressions, and other matters bearing upon labor and industry.

**12. Other Executive Branches**—In addition to the departments mentioned, various other bureaus and commissions have been established, among which are the following:

(1) The *Interstate Commerce Commission*, devoted to the regulation of railway rates; (2) the *Civil Service Commission*, devoted to the examination of those entering the public service, for whom educational tests are imposed; (3) the *Fish Commission*, engaged in all matters pertaining to the improvement of fisheries in the United States; (4) the *National Museum, Smithsonian Institution and Bureau of Ethnology*, for the maintenance of a museum of natural history at Washington, and the study of North American anthropology; and (5) the *Government Printing Office*, wherein are printed the annual reports required of each Department, the "Congressional Record," or ver

*batim* reports of the proceedings of Congress, and all other statistical and educational reports issued by the various branches of the government service.

## SECTION IV.—JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT

### CHAPTER XXXVII

#### NATIONAL COURTS AND THEIR JURISDICTION

##### *a. Courts*

**1. Necessity for National Judiciary**—We now come to the third article of the Constitution, providing a national judicial department. The Confederation had none, and was thus dependent on the States. The chief reason why a national judiciary is necessary in addition to the State systems is that the State judges might be biased in favor of their own State. Laws of Congress often bear with greater hardship on some States than on others, and public opinion in those States upon whom the burden lay might be so strong in opposition that no judge elected and supported by those people would sustain it. But if the judge belonged to a national system, and thus represented and was supported by the whole Nation, he would have nothing to fear, and thus his decision would be more impartial. The experience of the Confederation taught this.

**2. Courts**—The judiciary consists of four grades of courts: the *Supreme Court*, the *Circuit Courts of Appeals*, the *Circuit Courts*, and the *District Courts*. The Supreme Court is the highest court in the land, and was established by the Constitution itself (66).

The others were established by Congress. The Supreme Court consists of nine judges, and its jurisdiction is almost wholly appellate; that is, cases are not tried in it, but it only hears appeals from the other courts, and that only in the most important cases. It has original jurisdiction in a few cases. There are nine Circuit Courts of Appeals to which cases are appealed from the Circuit and District Courts. The judges of the Circuit Court of Appeals are Justices of the Supreme Court or judges of the Circuit or District Courts. Some cases are appealed from the Circuit Court of Appeals to the Supreme Court. Of the Circuit Courts there are nine in the country. There are seventy-two District Courts (including the three in the Indian Territory). The jurisdiction of all the courts is both civil and criminal.\*

**3. Court of Claims**—No one has any right to sue a government. Such a right is inconsistent with sovereignty. So, in this country, no one has a right to sue the people (they are the government), for it is the people from whom he gets any right, even the right to his own property or his life, and to admit that any one had a right to force anything from them would be admitting that they were not sovereign. For this reason no one has a right to sue the United States, or any State (94). But Congress has established a court called the *Court of Claims*, in which those having claims which they think ought to be paid by the United States may bring a suit in the ordinary way, in form against the United States, and the court decides whether they should be paid. If it is decided in the claimant's favor it is so reported to Congress, and Congress generally will make an appropriation. But

Congress is free to do as it chooses, and there is no way to compel payment. Some States have established similar courts of claims, but though proceeding in legal methods, they perform rather the functions of legislative committees than courts.

**4. Tenure of Office**—By the Constitution the judges hold office during good behavior (66). This means until removed on impeachment for bad behavior, and thus in most cases it means for life. In no other department of the general government are offices held for so long a term. The purpose is to insure a correct and impartial administration of justice by making them independent. If they could be displaced at the pleasure of the appointing power, or by frequent elections, they might be tempted to conform their opinions and decisions to the wishes of those on whom they were dependent for continuance in office. The object of the framers of the Constitution was to remove them as far as possible from party influence.

**5. Salary**—As with the President, so here, Congress, though it fixes the salaries of the judges, cannot diminish them while in office. To give Congress power over the purse of an officer is to give it power over his will. Dependence upon the legislature would be as great an evil as dependence upon the appointing power.

### *b. Jurisdiction*

**6. In General**—The jurisdiction of the United States courts does not extend to all kinds of cases, but only to such as the Constitution specifies, just as Congress has power to pass only such laws as the Constitution allows it to. The cases enumerated in the Constitution (67) in which the national courts have jurisdiction may be

divided into three general classes: (1) those arising under the Constitution, the laws of Congress, and treaties; (2) those affecting foreigners; and (3) those between different States or the citizens of different States.\*

**7. Cases arising under United States Laws**—Cases which arise under the Constitution, laws, or treaties of the United States may be those where a person is given a right by the Constitution, laws, or treaties which he does not have by the laws of his State (as, for instance, a right to sue an infringer of a patent granted to him), or where he violates a law of Congress, or treaty (as counterfeiting coin, or doing anything forbidden by a treaty), or where any question arises as to the meaning of the Constitution, laws, or treaties of the United States, or as to whether a law of Congress is constitutional† or not. In these cases it makes no difference whether the parties are citizens of the same State or not. The jurisdiction is given to the national judiciary for two reasons: (1) in order that in the interpretation and enforcement of its own laws it may not be dependent on the States, and (2) in order that the interpretation may be uniform throughout the country. Were it left to the State courts, some States

---

\* It will be seen, therefore, that the great majority of cases between citizens of the same State must be brought in the State courts. So also the great majority of criminal cases are tried in the State courts.

† A law of Congress is unconstitutional (and wholly void) unless the Constitution has given Congress the right to pass it (see page 140). If, for instance, Congress should pass a usury law (that is, a law regulating the interest of money), or a law abolishing capital punishment, it would be void, because it has not been given these powers by the Constitution.

might decide that a law meant one thing, and other States that it meant another.

**8. Cases affecting Foreigners** — The decision of these properly belongs to the national courts, for the reason that if a foreigner is injured here, the Nation, and not the State, is responsible to the foreigner's government: therefore the Nation, and not the State, should redress the injury. And where the foreigner is an ambassador, or other minister, the Supreme Court has original jurisdiction of the case (68). This is in order to provide as certainly as possible against the danger of injustice being done, for it might involve the country in a dispute, or even war, with his country. All public ministers are treated with the highest respect, for this reason. Admiralty jurisdiction\* is also given to the national courts, for the reason that many admiralty cases affect foreigners. Another reason is that admiralty is a part of the regulation of commerce, which we have seen is a subject taken away from the States and given entirely to the United States.

**9. Cases affecting Different States, or their Citizens** — The third class of cases in which the national courts have jurisdiction is where the parties on the two sides, plaintiff and defendant, are either two different States, or citizens of different States. The reason for this jurisdiction is to prevent dissension among the States. If the decision of a question which

---

\* Admiralty jurisdiction is jurisdiction of cases arising on the sea, or connected with vessels; as, for instance, cases of piracy, of collision on the sea, or claims for repairing a vessel, or contracts to carry freight or passengers. No State has any jurisdiction over the ocean,



affected two States were left to the courts of either, the controversy instead of being closed would be intensified. The history of the small German States and of the States under the Confederation illustrates this. But now, there being an impartial arbiter, the United States, the States submit to the decision.\*

## CHAPTER XXXVIII

### TREASON

**1. Why Defined.**—Treason is one of the highest crimes that man can commit. Yet, such deep resentment and alarm does it create among the people, for it is an attempt to overthrow the established government, that the tendency always is to see it in acts which may be innocent, and which at least do not have such a purpose. For this reason the Constitution itself says what shall be considered treason, and what proof shall be necessary to establish it (70). It must

---

\* It will be noticed that the jurisdiction in the cases mentioned in this and the preceding section depends upon the character of the persons suing or sued, while in those mentioned in section 7 it depends upon the character of the case. When the case is such as to give the national courts jurisdiction it makes no difference whether the parties are citizens of different States or not, and when they are citizens of different States, or one is a foreigner, those courts have jurisdiction whether the case is one of those mentioned in section 7 or not. Not all the cases enumerated in sec. 2 of Art. III. (67) have been spoken of separately in the text. It will be a useful exercise for the pupil to write down each separate case mentioned there, and tell to which one of the three classes described above it belongs, and why. But he will be apt to make a mistake as to suits by citizens against States, unless he consults Amendment XI. (see page 198). A State cannot be sued except by another State.

be either making war against the United States, or adhering to its enemies. And it is not sufficient that there is an intention or even a conspiracy to do these things, though they are highly reprehensible. There must be some overt (*i.e.*, open) act, before it is treason.

**2. Proof**—The proof required is more than in the case of most crimes. Generally one may be convicted, even of murder, upon the testimony of one witness directly to the commission of the crime, or even without any direct testimony upon its commission, provided the other circumstances proven point toward it. But in treason against the United States, no matter what circumstances point toward it, there must be two witnesses to the same act.

**3. Punishment**—Under the authority given by the Constitution (71) Congress has declared the punishment of treason to be death, or, at the discretion of the court, imprisonment and fine; the imprisonment to be for not less than five years and the fine not less than \$10,000. An *attainder* of treason means here judgment by a court. In England formerly, when one was adjudged guilty of treason all his property was forfeited to the king, and he could neither inherit nor transmit property to heirs. This is what is meant by *corruption of blood*. Thus for a man's treason his innocent relatives were punished with him. But that is not so here. A law of Congress provides that no conviction (of any crime against the United States) shall work corruption of blood or any forfeiture of estate.

**4. The Civil War**—In this country there were no prosecutions for treason after the War, even of the leaders. They were, however, laid under certain polit-

ical disabilities, but even these have now (1894) been almost entirely removed.

**5. Other Crimes**—The great majority of crimes, such as murder, forgery, theft, etc., lie generally within the jurisdiction of the State. The State laws describe them, and the State courts punish them. The other subjects, beside treason, upon which Congress has authority to define offences and establish their punishment, and of which the national courts have criminal jurisdiction, are chiefly as follows: *All crimes committed on the sea, piracy, murder, theft, etc.; perjury and other judicial crimes when committed in the national courts; counterfeiting United States notes or coin; forgery of patents or other United States papers; robbery of the mail, or other crimes connected with the postal service; extortion by a United States officer; the holding of slaves; and preventing any one from exercising his civil rights, by intimidation or other means.*

## SECTION V.—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

### CHAPTER XXXIX

#### RELATIONS OF STATES

**1. Records**—Article IV. of the Constitution contains a number of important provisions, most of which affect the relations of the States to each other and to the General Government. The first one is in regard to the effect which the laws, records, and judgments of one State shall have in another, and the provision is that they shall have full effect everywhere (72).

For instance, if a person is sued in New York and there is a decision on the merits against him, it is decided, once for all, and it may be enforced against him wherever he goes. Were it not for this clause States might provide that no matter how many times a question had been tried, it must be tried over again with all the evidence before they would enforce it. Congress has prescribed the manner in which public acts and records may be proved, and when proven they are conclusive as to the things stated in them.

**2. Privileges of Citizens**—No State can grant privileges to its own citizens, from which the citizens of other States are excluded (73). The purpose is to put all on an equality everywhere. Without such a provision, any State might deny to citizens of other States the right to buy and hold real estate, or to become voters after living in the State the prescribed time, or to enjoy equal privileges in trade or business.

**3. Fugitive Criminals**—The officials of one State have no power in another State as officials. For instance, the police or sheriff of New York City have no power to arrest a murderer in Jersey City. But the Constitution provides against the escape of criminals in this way (74). The Governor of the State from which such person has fled, sends a *requisition* to the Governor of the State in which he is found, demanding his delivery to the first State. This requisition is usually complied with, and yet cases have occurred in which a Governor has refused to deliver up an accused person, and there is no way provided to compel him. This seems to have been an oversight on the part of the framers of the Constitution.

**4. Fugitive Slaves**—By the common law, a slave

escaping into a non-slaveholding State became free. As it was presumed at the time the Constitution was framed that other Northern States would follow Massachusetts in abolishing slavery, the Southern States wanted some provision to enable them to reclaim their fugitive slaves. The Northern States, though opposed to this, yielded for the sake of unity (75). Escaped slaves were, under this provision, returned to the South up to 1861. The clause is of course obsolete now.\*

**5. New States**—The provision (76) with regard to the admission of new States into the Union was deemed necessary in view of the large extent of vacant lands within the United States, and of the inconvenient size of some of the States then existing. The territory north-west of the Ohio River had been ceded to the General Government by the States claiming the same. South of the Ohio River also was a large tract, principally unsettled, within the chartered limits of Virginia, North Carolina, and Georgia, extending west to the Mississippi. These two tracts it was presumed would soon become so thickly populated as to require separate governments. Since that time vast tracts have been acquired from France, Spain, Texas, and Mexico. From all these tracts thirty-one new States have been formed and admitted into the Union. When formed from the territory of the United States the consent of Congress only is required, but when formed from the territory of another State the consent of that State must also be obtained.† The case of West Virginia was exceptional.

---

\* The words "slave" does not appear in the original Constitution.

† After the late war Congress declared the Southern States to have

**6. United States Territory**—Congress has complete power over the territory not organized into States (77). It establishes territorial governments, and these carry on all the ordinary governmental duties, but they are subject to the control of Congress. The clause with regard to the claims of States has no effect at the present day.

**7. Protection by United States**—The United States must always see to it that the State governments are republican in form (78). The object is to perpetuate republican institutions. If some large State should establish a monarchy, it might in time engulf smaller ones, and in the end destroy the Constitution. Its policy would be in opposition to all republican institutions. So, if a State is in danger from invasion, or insurrection, it may call on the Nation for assistance.

## CHAPTER XL

### AMENDMENT : DEBT : SUPREMACY : OATH : TEST : RATIFICATION

**1. Reason for Amendment**—Article V. describes the manner in which the Constitution may be amended (79). As the best human government is imperfect, and as all the future wants and necessities of a people cannot be foreseen and provided for, it is obvious that every constitution should contain some provision for its amendment.

**2. Mode of Amendment**—This is described in the

---

no lawful governments, and placed them under temporary military governments. In time they adopted new constitutions, and were readmitted to the Union by Congress.



Constitution (79). If amendments could be made whenever desired by a bare majority of the States, the strength and efficiency of the Constitution might be greatly impaired by frequent alterations. It is therefore wisely provided that a mere proposition to amend cannot be made except by a majority of at least two-thirds of Congress, or of the legislatures of at least two-thirds of the States ; and that such proposition must be ratified by a still larger majority (three-fourths) of the States. It was thought better to submit occasionally to some temporary inconvenience than to indulge in frequent amendments.

**3. Public Debt**—The clause (80) which adopts the prior debts of the country was intended to allay the fears of public creditors, who apprehended that a change in the government would release the Nation from its obligations. But their fears were probably groundless, for one purpose in changing the government was to provide a way to pay those debts.

**4. Supremacy**—The next clause (81) declares that the Constitution, the treaties and the laws of Congress shall prevail over any State law or constitution. This is the clause giving efficacy to the whole Constitution. If any State could nullify the national law, nothing would be gained by the Union. Now, when a State law or State Constitution is passed contrary to the law of the Nation every one must consider it void, and the State judges must declare it so.

**5. Oath of Allegiance**—All members of all State and national, legislative, executive, and judicial departments are required on taking office to take the oath of allegiance, *i.e.*, to support the Constitution of the United States (82). Binding the conscience of public officers

by oath or solemn affirmation has ever been considered necessary to secure a faithful performance of their duties. They are generally required to swear not only to support the Constitution, but also to discharge the duties of their offices to the best of their ability.

**6. Test Oath**—In the same clause, *test* (often called *test oath*) means an oath or a declaration in favor of or against certain religious opinions, as a qualification for office. In England, all officers, civil and military, were formerly obliged to make a declaration against transubstantiation, and to assent to the doctrines and conform to the rules of the established church. The object of forbidding it here was to secure to every citizen the full enjoyment of religious liberty. But this clause does not bind the States. They can provide tests, but usually they have similar clauses in their constitutions.

**7. Ratification**—By the Constitution (§3) nine States were to ratify it before it had binding effect in any. The immediate ratification of the Constitution by all the States was hardly to be expected; a unanimous ratification, therefore, was not required. But a Union of less than nine States was deemed inexpedient. The framers concluded their labors on the 17th of September, 1787; and in July, 1788, the ratification of New Hampshire, the ninth State, was received by Congress.\*

**8. Commencement of Government**—Thus in July, 1788, the government had begun. During 1788 and the

---

\* The Constitution could not become binding on any State except by its own ratification, for the State was sovereign. But with amendments it is different. When accepted by three-fourths they are binding on all. They have given up their sovereignty to this extent. By accepting the Constitution at first each State agreed that amendments might be made binding in that way, even against their consent.

early part of 1789, Senators, Representatives, and Presidential Electors were chosen by the States. In February, 1789, General Washington was elected President by the Electors, and was inaugurated April 30th following, when the 1st Constitutional Congress assembled.

## CHAPTER XLI

### THE FIRST TWELVE AMENDMENTS

**1. In General**—It is remarkable that during so long a period the Constitution has received so few changes. Up to 1865, though twelve amendments had been added, only the last two of them had made any alteration in the original provisions. This proves the wisdom and skill of the patriots who framed it, to whom we should be ever duly grateful for having furnished our country with so admirable a bulwark of liberty.

**2. Bill of Rights**—This is a name given to the first ten amendments, because they contain a list of the rights deemed most important to the liberty of the people. These amendments do not change any original provision of the Constitution. They act merely as restrictions and limitations upon the powers of Congress, and were deemed unnecessary by those who framed the Constitution, for the reason that those rights were so generally acknowledged, and that the powers of Congress were limited to those expressly granted to it. But as several of the State conventions had, at the time of adopting the Constitution, expressed a desire that declarations and guaranties of certain rights should be added, in order to prevent misconstruction and abuse, the first Congress, at its first ses-

sion, proposed twelve amendments, ten of which were ratified by the requisite number of States.

**3. Its Purpose**—As long as popular liberty lasted sufficient to maintain any part of the Constitution it is not probable that any of these rights would have been violated, even had they remained unexpressed. And yet it was of value to express them. They are thus kept in the mind of all, serving as reminders, both to the ambitious man who in his power grows neglectful of the people's rights, and to the people themselves, who sometimes, through excitement and sudden indignation, are inclined to forget the rights they have guaranteed to every one. It is important to remember that the first eight amendments affect only Congress and the national courts, not the State legislatures. For this reason similar provisions are often inserted in State constitutions, to bind the State legislatures and courts. We will refer briefly to these amendments in their order.

**4. Religious Freedom**—The object of the 1st Amendment was to prevent the National Government from abridging religious freedom in any degree (**84, 82**). In England, though all were free to worship as they chose, yet there was an established church, supported by the government. Here it was thought best not only to have perfect liberty in religion, but also to have the Church and State entirely separate.

**5. Freedom of Speech and of the Press**—These have been before defined (page 16). Congress is forbidden to pass any law abridging them (**84**). The object of this provision was not to allow one to go unpunished who uttered slander or published libel. It was intended to prevent all use of those means which

in former times had been used to repress the people, by forbidding them to speak or write on certain subjects unless licensed by the government beforehand. At one time it was the law in certain countries that even the Bible should not be printed except in a certain language, which the people did not understand. So, also, governments would require all books to be licensed before they could be printed, and would forbid the utterance of any criticism, no matter how just or honest, against them or their officers.

**6. Right to Assemble**—So, too, Congress is forbidden to pass any law abridging the right of the people to assemble and present petitions to the government (84). Under pretence of preventing insurrection governments have at times denied the people this right.

**7. Right to Keep Arms**—This means the right of every one to own and use, in a peaceful manner, warlike weapons; Congress is forbidden to pass any law infringing the right (85). It was thought that without it, ambitious men might, by the aid of the regular army, overthrow the liberties of the people and usurp the powers of government.

**8. Quartering of Soldiers in Private Houses**—The 3d Amendment arose from a remembrance of past experience (86). Among the grievances enumerated in the Declaration of Independence was one “for quartering large bodies of armed troops” among the people of the Colonies.

**9. Searches and Seizures**—A *search-warrant* is a paper issued by a court directing a person's premises to be searched, because it is suspected there is stolen property there or property subject to duty. A *seizure* is the taking of such property, or the arrest of the

person, by the officer. In the early times of English history these had been converted into instruments of tyranny. Search-warrants had been sometimes granted when no accusation had been made, and in blank, so that by filling out the blank the officer could search any house he chose. The 4th Amendment forbids Congress to pass any law authorizing warrants to issue, except when good cause is shown, and supported by oath (87).

**10. Criminal Proceedings**—The object of most of the provisions of the 5th and 6th Amendments is the protection of one accused of crime. Popular opinion is generally hasty in cases of crime, and the rights named in these amendments, most of which are easily understood,\* are such as had been found necessary in the history of justice in England to save innocent persons from punishment. By them Congress is forbidden to pass any law infringing these rights (88, 89). So important was the trial by jury in criminal cases considered, that it had been inserted in the body of the Constitution (69).

**11. Private Property**—Every government of unlimited powers has the right to take the private property of any person, for some public use, and it may be done even without compensation. This is called the right of *eminent domain*. But even in those cases where Congress has this right, the 5th Amendment forbids its exercise without just compensation being paid the private owner (88).

**12. Trial by Jury in Civil Cases**—We have seen that the jury trial is secured in criminal cases (69).

---

\* In the 5th Amendment "twice put in jeopardy" means tried again after having been once acquitted.



The 7th Amendment requires it in civil cases \* also (90). Both these provisions refer only to cases in United States courts. The 7th Amendment also provides what the effect of a jury's verdict shall be. By the rules of the common law, when the jury had rendered a decision upon a question of fact upon which some witnesses had testified in one way and others in another, that question could not be re-examined in a higher court. After the passage of the Constitution it was thought that the clause which gives the Supreme Court appellate jurisdiction both as to law *and fact* (68) might give it power to overthrow the verdict of a jury, and therefore this amendment was added. Thus we see how carefully the Constitution protects the security, liberty, and property of the people.

**13. Excessive Bail**—Bail has been described (page 88). But it will be seen that the amount of the bond might be fixed so high as to prevent persons accused of crime from procuring the necessary sureties; whereby innocent persons might be subjected to long imprisonment before the time of trial. To prevent this in the United States courts is the object of the 8th Amendment. So, also, the degree of punishment is often left to the discretion of the court, as in the case of treason, where any amount of fine over \$10,000 may be imposed. This amendment serves as a safeguard against excess (91).

**14. Rights of People**—There were those who

---

\* The amendment says "suits at common law." These are distinguished from suits in *equity* or *admiralty*. It is unnecessary to give the meanings of these terms here. "Common law suits" include a large majority of all civil cases.

feared that because the Constitution mentioned certain rights as belonging to the people, those not mentioned might be considered as having been surrendered to the General Government, or as having never existed. To prevent such possible misconstruction was the object of the 9th Amendment (92).

**15. Powers not Delegated**—So, also, the 10th Amendment was strictly unnecessary, for it is self-evident that what one has and does not give away he still retains (see page 140). But many were fearful that the central government might absorb the powers rightfully belonging to the States, and this was inserted to prevent such abuse (93).

**16. Suits against States**—No State court can entertain any suit against a State. The 11th Amendment forbids the United States courts to entertain them (except by one State against another) (94). During the Revolution the States had issued bills of credit which had not been paid. After the adoption of the Constitution suits were brought against some of the States by private persons to enforce payment of these bills of credit, and the Supreme Court decided that under the judicial clause (67) this could be done. It was in consequence of this decision that the amendment was passed. Now there is no way for a private person to sue a State in any court. It is thought best to leave a State free to settle its obligations in its own way and in its own time.

**17. Election of President**—This is the subject of the 12th amendment (95, 96), and has been elsewhere treated (page 168). This amendment was adopted in 1804. Under the plan first adopted the chief opponent of the President became the Vice-

President, and as the country had become divided into two great opposing parties, they would naturally belong each to one of those. Now the Vice-President will usually belong to the same party as the President. Many have doubted the wisdom of this change.

## CHAPTER XLII

### THE 13TH, 14TH, AND 15TH AMENDMENTS

**1. In General**—These three amendments were the logical political result of the Civil War. Its ultimate cause was negro slavery; its final result, the raising of the negro to an equality before the law with the white man. These amendments differ from the others in this respect, that they are binding on the States as well as on the National Government. The States are named in them.

**2. Slavery**—In 1863 President Lincoln had issued the Emancipation Proclamation. Whether this had any legal effect or not, the adoption of the 13th Amendment in 1865 did abolish slavery throughout the country (98).

**3. Civil Rights**—But it is evident that a person, though not a slave, may not have all the civil rights of others, as the right to acquire, hold, or sell property, to engage in trade, to live where he pleases, etc. The slaves, emerging from slavery, had no civil rights. But by the 14th Amendment they are made citizens and all civil rights bestowed upon them (99). This was the second step in the elevation of the negro.

**4. Apportionment of Representatives** — Thus 4,000,000 people were added to the number of citizens

in the United States, and they should be represented in the House. Therefore the total population was made the basis of representation. But it was anticipated that the Southern States might not give the negro the right to vote, and thus he would be deprived of his representation in the House, while the white population of the South would derive all the gain from the increased representation, and therefore it was provided that whenever any State denied the suffrage to any male citizens of the United States, its Representatives should be proportionately decreased in number (100).

**5. Political Disabilities**—We have seen that all officers of any State or the United States were required (82) to take an oath to support the Constitution. The North considered that engaging in war against the National Government was attempting to subvert the Constitution, and therefore a breach of that oath. Therefore it was thought best to deprive such as had taken the oath and afterward engaged in war against the Union, of the right to hold office (101). But Congress was allowed to remove the disability, and has done so in case of all but a very few.

**6. National Debt**—The 14th Amendment also recognizes and declares the validity of the national debt, but forbids the payment of any debt incurred in aid of rebellion, or any claim for the emancipation of the slaves (102). The South had incurred a large debt in the war, which was thus made void.

**7. Right of Suffrage**—But though the colored race had all the civil rights, it had not as yet the right to vote. We have seen that the qualifications of voters is a matter belonging to the State (pages 26, 148, *note*).

But by the 15th Amendment the State is forbidden to deny the right of suffrage to any one on account of his "race, color, or previous condition of servitude" (103). Thus the third and final step was taken in the constitutional changes, by which the black man was raised to a political equality with his fellow-man.

**8. Final**—We have now completed our review of the National Government. The system established by the Constitution is peculiar, and is not necessarily suited to other countries. But as we study the Constitution our admiration for it should grow. The marvellous prosperity of the country, commercial and political, up to 1860, proved how well suited it was to our necessities, and the history of the years since the Civil War has shown how well grounded it is in the love of the people.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

### THE NATIONAL GOVERNMENT

#### *Origin and Nature*

1. How was this country governed prior to the Revolution?
2. State the causes of the Revolution.
3. State the political effect upon the Colonies of the Declaration of Independence.
4. When was the Confederation formed? How long did it last? State its principal defects.
5. State when the Union was formed. Its fundamental difference from the Confederation. The chief differences in detail.
6. What is the difference between a Confederacy and a Nation?
7. Give some instances showing the partial retention of the federative principle in the National Government.

#### *Legislative Department*

8. Name the six objects of the Constitution stated in the preamble.
9. How many members are there in the House of Representatives?  
By whom elected? For what term? How apportioned

among the States at first ? How apportioned now ? Qualifications ?

10. Answer the same questions as to the Senate.
11. What is the object of two legislative houses ?
12. Is the Senate or House of the higher dignity ? Why ?
13. How often does Congress meet ? When ? Define "A Congress."
14. By whom is impeachment made ? By whom tried ?
15. State the powers of each House as to its members, officers, quorum, adjournment, rules, journal, yeas and nays.
16. What privilege have members of Congress as to arrest ? Why ? As to liberty of speech ? Why ?
17. What bills may originate in the House ? In the Senate ?
18. State the reason for the provision as to revenue bills.
19. Name all the ways in which a bill, having passed both Houses, may become a law.
20. State the fundamental difference between Congress and a State legislature as to the origin and extent of their powers.
21. Name the subjects on which Congress may legislate.
22. What taxes may Congress lay ? For what purposes ?
23. From what source does most of the national revenue now come ?
24. Why has Congress the power to regulate commerce ? In what ways is it exercised ? Explain retaliation duties.
25. What is Protection ? Free Trade ? State the chief argument for each. Which is the policy of the United States ?
26. What is Registry of vessels ? Clearance and Entry ?
27. What is a citizen ? An alien ? Naturalization ?
28. What is a bankrupt law ? The power, why given to Congress ?
29. State the powers of Congress as to coinage ; as to weights and measures ; as to the Post-Office. Why given ?
30. What is a copyright ? A patent ? What are their objects ?
31. What powers has Congress as to piracy ? as to offences under international law ? Why given ?
32. Over what parts of the United States has Congress exclusive authority ?
33. Name some of the implied powers of Congress.
34. Who has the power to declare war ? Why ?
35. What are letters of marque ? What is prize ?
36. How is an army raised ? How does Congress control it ?
37. By whom may the militia be called out ? When ?
38. Name the prohibitions upon the United States.
39. What is habeas corpus ? A bill of attainder ? An ex post facto law ? An appropriation by Congress ?
40. State the reason for the prohibitions as to titles of nobility.
41. Name the prohibitions upon the States.
42. State the difference between money and legal tender.
43. What is legal tender in the United States now ?

#### *Executive Department*

44. What is the advantage of having but one President ?
45. By whom is he elected ? For what term ?



46. What other modes were proposed? State the objections to them. What was the purpose of the present one? Was its purpose accomplished? Why?
47. Are Presidential Electors elected or appointed? By whom? State their proceedings.
48. When does the House elect the President? How does it vote?
49. What are the President's qualifications? Salary?
50. What are the duties of the Vice-President?
51. State the President's powers as to the army and navy, reprieves and pardons, treaties, and appointments.
52. What is the danger connected with this power of appointment?
53. What is the purpose of the President's message?
54. What is the most comprehensive duty of the President?
55. Name the auxiliary executive departments, and their duties.

### *Judicial Department*

56. Explain the necessity for a national judiciary.
57. Name the national courts.
58. Can the United States be sued? Why?
59. What is the Court of Claims? How are its judgments enforced?
60. Are the judges appointed or elected? By whom? For what term?
61. State the three classes of cases in which the United States courts have jurisdiction, with the reason in each case.
62. What is treason? What proof necessary? Its punishment.
63. Name the crimes which the United States may punish.

### *Miscellaneous Provisions*

64. State the provision of the Constitution as to the rights of citizens of one State in another.
65. How are fugitive criminals returned?
66. What protection must the United States extend to the States?
67. How may the Constitution be amended?
68. When a law of Congress and a State law are antagonistic, which must prevail? A law of Congress and a State constitution?
69. What persons are obliged to take the oath to support the Constitution?
70. How did the Constitution originally become binding on a State? How does an amendment to it?
71. How many Amendments are there? What is the Bill of Rights? Its purpose?
72. State the substance of each amendment, when it was passed, and its purpose.
73. Can a State be sued by a State in a State court? In a national court?
74. Can a State be sued by a private person in a State court? In a national court? Why?



# PART II

## *PRINCIPLES OF LAW*

### DIVISION I

#### MUNICIPAL LAW \*

#### SECTION I—CIVIL RIGHTS IN GENERAL

#### CHAPTER XLIII

#### ABSOLUTE CIVIL RIGHTS †

**1. Introductory**—In this Division, under the heading Municipal Law, it is our purpose to give a general idea of the ordinary civil rights secured to persons in the United States, and the principles of law by which they are protected. This is a subject which, being local, belongs in most part to the different States, and not to the National Government, but the principles are substantially the same in all the States.

**2. Common Law**—There are two sources of law in this country, the *common law* and *statute law*; or the

---

\* By this term is meant the body of laws governing the ordinary every-day actions of men, and their different rights in relation to each other; particularly as distinguished from international law. It might be used to mean law concerning cities, villages, etc., but that is not its meaning here (see page 16).

† See pages 15, 18.

unwritten and written law. The Common Law of England is the basis of law in all the States except Louisiana. It is not a code of written laws enacted by a legislature, but consists of rules of action which have become binding from long usage and established custom. It is said to be founded in reason and the principles of justice. It was brought over from England by our ancestors, and established here before the Revolution; and is now the law in all particulars wherein the constitutions or legislatures have not changed it.

**3. Statute Law**—But in each State the legislature is free to change the common law, and to legislate upon subjects which the common law does not touch. These laws enacted by the legislature are called *statutes*; from the Latin *statuo*, to fix or establish. For this reason the law on some subjects will differ in different States. Yet, as we have said before, the principles are the same.

**4. Rights of Persons**—These have been before described as the three great rights of *personal security*, *personal liberty*, and *private property* (see page 15). We have seen what provisions are often contained in constitutions for their protection (Chap. XLI.). These are the fundamental rights of men, and most of the subordinate rights are but forms of one or another of these three.

**5. Personal Security**—The right of personal security is also protected by the law which permits a person to exercise the natural right of self-defence. When assaulted so that one has reason to fear that he is in danger of his life or of some serious injury to body or limb, he may use all the force necessary in defence and may

lawfully take the life of his assailant. It is lawful to take the life of a burglar found in a house at night, for he is presumed to be ready to commit murder. If the assault is not so violent as to cause one to fear serious injury, it is lawful to use only sufficient force to prevent the injury. But in all cases the offender may be sued for damages by the party injured. An assault is also punishable criminally. The right is further protected by the law, by which a man, on showing reasonable cause of danger of personal injury, may require his adversary to be bound with sureties to keep the peace.

**6. Slander**—The right of personal security includes the right to be secure in our good names, and is protected by the law against slander and libel. A *slander* is a false statement about another which injures him in his reputation or business; such as, a charge that he has been guilty of a crime, or has a malignant disease, or any falsehood which he can prove has injured him. For uttering such falsehood the slanderer may be compelled to pay heavy damages to the injured person. And he is liable whether he originated the statement or merely repeated it. There is, however, no criminal punishment for slander.

**7. Libel**—A libel is a false publication in print or writing, signs or pictures, tending to injure a person in his reputation or business, or to expose him to public hatred, contempt, or ridicule. And it is considered in law a publication of such defamatory writing, though communicated to a single person. A slander written or printed is likely to have a wider circulation, to make a deeper impression, and to become more injurious. Libel is therefore broader than slander, and a person may be liable in damages for words in print

or writing for which he would not be liable if merely spoken. In case of libel, also, a person is not only liable to a private suit for damages, but may be indicted and tried as for other public offences, and it makes no difference whether he originates or merely repeats the statement.\*

**8. Personal Liberty**—Every person has the right to go wherever he pleases, free from restraint on the part of others. If any one restrains him of his liberty even for a very short period or without violence, as by locking him in a room, he may recover damages. This is one of our most valued rights, and is forfeited only by crime. In children, lunatics, and others unable to care for themselves, it is limited in some degree, for their own good and that of the community. Before our late war the slaves had not this right, but now all are equal. The writ of Habeas Corpus has been referred to as one of the most efficient means of securing this right against false accusations of crime (page 88). Freedom of speech, of the press, and of religion are included in the term personal liberty. But it is a universal rule that one must not use his own rights so as to injure those of another. Thus one may not use his right of personal liberty in speaking of another so as to violate that other's right of personal security—*i.e.*, by injuring his reputation.

**9. Private Property**—Every person has the right to

---

\* It was formerly the law that in the criminal action for libel it made no difference whether the statement was true or false. The reason was that the People were injured by the malicious statement, because, whether true or false, it excited the other party to commit some personal violence, and so commit a breach of the peace. But this is now changed in many States, and if the publication be true and published for a good purpose it is not a libel.



acquire, to use as his own, in any way he sees fit, and to dispose of, any amount of property. No one, not even the government, can deprive him of his property without his consent; though sometimes the government may take his property, when necessary for public use, by paying for it (page 73). This right of private property is fundamental, but it, too, is limited by the rule that one must use his own rights so as not to injure those of others. The purpose of law is to give to each one as much liberty as is consistent with the liberty of others. Sections II. and III. of this division will contain a sketch of the system of law regulating and balancing the rights of property of all.

## CHAPTER XLIV

### RELATIVE CIVIL RIGHTS

#### *a. Public*

**1. Public Relative Civil Rights** have been described before (page 15). Every person has the right to demand protection by the government. This protection is afforded by its police and other civil officers. So, also, if these are not sufficient the governor is bound to call out the militia, to protect even a single person. Another means of protection is the system of courts, in which every person is at liberty to sue in order to enforce his rights. In return for this protection the government is entitled to the obedience of the citizen. This is enforced in different ways. It may imprison, fine, or even kill one who disobeys its laws (Chap. LXI.).

*b. Private\**

**2. Duties of Parent**—Parents, as the natural protectors of their children, are obliged to provide for their support and education during their minority, or while they are under twenty-one years of age. The father, or, if there is no father, the mother, is bound to support the minor children. Even if they have property of their own, the father is so bound, but the mother is not. If a parent neglects to provide necessities for his child, others may do so and sue the parent for their value.

**3. Rights of Parent**—The parent has the right to the custody of his child, and, being deprived of it, may recover it again.† It is lawful for a parent to punish his child for good cause, but not cruelly. Being bound to provide for his children, the father has a right to their labor or service; and he may recover their wages from any person employing them without his consent. Children who are able are in general bound to support indigent parents.

**4. Property of Child**—Very often a child has property of his own. As he is unable to take the management of it, a *guardian* is appointed for him for that purpose. The guardian may use the property for the support and education of the child (called his *ward*) during its minority. He may sell the personal property, but the real estate cannot be sold without permission from the court. At twenty-one the guardian

---

\* The rights arising from the relation of husband and wife are treated of under Sec. II., Contracts, because marriage, the basis, is a contract (Chap. XLVI.).

† See page 88, *note*.

must transfer all the property to his ward, and render an account of all his transactions. He is responsible for any loss caused by his wrong or negligence. If there is no parent, the guardian takes the place of parent to some extent, and has a right to the custody of his ward, and may administer proper punishment. If there is a father or mother, he or she is generally the one appointed guardian.

**5. Apprenticeship**—This is a relation established by a written agreement, by which a male or female minor, with the consent of his or her parents, agrees to serve as an *apprentice*, or servant, to some one in a certain trade or employment, until twenty-one years of age, or for a less period. In return for these services the master is to teach the minor the trade. This is an exception to the rule of an infant's inability to contract (page 213), for the master can compel the apprentice to fulfil his agreement. To a certain extent he acts as a parent, may punish his apprentice, and is liable for his support. The officers having charge of the poor may bind out pauper children in this way. Formerly apprenticeships were common, but now in this country they are little used, and the subject is an unimportant one in the law.

**6. Master and Servant**—This relation can hardly be said to exist at present in this country. Formerly certain rights and duties flowed from it, such as the right of the master to administer corporal punishment, or the duty of the servant to protect his master against assailants. But, as a result of the democratic equality of all persons here, it has come to be merely a contract relation. The employer agrees to pay a certain sum for certain services which the employed agrees to ren-

der; and each must fulfil the contract (Chap. XLV.). With regard to how far an employer is answerable to other parties for the acts of the employed, the relation is one of principal and agent, and the principal is responsible just so far as the agent had a right to act for him (Chap. XLVII.).

## SECTION II.—CONTRACTS

### CHAPTER XLV

#### CONTRACTS IN GENERAL

**1. Definition**—A *contract* is an agreement or a promise by one person with another to do or not to do a particular thing. Contracts may be *written* or *oral*. Certain contracts, like those for the sale of land, must be in writing (see page 217); but most of the contracts of daily life are oral. They may be also *express* or *implied*. The former is an agreement expressed orally or in writing; the latter is one by which a person does certain things which in law imply an agreement, as, where a person employs one to do anything for him, or buys certain things, a promise is implied to pay what the labor or the things bought are worth.\* This subject of contracts is very broad in law, for most

---

\* Another distinction between contracts is that they may be *executory* or *executed*. An executory contract is one where the agreement is to do something at some future time; an executed contract is one where nothing remains to be done afterward, but the agreement is immediately carried out. For instance: where one agrees to sell real estate at some future time the contract is executory; the deed itself is an executed contract.

of our daily actions are but the fulfilment of contracts, and we may contract to do almost anything.

**2. Rule**—The fundamental rule of law and justice with regard to contracts is this: that a person must do what he or she has agreed to do. This is the rule, but the exceptions to it—also founded in justice—are quite numerous, and the principal ones will form the subjects of the following sections of this chapter.

**3. Capacity of Parties**—It would be unjust to compel a person to fulfil his contracts if he were *incapable of contracting*; *i.e.*, if his powers of thought were not strong enough to enable him to judge what was for his best advantage. For this reason infants (*i.e.*, minors), lunatics, idiots, and some others, cannot be compelled to fulfil any contracts they may make. Otherwise great advantage might be taken of them by unscrupulous persons. But when one does contract with such a person, he cannot refuse to fulfil his share of the bargain, if the minor or other such person wishes to uphold it. Nor can the person incapable to contract, if he or she has received anything under the contract, refuse to fulfil it without restoring what has been received.

**4. Infancy**—An *infant* in legal language is a person, boy or girl, under twenty-one years of age. The reason why they may not make contracts which may be enforced against them is that they have not had, as a rule, sufficient experience to prevent others from gaining the advantage in their contracts. Therefore an infant while he may receive property cannot sell any, and if he does, can regain it. But if after becoming of age he ratifies the contract, then it is as if he had made it when of age. There is one exception to an infant's incapacity to contract. He may contract for

necessaries when he has no parent or guardian who supplies them; *i.e.*, such things as food, clothing, lodging, and education, and when he obtains them may be made to pay for them. Otherwise he could not obtain them, for no one would trust him.

**5. Lunacy**—Lunatics and idiots are protected in the same way, because they are unable to protect themselves. An agreement is an act of the mind, and therefore one who has no mind cannot, in reality, agree. A person while intoxicated has lost the use of his faculties for the time, and therefore any contract that he makes during that time he may refuse to fulfil; but, if he adopts it on becoming sober, he cannot afterward question it.

**6. Married Women**, by the common law, could not make contracts, and they cannot now in many particulars. This was not because of their supposed incapacity, but because the husband and wife were considered as one person. But the common law has been changed in many States by statute, and they may make some contracts; such as, any contract necessary in the management of their separate property, even to sell or buy it, and any contract made in connection with a business which they may be carrying on.

**7. Assent**—Another requisite to a contract is the *mutual assent of the parties*. A mere offer by one party, not assented to or accepted by the other, constitutes no contract. This is implied in the word agreement, for it takes two to "agree." In case the parties are distant from each other, if the proposition is sent by mail, and a letter of acceptance is written and put in the mail, the contract is complete, unless, before mailing the letter of acceptance, a second letter



has been received containing a retraction of the proposal.

**8. Consideration**—Every contract must have a consideration to be enforceable.\* The *consideration* of a contract is what is given, done, or promised, as the cause or reason for which a person enters into the agreement. Thus, the money given or promised, for which a man agrees to perform certain labor, is the consideration of the agreement. So the money or other thing for which a promissory note is given, is the consideration. Mutual promises are sufficient considerations to make a contract binding; but they must be made at the same time. Such promises support each other. The promise of one party constitutes a sufficient consideration for a promise by the other party. But the law will not enforce a contract on the part of one where the other party has not given, done, or promised something on his part. The purpose of the law is to remedy some injury done, but a party is not considered as injured when another refuses to fulfil a promise to him, unless he has done something on his part to balance such promise. Therefore promises wholly gratuitous are void, such as a promise to give one money or property as a gift.†

**9. Gratuitous Services**—So, also, services rendered which have not been requested afford no ground for a claim for payment. This is a case not of a lack of con-

---

\* Promissory notes and bills, transferred before they are due to a person who does not know whether they are without consideration or not, are an exception to this rule. (See page 236.)

† The moral law may require the fulfilment of such a promise, but the municipal law cannot. This is an instance where human law is not so broad as the moral law. (See page 17.)

sideration, but of absence of contract. There is even no implied promise to pay for the services, for they were not requested. Had they been requested, there would have been an implied promise to pay for them. And it makes no difference how valuable the services are, as the saving of property from fire, or the securing of cattle found astray, or of property lost. This seems unjust, but the injustice would be greater were it the other way; for then any one might force any service upon us which we did not want, and compel us to pay for it.

**10. Fraud and Force**—We have seen that assent is necessary to a contract. But it must also be given freely and with full knowledge. If it is obtained by means of force, as through threats of any kind, or by fraud, as by representing facts that were not true, or concealing facts that the other had a right to know, the party upon whom the force or fraud is practised can claim there is no contract if he wishes to. The other one cannot, for it is a rule in law that one cannot take advantage of his own wrong-doing.

**11. Impossible Contracts**—No man can bind himself to do what is not in the power of man to do. But it is otherwise, if the thing to be done is only at the time impossible in fact, but not impossible in its nature, and this impossibility might have been anticipated. Hence, inability from sickness to fulfil an agreement, or the impossibility of procuring an article which a person has agreed to deliver, would not exempt him from liability in damages for the non-performance of his contract.

**12. Illegal Contracts**—An agreement to do a thing that the law makes unlawful, such as to commit a

crime, cannot be enforced, nor any promise made in consideration of such a contract. For this reason bets cannot be enforced in law, for betting and gaming are forbidden. But if a forbidden contract has been carried out, the law will not set it aside: it will not aid one wrong-doer as against another.

**13. Written Contracts**—Any agreement is a contract and may be put in writing.\* But there are certain agreements to which a person cannot be held against his will unless they are in writing and signed by him. The two principal classes are, a contract for the sale of real estate or any interest therein (deeds, leases,† etc.), and a contract for the sale of any personal property over a certain amount in value (pages 229, 249). Others are, an agreement to pay the debt of another, an agreement of an executor to pay the debt of an estate out of his own property, and any contract not to be performed within one year. Such transactions are important ones usually, and the evidence of them should be something less open to mistake than spoken words.

**14. Limitations**—But though a contract might conform to all the requirements, it nevertheless could not be enforced unless an action were brought for the purpose within a particular time after it was made. This time varies, according to the nature of the action brought, from five or six years, as in the ordinary cases of debt, to twenty or thirty years, as in the case

---

\* When a contract is in writing neither party is allowed to prove that the real intention was different. The parties have put it in writing in order that it might be the best evidence of what the intention was.

† Except in many States certain short leases (page 255).

of land. Different States, too, have different periods for the same thing.

**15. Remedies**—Where a contract is broken by one of the parties, the preventive remedies which the law gives to the other party are of two kinds: in cases where the wrong is not a single act but continuous, the court may order the wrong-doer to stop, as where one has agreed not to build a house on a particular spot but commences to do so; in certain kinds of cases the court may order one to fulfil his contract, or imprison him if he will not, as to sign a deed that he has agreed to give. But the compensatory remedy applies in nearly all cases, even in those where the others also apply. This remedy is to compel the party in the wrong to pay the party wronged so much money, called *damages*.

## CHAPTER XLVI

### MARRIAGE

**1. Its Nature**—Marriage is a contract. But it is also more than a contract or agreement: it is a permanent change of status, of condition. The rights of the parties toward each other are radically changed by marriage. This change was still greater in former generations than it now is. Being so important an act, the law does not allow it when either party is under a certain age, called the *age of consent*, because the person under that age is presumed to be too young to know what it really is that he or she is consenting to. Consent without knowledge of what is consented to is not real consent. In this chapter we are considering solely the contract *of* marriage, that is, mar-

riage itself, which must not be confounded with the contract to marry at some future time, commonly called *engagement*.

**2. Relationship**—Marriages between parties nearly related are forbidden, and if contracted are, in general, void. The laws of the States differ as to the degree of relationship at which persons may not marry. The most common rule is that first cousins may, but any more nearly related may not. Thus a marriage between uncle and niece is void.

**3. Lunacy : Force : Fraud**—As in all other contracts, to make a marriage binding the parties must act freely, and must have sufficient intelligence to know what they are doing. If one is forced to marry by threats or other means, the marriage may be declared void if the party forced so desires. So the lunatic or idiot, or some one representing him or her, may have the marriage declared void. In those cases the other party cannot complain, and the marriage is binding if the forced or incapable person desires it to be.\* But if one is deceived into marrying a lunatic, that is fraud, and it entitles him to have the marriage annulled. So, also, if a party marries one, thinking it is another. In all these cases there is no real consent, and hence no contract.

**4. Ceremony**—There is usually no definite form which must be followed in the performance of marriage, and no particular words which the parties must use. The only essential part is that they acknowledge, in seriousness and in some appropriate manner, that they marry each other. It is always prudent, if not necessary, that this should be done in the presence of

---

\* See page 216, sec. 10.

a number of witnesses, for otherwise there might be no one to prove the marriage. The laws of many States provide that the ceremony must be performed by a clergyman, or some judicial or other officer. Any one who saw a marriage performed may prove it in court.

**5. Bigamy**—This is marriage with a second, while still possessing a first, husband or wife. Not only is it a crime for which one may be punished, but such second marriage is null and void. It has no effect on the first marriage. Polygamy is marriage with more than two. In such case all marriages but the first are void. The polygamy practised by the Mormons in Utah is contrary to the laws of the United States.

**6. The Wife's Property**—By the common law the property which a woman owned became her husband's on marriage. Her personal property became his absolutely, and he might use and dispose of it as he pleased. Her real estate he could not dispose of, but had the right to use it while they both lived. It will be seen how dependent on her husband she became. This was the rule once, but one part of it after another has been changed, until at present in most States the wife retains the use and right of disposal of all her property, both real and personal, as though she were single.

**7. Dower**—Such were the rights he gained in her property. But by the common law she obtained a certain right in his property, but only his real estate. This right, called *dower*, is the right of the wife upon the death of her husband to have set apart, for her own use during her life, one third part of all the real estate which the husband possessed at any time during marriage. During his life she could not claim it, but



might on his death, though he had sold the land. This right still exists in most of the States. This is the reason why a wife must join with her husband in signing a deed (see page 250). Its object is to prevent a husband leaving his wife destitute.

**8. Support**—The husband is bound to maintain his wife, and is liable for debts which she may contract for necessities, but for nothing more. If he refuses to provide for her wants, or if, through other ill-treatment or fault on his part, they become separate, he is liable to fulfil her contracts for necessities, even though he has forbidden persons to trust her. If she leaves him by her own fault, or if they part by consent, and he secures to her a separate maintenance, and pays it according to agreement, he is not liable even for necessities.

**9. Divorce**—No length of separation while both parties live, nor any consent, can dissolve the marriage contract. The only way to dissolve it is by a decree of a court granting a *divorce*. The most common cause for which this may be obtained is adultery, but some States allow it for other causes, such as desertion, cruelty, drunkenness. After the divorce the innocent party is at liberty to marry again. The guilty party may not by the laws of some States.\*

---

\* *Limited divorces* are also granted sometimes, but these do not permit either party to marry again.

A divorce proper must be distinguished from that judgment of a court which annuls a marriage on the ground of force, fraud, incapacity, or want of age. The latter kind of decree, though often called a divorce, decides that there never was any legal marriage, for some cause existing prior to the supposed marriage; a divorce proper dissolves a binding legal marriage for some cause arising after it.

## CHAPTER XLVII

## PRINCIPAL AND AGENT

**1. Nature of Agency**—An *agent* is a person authorized to act with third parties on behalf of and in the name of another, who is called the *principal*. This is one of the most common and necessary relations of life, and exists with regard to all kinds of subjects. Every clerk, employé, or laborer is the agent of the person or corporation that employs him, so far as what he does is in connection with third parties. All brokers and officers of corporations act almost wholly as agents in their business. So, also, do lawyers, auctioneers, masters of ships, etc.

**2. Act of Agent**—The fundamental rule of agency is that a principal is bound by the acts of his agent, as if they were his own acts, so long as the agent keeps within the authority granted him. If that authority is exceeded the principal is not bound, unless he afterward ratify the act.\*

**3. Wrong Committed by Agent**—This power of an agent to bind his principal extends not only to the making of contracts or other business acts, but even to the committing of personal injuries, if they are committed in connection with the business: thus, if the engineer of a railroad train through negligence injures any person or property, the company is respon-

---

\* If in any case an agent appears to have a general authority, which is really limited by private instructions, the principal is responsible for any act which comes within the apparent authority, though it may not be within the real authority.

sible. But the wrong must have been committed in connection with the business in which the agent is employed. If there is no connection between the act and the employment, it is only the personal act of the agent, and he alone is liable.

**4. Duty to Principal**—The relation between the agent and principal alone is one of contract, the agreement being on the agent's part that he will act as the principal directs, with care, skill, and diligence. Therefore an agent is bound, in general, to observe the instructions of his principal, even though an act contrary to such instructions should be intended, and really be, for the benefit of the principal. The agent must bear, personally, all losses growing out of a non-compliance with his orders; and the profit accruing therefrom goes to the benefit of the principal. When an agent receives no instructions, he must conform to the usage of trade or to the custom applicable to the particular agency.

**5. Liability to Third Parties**—When an agent is duly authorized to do an act—not unlawful in itself, such as a crime or misdemeanor—he is not responsible to third parties (*i.e.*, those with whom he deals) for that act. The principal alone is bound, for he is the one who derives the benefit. But there are three principal cases in which an agent acting for another makes himself liable: (1) where he exceeds his authority;\* (2) where he professes to act as agent, but does not disclose his principal; and (3) where he is really acting as agent, but professes to be acting for himself. The rule is general that if an agent fails to bind his princi-

---

\* But if the third party knows that the agent has no authority, the agent is not bound. No one is.

pal he binds himself. In the second and third cases, where the principal is not known, the agent is bound, because otherwise the party with whom he deals might have no one that he could hold responsible to him: but in such cases he may hold the principal also, if he is discovered, for one cannot take the benefit of an act without being bound by it.

**6. Commission Merchants**—This class of agents is quite large in cities. A commission merchant is one who sells for another the goods manufactured or raised by the latter, for a compensation, usually a percentage on the price (called a *commission*). Very often they sell without disclosing the name of their principals. All the appropriate rules of agency apply to them, as to personal liability or non-liability, care, skill, etc.

**7. Lien**—Though the goods which a commission merchant sells belong to some one else, he has a *lien* upon them for any advances he has made to the owner,\* and for his expenses and commissions. A lien on personal property is a right to hold it against the owner; that is, the owner cannot take the goods away without refunding the money received and paying any charge due. Even though the owner should order him not to sell, the commission merchant may sell in order to satisfy his claim, paying over the surplus, if any, to the owner. There are also other kinds of liens on property (see pages 229, 242, 245).

**8. Brokers**—These form another common class of agents. A *broker* is an agent employed chiefly to negotiate sales between parties. His business may

---

\* It is very common for the commission merchant to advance a portion of the price to the owner, before sale.

consist in negotiating exchanges; or in buying and selling stocks, goods, ships, or cargoes; or in procuring insurances and settling losses, etc.; and as he confines himself to one or the other of these branches, he is called an exchange broker, stock broker, insurance broker, etc. A broker differs from a commission merchant in that the former has not the custody of the goods of his principal. He is merely empowered to effect the contract of sale; and when this is done his agency ends. As to his principal he must carry out his agreement; *i.e.*, must do what he agrees with skill, care, and promptness. As to others he is subject to all the rules of agency.

## CHAPTER XLVIII

### PARTNERSHIP

**1. Definition**—A partnership is an association formed by contract between two or more persons for joining their money, labor, or skill, in lawful business, the profits to be divided and the loss to be borne by the partners in certain proportions. It is a partnership if one furnishes the funds and the other performs the labor; or if, when no money is necessary, each agrees to do his share of the labor. A partnership is often denominated a *firm*, or *house*. It is very often formed by written *articles of partnership*, but it may be formed by an oral agreement.

**2. Act of One Partner**—The great rule of partnership is that the act of one partner binds all. In matters pertaining to the business of the firm, each partner is the agent of the firm; so that if one buys or

sells for the firm, all are bound. Not only the property owned by the firm and used in the business, but also the private property of each partner, is liable for the debts of the firm. But this authority of each partner to act for the partnership extends only to the business in which they are engaged ; if one acts in the name of the firm in any other matter, he is an agent without authority, and therefore binds only himself (page 223, sec. 5).

**3. Secret Partner**—One who should conceal his name so as not to be known as a partner when the debt is contracted, may be sued when discovered to be such. This is the case of an undisclosed principal (page 223).

**4. Transfer of Interest**—A partner cannot sell his interest to another person, who is to take his place in the partnership, without the consent of all the partners. The power of a partner is so great that each one ought to have the right in the beginning to say who shall exercise this right for him. Whenever a new member is taken in, or an old member retires, it is really the formation of a new firm.

**5. Duration**—The contract of partnership may be for any specified time, or no particular time may be specified. In the former case it cannot be dissolved before the time expires, except by a court for some misconduct on the part of one partner, or for his insanity or other inability. In the latter case, where no time is fixed, any partner may at will dissolve the partnership. The death of one partner dissolves it.

**6. Notice of Dissolution**—When a partnership is dissolved by the withdrawal of any of the partners, notice of dissolution must be given, for a firm may be



bound by a contract made by one partner, in the usual course of business and in the name of the firm, with the person who contracted on the faith of the partnership, and who had no notice of the dissolution.\* The same notice is necessary to protect a retiring partner from continued responsibility. And even if due notice is given, yet, if he willingly suffers his name to continue in the firm or in the title of the firm over the door of the shop or store, he may in certain cases be liable.

**7. Limited Partnership**—In some of the States, a partnership may be formed by a number of persons, some of whom are to be responsible only to a limited amount; and their names are not to be used in the firm. Before a partnership of this kind can do business, a writing and certificate signed by the parties stating the terms of partnership and the amount for which the *special partners* (as they are called) are to be responsible must be recorded. The terms of partnership must also be published in a newspaper. In these *limited* partnerships, as they are termed, the special partners are liable only to the amount stated in the terms of partnership. The other partners, called *general partners*, whose names only are used, and who transact the business, are liable for all the debts contracted, as in ordinary partnerships.

**8. Rights as to Each Other**—So far we have treated only of the rights of partners as to third parties. As to each other they have just such rights as they may agree upon. It is wholly a matter of contract. Thus

---

\* Actual notice must be given to those dealing regularly with the firm, but as to the rest of the world a publication in some newspaper is sufficient.

a partner may sell an article to a third person when he has not the right to do it as to his partners, because he has agreed with them not to do so. In partnerships containing more than two, a majority usually has the right to decide all questions.

## CHAPTER XLIX

### SALES OF PERSONAL PROPERTY

**1. Definition of Sale**—A sale is a contract by which the ownership (called the *title*) of certain property is transferred from one person to another for a certain price: the exchange of a commodity for its equivalent in money. The exchange of one commodity for another is *barter*. The same general principles of law which apply to contracts in general are applicable to contracts of sale; viz., the competency of the parties to contract; the assent of the parties; the absence of fraud; the sufficiency of the consideration; its possibility and legality.

**2. Existence of Property**—A thing cannot be sold unless it exists. Thus, if A sells a horse or certain goods to B, and if, at the time of the sale, the horse is dead or the goods are destroyed, the sale is void.\*

**3. Agreement to Sell**—But a person may agree to sell at some future time an article not now in existence or which he does not own, for he may manufacture or buy it. Such an agreement is subject to all

---

\* But one may sell that which is the expected product or increase of something to which the seller has a present right. Thus, a man may sell the wool that may grow on his sheep, the fruit that may grow on his trees, or the future increase of his cattle.

the ordinary rules of contracts. It is an executory contract; while a sale is an executed contract.

**4. Delivery**—To constitute a valid sale, as between the seller and buyer, it is not necessary that the articles should be delivered. By the contract alone—if it is valid in other respects, such as being without fraud, or in writing if necessary—they become the buyer's property, and it is his loss if they are destroyed before delivery. Sale and delivery are thus two separate acts. In case of barter, however, the delivery must be made before the ownership will change.

**5. Written Contract**—In certain cases some memorandum in writing of the terms of the sale must be signed by the party to be charged, or his authorized agent, or he can repudiate the sale. These cases are any sales of personal property over a certain amount in value, varying in the different States from \$30 to \$200. No writing is necessary when the goods are under the fixed amount in value; and even when over that amount it is not necessary if there is (1) a delivery and acceptance by the buyer of some part of the goods sold, or (2) a payment of any part of the price.

**6. Lien**—When nothing is said at the sale as to the time of delivery or the time of payment, the buyer is entitled to the goods on payment or tender of the price, and not otherwise; for though he acquires the *right of property* by the contract of sale, he does not acquire the *right of possession* until he pays or tenders the price. This right of the seller to hold the goods until paid is called his *lien*. But if the seller delivers the goods absolutely, and without fraudulent contrivance on the part of the buyer, he loses his lien. All he then has is the right to sue the buyer for the

price. But when goods are sold on credit and nothing is said as to the time of delivery, the buyer is immediately entitled to the possession.

**7. Sale without Title**—Where one professes to sell what he does not own, no ownership passes, even though he has it in possession and the buyer has no suspicion that it is not his. The true owner can claim the property at any time. This is so whether the article was lost or stolen from him.

**8. Exception**—Money and what is called negotiable paper \* form an exception to this rule. If they are sold or transferred, even by a thief, to one who gives good consideration for them, and has no reason to suspect they do not belong to the one professing to own them, they belong to the buyer, and the true owner loses them.

**9. Warranty of Title**—In the sale of personal property, if the seller has possession of the article and sells it as his own, he is understood to *warrant the title*;\* that is, he in effect agrees to reimburse the buyer if some third person proves the article to be his. This agreement is implied whether anything is said about it or not. But if the possession is at the time in another, and there is no express covenant or warranty of title, the party buys at his peril, and cannot look to the seller for reimbursement. If, however, the seller affirms that the property is his own, he warrants the title, though it is not in his possession.

---

\* "Negotiable paper" includes bank-bills, bonds of the National or State Governments, of cities, railroads, etc., when payable to bearer, stock certificates with blank powers of attorney attached, promissory notes and bills indorsed in blank or payable to bearer, and some other securities.

**10. Quality**—With regard to the *quality* of the thing, the seller is not bound to make good any deficiency, unless he expressly warranted the goods to be of a certain quality, or unless he made a fraudulent representation or concealment concerning them. The rule is, if there is no express warranty by the seller, nor fraud on his part, and if the article is equally open to the inspection of both parties, the buyer who examines the article for himself must abide by all losses arising from its not being what he wanted or expected.

## CHAPTER L

### GIFTS: FRAUDULENT TRANSFERS

**1. Gifts**—In general a person may, if he wishes, give away any or all of his property to any one, without receiving anything in return. But delivery is necessary to a gift. When delivered, the gift cannot be revoked by the giver, but a mere promise to give cannot, we have seen, be enforced (page 215). There is one exception to this rule: a gift made in anticipation of the death of the giver may be revoked by him at any time before death.

**2. Creditors' Rights**—But if a man is insolvent, or is in such embarrassed circumstances that he is likely soon to become insolvent, he is not allowed to give away any of his property. His creditors have a right to have it applied to the payment of their debts. If the creditors do not complain, the gift remains irrevocable.

**3. Delivery of Personal Property**—We have seen that delivery is not necessary to a valid sale as between

the buyer and seller (page 229). But when it is not delivered, this gives the seller an opportunity to defraud by selling it over again, or to deceive his creditors by pretending he has sold or mortgaged it when he really has not. For this reason, the law in some States provides that a sale or mortgage of personal property without delivery shall be void as against creditors and subsequent purchasers; that is, the creditor or second purchaser can take it in spite of the first sale.

**4. Chattel Mortgages** \*—Persons very often wish to borrow money, and mortgage some personal property for its payment and yet retain and use the property. This, however, would be impossible if the rule given in section 3 were absolute. Provision is therefore made in many States by which these mortgages may be recorded in the town or county clerk's office, and when so recorded the mortgage is valid against any one, though the property is left with the owner.

**5. Transfers to Creditors**—A debtor may transfer his property to a creditor in payment of his debt, even though it leaves other debts unpaid. It is also a very common occurrence for a person in failing circumstances to assign all his property, in trust, to one or more persons, who are to dispose of it, and to apply the avails to the payment of his creditors, or a part of them. He may in such assignment direct that certain ones shall be paid first. But such an assignment does not release the debtor from his debts, unless the property is sufficient to pay them in full.

**6. Releases**—It is also common for creditors to release their debtor on payment of a part of the debt. Such release is valid if signed and sealed. When

---

\* Chattel means personal property.



a debtor agrees to pay his creditors a certain proportion of their claims in consideration of a discharge of their demands, if he privately agrees to give a better or further security to one than to others, the contract is void as to all; because the condition upon which they agree to discharge the debtor is that they shall share equally.

## CHAPTER LI

### PROMISSORY NOTES AND BILLS OF EXCHANGE

#### *a. Notes*

**1. A Promissory Note** is a written promise to pay a specified sum of money at a certain time, to a person named, or to his order, or to the bearer. The following is a common form :

\$100.

NEW YORK, May 28, 1895.

Three months after date, I promise to pay to James Smith & Co., or order, one hundred dollars, value received.

JOHN BROWN.

In such a note, Brown is the *maker*, and Smith & Co. the *payees*. The words "value received" have generally little legal force.

#### *b. Bills*

**2. A Bill of Exchange** \* (called also a *draft*) is a written order or request by one person to another to pay a third person a certain sum of money. The following is a common form :

---

\* In this chapter we shall call it a *bill*.

\$1,000.

NEW YORK, May 28, 1895.

Twenty days after date (or at sight, or ten days after sight), pay to the order of James Smith & Co. one thousand dollars, value received ;  
and charge the same to account of      THOMAS JONES.

To JOHN BROWN,

New Orleans, La.

In such a bill, Jones is the *drawer*, Smith & Co. the *payees*, and Brown the *drawee*. After acceptance, the drawee is called the *acceptor*.

**3. Use of Bills**—Bills are of very great convenience in commerce. Suppose Jones, of New York, owes Smith & Co., of New Orleans, \$1,000 ; and that Brown, of New Orleans, owes Jones \$1,000. If Jones sends Smith & Co. an order upon Brown to pay \$1,000 to them, both debts are cancelled, and the trouble and danger of sending the money is avoided. Smith & Co. may transfer the bill to any one before payment, in which case they become indorsers (see section 7).

**4. Acceptance**—The bill is presented to the drawee before it becomes due. If, when presented, he agrees to pay it when due, he is said to *accept* the bill, and writes his acceptance upon it. An acceptance may, however, be oral. A drawee is under no obligation to the payee to accept, but, having accepted, he becomes the principal debtor ; and the drawer becomes a surety ; that is, he agrees to pay if the acceptor does not. The acceptor is bound, though he accepted without consideration and for the sole accommodation of the drawer.

**5. Non-Acceptance**—If the drawee refuses to accept, the indorsers become liable to the holder and to each other in their order for the amount of the bill, as

described in section 14, provided notice of the non-acceptance is sent them, as described in section 16. So, also, if the bill is not paid when due they become liable in the same way, if notice is sent.

**6. Check**—A check upon a bank is a bill of exchange, and is subject to all the appropriate rules. It is usually payable on demand, and has no days of grace.

*c. Rules applicable to both*

**7. Indorsement**—A note or bill payable to bearer may be transferred by delivery without any writing; but when payable to the order of any one, it is usually transferred by the one to whose order it is made writing his name at the time of delivery across the back. This is called *indorsement*. The indorsement is considered as the order of the payee to the maker or acceptor to pay it to some other person. A bill may be indorsed before or after acceptance. Where the name simply is written across the back it is called a *blank indorsement*, and it may thereafter be transferred from one to another by delivery, the same as one payable to bearer. Or the payee may order it paid to any particular person. Such person may in turn make it payable to bearer by indorsing in blank, or may make it payable to any particular person. He thus becomes the second indorser, the payee being the first. In case of a bill the drawer is a surety to both. The person in whose hands it is when due collects it.\*

---

\* The advantage of making notes, checks, and bills payable to order is that no one but the one to whose order they are payable can collect, and if lost the owner suffers no loss. It is otherwise with those payable to bearer or indorsed in blank (see sec. 9).

**8. Notes and Bills are Contracts**, and therefore as between the original parties (in a note the maker and payee, in a bill the acceptor and payee) they must conform to all the rules governing contracts, as to consideration, legality, etc. (Chap. XLV.). Thus if—in above note—Brown had received nothing for it from Smith & Co., but he had given it to them in order that they might sell it to some one else and thus raise money, they could not sue him upon it.\* So, also, if he had any claim against them, he could offset it against the note. But as soon as Smith & Co. indorse the note or bill and sell it to some one else, it is no longer subject to those rules, as will be explained in the following section.

**9. Negotiability**—When a note or bill has been thus transferred, before it is due, to some one who gives money or other consideration for it, and who has no knowledge of how it originated, such an owner may collect it from the maker or acceptor, although the payee could not. Thus the maker or acceptor cannot plead that he received no consideration for it, nor that it has been paid, though those matters should be true. He cannot offset against it any demand he has against one who did own it. In case of a note or bill payable to bearer or indorsed in blank, even though it had been stolen from an owner, a person receiving it in good faith could collect it, and the real owner could not. This is an exception to the rule that the true owner of stolen property is entitled to it wherever he finds it (see page 230). Hence, notes and bills are called *negotiable paper*. But if the holder has knowl-

---

\* Such notes are quite common, called *accommodation notes*.

edge of any of these defects, or if he has reason to suspect their existence, he cannot sue the maker or acceptor on it.

**10. Reason for It**—The reason for this difference between negotiable paper and other contracts is its common use, and the facility with which it passes from one to another. Its use in commercial transactions is of great public convenience, one note sometimes passing through five or six hands; and it is proper that, for the sake of trade, protection should be given to the holder of such paper who receives it fairly in the way of business. But it could not be so used if each holder had to take the risk of there being some defence to it of which he could know nothing. But it is also proper to refuse aid to one who takes it with knowledge of its defects.

**11. Transfer after Maturity**—After falling due a note or bill is no longer negotiable. If transferred after maturity, the maker or acceptor may make any defence to it he could have made as against the person who owned it at maturity. For instance: in case of a note, if the payee owned it when due and there was no consideration for it originally, the maker need not pay it. But if the one who owns it when due can collect it, any one to whom he transfers it can also. The general rule is that one can always convey the rights he has. A transfer of negotiable paper before maturity is peculiar, in that it may convey rights that the person transferring did not have.

**12. Time of Payment: Interest**—Notes and bills payable *on demand*, or in which no time of payment is mentioned, are due immediately, and no demand of payment is necessary. But a note payable *at sight*,

or at a specified time after sight, must be presented for payment before it can be sued. If the words "with interest" are omitted, interest commences at the time the note or bill becomes due. If payable on demand, it will draw interest from the time when payment is demanded.

**13. Days of Grace**—Notes and bills payable by their terms on a certain day are not really due until the third day thereafter. Those three days are called *days of grace*. If the last day of grace falls on Sunday or a legal holiday, it is due the day before. n. p. 239.

**14. Indorser's Liability**—Indorsement is a contract. Whenever a person to whom a note or bill is made payable, or one to whom it has been indorsed, writes his name on the back and transfers it to another, he contracts with that other and with all future holders that if the maker or acceptor does not pay it when due, he will. Therefore the holder of an unpaid note may sue not only the maker or acceptor, but every indorser whose name is on the back when he takes it. In case of an accepted bill the holder may sue the acceptor, the indorsers, and drawer. In case of a non-accepted bill he may sue the indorsers and drawer. If an indorser pays it, he may sue any indorser prior to him, besides the maker, and in case of a bill the acceptor and drawer. One who transfers a note or bill, payable to bearer or indorsed in blank, is not liable to any one on it.

**15. Demand of Payment**—The maker of a note or acceptor of a bill may be sued at any time after maturity, whether payment was demanded or not. But to hold the indorsers of a note, or the indorsers and drawer of an accepted bill, responsible, payment must



be demanded of the maker or acceptor on the last day of grace.

**16. Notice to Indorser**—If the maker or acceptor does not pay on that day, notice of that fact must be given to the indorsers and drawer to hold them; and the whole of the next day is allowed in which to send the notice. But the holder need only notify such as he chooses to hold liable to him, in which case if the indorser notified wishes to hold prior ones liable to him, he must himself send them notices, which he has another day to do. If the holder notifies all (the usual course), they are liable in their order to each other.\* It is not necessary that the notice should reach the party for whom it is intended, but simply that it should be left at his residence if the parties live in the same town, or sent by mail if they do not.

**17. Forged Paper**—If a note or bill is forged, no one can gain any right upon it against the one whose name is forged. So if an indorsement is forged, it conveys no right, or if the amount is raised by forgery. This is so, although a person should buy it in good faith believing it genuine. Negotiability only applies to true instruments. On the same principle, in those States where a usurious contract is wholly void, a usurious note or bill is void in the hands of every one.

---

\* The object of the notice is to give the indorser the earliest opportunity to secure himself against loss.

**DAYS OF GRACE**.—In many states days of grace are abolished. They were abolished in New York State by an act taking effect January 1, 1895.

## CHAPTER LII

## SERVICES

**1. Kinds of Service**—A very common class of contracts is that where one party undertakes to perform some labor or service for another. The services of doctors, lawyers, editors, the different kinds of manufacturers and mechanics, such as carpenters, painters, tailors, etc., belong to this class. Very often there is no express agreement to pay, but a request for the labor is sufficient, and a contract to pay a reasonable price for it is implied.

**2. Ordinary Skill**—By undertaking to render such services a person represents that he has the ordinary skill and knowledge necessary in the trade or profession, and if he has not he can recover nothing for his labor, and is liable for all damage done. Thus a doctor who injures one through neglect or want of skill or knowledge is answerable for all damage.

**3. Care of Property**—When the property of one person comes into the hands of another, for safe-keeping, repair, or other purpose, he must take such care of it as an ordinarily careful man does of his own property. The degree of care must be in proportion to the advantage he is to derive from it. Thus a borrower, who pays nothing for its use, must exercise the greatest care; ordinary care is required of one who expends labor on it and receives an equivalent, or of a hirer, or of one who takes it as a pledge for debt; slight care is sufficient when the party having it derives no advantage. In all these cases, if the property

is lost or injured, but through no fault of the person having it, it is the owner's loss.

**4. Hotel-Keepers** are obliged to take all who apply to them for lodging or board and offer to pay their regular price. They are in general responsible for all injuries to the goods and baggage of their guests, even for thefts. But for loss caused by unavoidable accident, or by superior force, as robbery, they are not liable. They have a lien upon the baggage of their guests for the payment of their charges.

**5. Common Carriers** are those who transport goods for hire as a common business, whether by land or by water. All railroad, steamboat, express, and stage companies are common carriers. They are bound to receive, from any person paying or tendering the freight charges, such goods as they are accustomed to carry and as are offered for the place to which they carry. But they may refuse to receive them if full, or if they are dangerous to be carried.

**6. The Responsibility** of common carriers is greater than that of others who receive property not their own for some purpose, such as mechanics, manufacturers, depositaries, etc. The latter we have seen are not responsible for the loss or injury of the property, except when it occurs through some degree of neglect on their part; but the common carrier is responsible in all cases, whether negligent or not. He is, in effect, an insurer of the goods against any loss or injury. But if it occurs through some great event which could not have been anticipated, like an inundation, war, etc., he is not liable.

**7. As to Passengers** the responsibility of common carriers is not so great. They are only liable for

injuries which occur through the want of skill, knowledge, or care, of themselves or their agents.

**8. Lien**—Where the personal property of one comes into the hands of another, for the performance of some labor in connection with it, the latter has a *lien* upon it for his services ; that is, he may retain it until paid. Thus a carriage-maker has a lien upon the carriage he has repaired ; a blacksmith upon the horse he has shod ; and a common carrier upon the goods he has transported. They have also the right to enforce the contract by suit. But if they allow the property to go out of their possession they lose the lien.

## CHAPTER LIII

### INSURANCE

**1. Kinds**—Contracts of insurance are of three kinds, fire, marine, and life insurance, and are usually in writing. They are called *policies*, and are generally issued by an incorporated company, in return for a fixed yearly payment, called a *premium*. Being merely contracts, they are subject to all the ordinary rules governing contracts. As a rule, the premium must be paid on the day when due, or the insurance ceases. We will refer only to a few points in which they are peculiar.

**2. Fire**—A contract of fire insurance is an agreement to pay for the loss or injury by fire of certain property, real or personal, during a certain period. This includes all damage done to the property not only by the fire itself, but also in consequence of a fire. Thus, if it be injured by water used to put out

the fire, even though it is not in the same building, the insurers are liable. The policy usually names a certain amount, and the company is liable for all damage up to that amount. But the owner must do all he can to save the property.

**3. Marine**—A contract of marine insurance is an agreement to pay for the loss or injury of a vessel, or the goods carried in it, through shipwreck, fire, piracy, or other peril of the sea. Sometimes the property insured is named as of a certain value, in which case neither party, in case of loss, can prove it to be otherwise. Marine is different from fire insurance in this particular, that if the vessel or cargo is damaged to at least one-half its value, the owner may give up what remains to the company and claim a total loss. This is called *abandonment*. In fire insurance this cannot be done except by special agreement.

**4. Life**—A contract of life insurance is an agreement to pay a certain person a certain sum of money at the death of another, or when the latter reaches a certain age. Very often a husband is said to insure his life by a policy payable to his wife, but in reality in such case the contract is between the company and the wife. So one may insure his life in his own favor, in which case the policy is payable to his legal representatives.

**5. Interest**—The person with whom the company contracts must have some ownership or interest in the subject of insurance. Thus, in fire and marine insurance, if any one but an owner, mortgagee, or other person having claim upon the property makes such a contract, it is void, being merely a wager, and all wagering contracts being illegal. So, in life insurance

the person to whom the money is to be paid must be dependent in some way for support upon the one at whose death it is to be paid, or must be a creditor, in order to have an insurable interest.

**6. Several Policies** are often issued by different companies covering the same property. In fire insurance they usually bear only a ratable proportion of the loss. In marine insurance it is often provided in the policy that the company shall only be liable for such portion of the loss as prior insurance does not satisfy.

**7. Representations** made at the time the insurance is taken, if known to be false, make the contract void. This is a general rule of contracts, but is unusually important in insurance. In marine insurance there is always a warranty, implied if not expressed, that the vessel insured, or on which the insured goods are shipped, is seaworthy; that is, able to withstand the ordinary dangers of the sea.

## CHAPTER LIV

### SHIPPING

**1. In General**—The rules of law applicable to shipping are in many respects the same as those governing other subjects; namely, the ordinary rules of contracts, sales, agency, etc. But the property and the situation in which it is placed are often peculiar, from which peculiar rules arise. A few of these we will speak of.

**2. Loss of Goods**—The responsibility of carriers by sea for loss or injury of the goods is not so great as that of inland common carriers. They are not liable when it is caused by some extraordinary peril of the



sea, as a violent storm, fire, piracy, etc.; but if caused by the unseaworthiness of the vessel, want of equipment, or through some fault of those navigating it, they are liable.

**3. Lien**—This is a common right in connection with a vessel. The carrier has a lien on the goods he transports for his freight; the owner of the goods has a lien upon the vessel for any claim he has for breach of the contract, loss of the goods, etc.; the seamen have a lien on the vessel for their wages; and any person who furnishes work or materials in the repairing or equipment of a foreign vessel has a lien upon it for what is due. This lien is a right to have the vessel sold, if necessary, to satisfy the claim. It is not like the common law lien, which is a right to retain property (page 242).

**4. A Bill of Lading** is a document delivered by the master (or owners) of a vessel to one shipping goods upon it, acknowledging their receipt for transportation. The person shipping the goods sends this to the one to whom they are sent. The latter may transfer it to another, indorsing it either in blank or to some particular person, as in notes and bills (page 235). This transfers the ownership of the goods; and the final holder of the bill of lading may demand the goods when they arrive.

**5. General Average**—Whenever any portion of a vessel or its cargo is voluntarily destroyed or thrown overboard at sea by the master, in a case of necessity, in order to save the rest, and the rest is saved thereby, all the owners of the vessel and the cargo must bear a portion of the loss in proportion to the value of their property there. This is called *general average*. Its

reason is evident, that all obtain the benefit. It is very common for part of a cargo to be thrown overboard to lighten a ship, but it would be unjust to make the owner of that portion bear all the loss, when otherwise both vessel and cargo would have been lost.

**6. Salvage**—If one vessel finds another vessel or goods upon the sea, deserted or in great danger, and saves them, a large proportion of the property, or its value, is distributed among the owner, master, and crew of the saving vessel. This proportion is often one-third to one-half. It is called *salvage*, and its object is to encourage the rendering of such services.

**7. Master's Authority**—The master of a vessel has complete authority over the crew and passengers when at sea. He may use force to compel obedience in the management of the vessel, and may even take life when necessary. When necessary for the safety of the vessel or cargo, he may sell or mortgage both.

## CHAPTER LV

### INTEREST

**1. Definition**—Interest is a premium paid for the use of money lent. To be interest it must be a return for money lent, and not a profit on money invested. Thus dividends upon railroad or other stock, or the profits of a business, are not interest.

**2. Rate**—Each State declares by law what shall be its legal rate of interest. This varies in the different States from six to ten per cent. per annum, being six in most.

**3. Usury**—The taking by the creditor of a rate of

interest beyond that which is established by law is *usury*. Parties may freely contract to take less than the legal rate; but when more is contracted for, not only can no more be collected on the contract or obligation than the legal rate, but in most of the States there is some additional forfeiture. In a few the obligation is void, and the payment of no part of the debt can be enforced by law; in others, twice or thrice the excess above the lawful interest is forfeited; and in some only the excess paid can be recovered.

### SECTION III.—REAL ESTATE

#### CHAPTER LVI

##### ESTATES IN REAL PROPERTY

**1. Estate**, in legal language, means not the property itself, but the kind of interest which a person has in certain real property, whether the absolute ownership, a qualified ownership, or only the right to use it for a time.\*

**2. Estate in Fee**—One is said to have an *estate in fee*, or an *estate in fee-simple*, in certain real property, when he has the unqualified ownership of it; the right to use it forever, and to sell it or transmit it to his heirs. Most of the land in the country is owned in this way. Two or more persons may own the same land together in fee-simple, and in such case are called *joint owners*.

**3. Estate for Life**—A person has an *estate for life*,

---

\* The term *real estate*, however, means the land itself. Estate is also sometimes used to mean particular real property, or even all the property, belonging to a particular person.

or a *life estate* in certain real property, when he has the right to use it during his own life or the life of some other person. At present life estates are seldom created to depend on the life of any person except the one to whom the life estate is given, who is called the *life tenant*. A widow's right of dower has been mentioned (page 220); this is a life estate. A life tenant cannot sell or mortgage the land, or destroy houses, trees, etc., upon it; neither can his creditors take it. This is therefore a method often used by parents to provide for their spendthrift children. The life estate—*i.e.*, the right to use\* the land—may itself be sold or mortgaged the same as other property.

**4. Future Estate**—This is a legal term, meaning the interest which a person has in certain land to whom it is to go upon the death of a life tenant, or upon some other contingency. Thus the heirs of the husband have a future estate in land set apart to a widow for her dower. If land is given to A, and on his death to go to B, the interest which B has during A's life is a future estate.

**5. Estate for Years**—This is a right to possess and use certain real estate for a definite period of time. The time may be any period—one, a hundred, a thousand years, or even less than a single year. The instrument creating this kind of estate is called a *lease*. Leases and the rights of the parties under them will form the subject of a later chapter (page 255).

**6. Trusts**—Sometimes it is desired to grant to one the benefit or income arising from certain property, but not the management or disposal of it, on account

---

\* Use in this connection includes the right to rent the land to others.

of his or her youth, lack of judgment, or other reason. This is done by means of a *trust*, which is a grant of property to one person (called the trustee) to hold for the benefit of another. The powers and duties of the trustee are different in different cases. Sometimes he is merely to distribute the property ; in other cases he is to control and manage the property, collect the rent or other income, and pay it over to designated persons ; in others, he even has power to sell the land. These powers are governed by the deed or will creating the trust.\*

## CHAPTER LVII

### DEEDS AND MORTGAGES

**1. A Deed** of land is a written instrument by which the ownership of the land is transferred to a purchaser.† A deed is a contract, and we have seen that such contracts must be in writing (page 217).

**2. A Mortgage** of land is in form a deed, made as security for the payment of a debt, and to become void on its payment. It does not, however, really convey the ownership, and usually the owner keeps possession of the property. It also must be in writing.

**3. Contents**—A deed or mortgage of land must, in general, (1) name the person who is to take, (2) describe the property, (3) name the interest that is conveyed,‡

---

\* Personal property is often held in trust in the same way. So, also, there may be a life interest, or future interest, in personal property ; but they are not common. It is, however, often rented, like land.

† If it conveys any estate greater than an estate for years it is a deed ; otherwise it is a lease (Chap. LVI.).

‡ Whether full ownership, life estate, etc.

(4) be signed by the person conveying, (5) be sealed, and (6) be delivered. Other things are often included in a deed, but without these it is without effect. The wife of the owner also must sign, or otherwise she will be entitled at his death, if she outlive him, to a life estate in one-third of the property (page 220).

**4. Delivery**—It is important to remember that delivery to the other party, or to some one in his behalf, is necessary to any deed or mortgage, as it is to every contract. It is the act which gives efficacy to all the rest.

**5. Recording**—After delivery the purchaser should have his deed or mortgage recorded in the office of the recorder of the county (or town) \* in which the land lies. This is not necessary as to the grantor (the person conveying). An unrecorded deed is good as against his claim, or that of his heirs, to the land. But if the grantor after giving a deed to one should fraudulently give another (or a mortgage) of the same land to a second person, who should have no notice of the first, and who should get his deed or mortgage on record first, the second person would have a prior claim to the land.

**6. Acknowledgment**—A recorder or register may not record a conveyance of land without proof that it was executed by the person named in it as the maker or grantor; and if he does, the record is a nullity. This proof consists, usually, in a certificate of a proper officer, on the back or at the end of the deed, stating that the person so named appeared before him and acknowledged that he was the person who had executed the deed. In general, judges of courts and justices of the peace, mayors and aldermen of cities, notaries

---

\* See page 54.



public, and commissioners of deeds appointed for that special purpose, may take acknowledgments. In New York and some other States the acknowledgment may be dispensed with, and the execution of the deed may be proved by an affidavit of a subscribing witness. Deeds duly acknowledged or proved are, with the acknowledgments or proofs, copied by the recorder, word for word, in books provided for that purpose. But the acknowledgment is not necessary as against the grantor.

**7. Covenants**—A purchaser of any kind of property, real or personal, obtains only such title as the seller had. If it turns out to belong to another, that other has a right to it. We have seen that in personal property a seller impliedly warrants that he has good title, and if he has not the purchaser may sue him for the damage (page 230). There is no such implied warranty in real estate. Therefore it is usual for a seller to put in the deed an express warranty to the same effect. There are often other covenants in a deed, such as that there are no taxes, mortgages, or other incumbrances standing against it. These do not give the purchaser any better right to keep the land than a deed without them does, but only a right to call upon the seller for reimbursement.

**8. Foreclosure**—This is a proceeding, generally a suit in a court, by which the claim of a person holding a mortgage upon land is enforced. The land either becomes his property or it is sold, and the claims or liens upon it are paid in the order of their priority.

## CHAPTER LVIII

## APPURTENANCES

**1. Appurtenances** are minor rights, or property, connected with real estate, which pass to the successive owners with the land. Thus a transfer of land carries with it all houses, trees, and everything standing or growing upon it, and all mines and quarries beneath the surface. The transfer of a house carries with it the doors, blinds, keys, etc., although they may be at the time temporarily detached, and not upon the property. Nor is it necessary to name these things in the deed.

**2. Rights over Highway**—The owners of land adjoining highways own the land to the centre of the road: the public have only a right of passage while the road is continued. The owners of the soil may maintain a suit against any person who encroaches upon the road, or digs up the soil, or cuts down trees growing on the side of the road. They may carry water in pipes under it, and have every use of it that does not interfere with the rights of the public.

**3. Rights over Streams**—Every proprietor of lands through which a stream flows has naturally a right to the use of the water that flows in the stream. Each may use the water while it runs upon his own land, for a mill or other purpose; but he cannot diminish its volume or give it another direction; and he must return it to its ordinary channel when it leaves his land. He cannot, by dams or any obstruction, cause the water injuriously to overflow the land of the neighbor above

him, nor so use or apply it as materially to injure his neighbor below him. If a stream flows between the lands of two, each owns the land to the centre of the stream, but they must use the whole stream together as joint owners.\*

**4. Another kind of appurtenance** is where the owner of certain land acquires an additional right over land belonging to another, such as the right of passing over that land for himself and whomever he permits, the right to take water or earth from it, to pasture cattle upon it, to lay pipes through it, etc. Such rights once acquired do not generally belong to the person acquiring them personally, but as the owner of the land they benefit. When he transfers the land they pass with it to the purchaser without being named. Thus we come to say they are *appurtenant* to the land.

**5. Right of Way**—This is the right which the owner of certain land has to pass over the land of another. It may be a right to pass with a team, or only to pass on foot. Without it no person has a right even to step upon another's land or enter his house without his permission. But a right of way is something more than a permission which may be revoked at any time. It is an interest in the land itself, and cannot be revoked. When a highway is out of repair or obstructed by snow, a flood, or in any way, the public has a temporary right of way upon the adjoining land. A right of way must be used for no other purpose than passage.

---

\* The rule as to navigable rivers is different. They belong to the State, and the landowners have no rights in them beyond those of other persons.

**6. Party Walls**—In cities houses are often built having their side walls in common. The wall stands half upon one lot and half upon the other, and each owner has the right to insert the timbers of his house into it. Neither has the right to take down his half of the wall without the consent of the owner of the other lot. In other words, each lot has the right over the other lot to have the whole wall stand. Without such right an owner can do as he pleases with what stands on his own land. Such walls are called *party walls*.

**7. Acquisition of Right**—There are two common ways by which such rights as rights of way, party walls, and other rights which one estate enjoys over another, may be acquired: (1) by grant, and (2) by long use. The grant of such a right must be by some written document, as it is a contract for the sale of an interest in land (page 217). But such right may also be obtained by its enjoyment for twenty years without disturbance, though it was not originally granted.\* Thus if the owners of a piece of land have for twenty years passed over that belonging to another, claiming a right to do so, at the end of that time they obtain the right. The enjoyment is deemed to have been uninterrupted, whether it has been continued from ancestor to heir and from seller to buyer, or whether the use has been enjoyed during the entire period by one person.

---

\* This is merely one application of the general rule, that a person who wishes to enforce his rights must begin his suit within a certain period (page 217). In the same way, if a person allows another, who claims to be owner, to occupy his land for twenty years, the true owner loses his land.

**8. Loss of Right**—As these rights may be obtained by grant and by use, so they may be lost in two ways: by being conveyed back to the one from whom they came, and by not being used for twenty years.

## CHAPTER LIX

### LANDLORD AND TENANT

**1. Lease**—The relation of landlord and tenant arises where one person occupies land owned by another, under an agreement between them. Usually the tenant is to pay for its use. It is therefore a contract relation, and subject to all the rules of contracts (Chap. XLV.). The contract creating the relation is called a *lease*. A lease if for more than a year must be in writing and signed, if for only a year or less it may be oral.\* Sealing is not necessary. Sometimes the tenancy is for no definite period (sec. 9).

**2. Rent** is a return made by the tenant to the landlord for the use of the land. Usually it is in money, periodically paid, but may be in services, profits, or anything else. The parties may make any agreement as to the amount of rent, and when it shall be due. If there is no agreement as to amount, the tenant must pay what the use of the property is reasonably worth. As to the time of payment, where there is no special agreement to the contrary, rent is due yearly, half-yearly, or quarterly, according to the usage of the country. Where there is no particular usage, the rent is due at the end of the year. If the landlord does

---

\* In some States a lease for three years or less may be oral.

anything wrongfully to render any part of the premises useless to the tenant, the latter may leave, and no rent is due.

**3. Destruction of Property**—Where there is an express agreement to pay rent, the tenant cannot avoid payment even if the premises are destroyed by fire or flood, even without any fault on his part.\* Hence, if land should be leased with a flock of sheep, and the sheep should die, the full rent must be paid. But neither the landlord nor tenant is bound to rebuild houses destroyed by an accidental fire.

**4. Eviction** is the depriving one of lands of which he is in possession. A landlord has the right to evict his tenant either when the latter fails to pay any portion of the rent due or in any way injures the property. He may also do it for any cause, for which he reserves the right in the lease. But this eviction is a process of law. A suit is brought, and the sheriff puts the landlord in possession. No landlord has a right to take possession of his premises personally, without the tenant's consent.

**5. Sale of Property**—When property has been rented and is afterward sold or in any way transferred by the landlord to another person, such transaction does not in any way affect the tenant's rights or liabilities. He retains the property, and must pay the rent to the new landlord, who is substituted to all the rights of the original landlord. But if the land should be recovered from the tenant by a person having a better title than that derived from his landlord,

---

\* In some States this rule is changed so as to relieve a tenant from paying rent when the premises are destroyed without his fault and he surrenders them.



he is not liable for rent after his use of the land has ceased.

**6. Repairs**—A landlord is under no obligation to his tenant to make repairs to the property, unless he has made a special agreement to that effect. But the tenant must deliver up the premises in as good a condition as that in which they were when he took them, except that he will not be liable for the ordinary wear and tear. He will therefore be obliged to make ordinary repairs, such as the keeping of fences in order, replacing broken doors or windows, etc. But extraordinary repairs, such as the supplying of a new roof or repairs necessitated by an accidental fire, the tenant will not be obliged to make.

**7. Crops**—A tenant has of course the right to take all crops reaped during his tenancy. A tenant for a definite time, whose lease expires after the land is sown or planted, and before harvest, is not entitled to the crop; for, knowing that his lease would expire before harvest time, he might have avoided the loss of his labor. But if the lease is for an indefinite time, or depends upon an uncertain event, and is terminated before harvest, the tenant is entitled to the crop.

**8. Assignment by Tenant**—A tenant may assign his whole interest to another, unless restrained by agreement not to assign without leave of the landlord. And he may underlet for any less number of years than he himself holds, or any portion of the land that he holds. The difference between an assignment and a sub-lease is that in the former the whole interest is conveyed, in the latter only a portion. They are very different in their effect. In an assignment the person who takes the lease becomes liable for the

rent to the landlord, though the original tenant is not thereby released. In a sub-lease the under-tenants are not liable for rent to the landlord, but merely to their landlord, the tenant. The landlord, however, retains all the rights he has against the tenant, and may evict him and all the under-tenants, if the original lease be not complied with. To save themselves from dispossession the under-tenants may pay their rent to the original landlord.

**9. Notice to Quit**—This is a notice by the landlord to the tenant to leave the premises. In ordinary tenancies for a definite period, a month, a year, etc., no notice to quit is necessary. If the tenant does not leave at the expiration of the time, the landlord may immediately take legal proceedings to evict him. But where the period is uncertain, as where the tenancy is to continue at the pleasure of the landlord, this notice must be given before eviction can be had. The time of the notice is generally at least as long as a month, and in some cases six months. The purpose is to protect the tenant from being suddenly turned out of his home.

## CHAPTER LX

### DISTRIBUTION OF PROPERTY UPON DEATH

#### *a. Wills*

**1. Will**—It is a general rule that a person may dispose of all his property upon his death in any way he wishes, even to disinheriting his own children.\* This

---

\* In some States this is subject to exception, so that children may not be wholly disinherited, or a wife left unprovided for.

he does by means of a document called a *will*. The person making it is called the *testator*. If no will is left the property is distributed among certain relatives. In such case the person is said to die *intestate*.

**2. Who May Make**—The rule is that every person of full age and sound mind may make a will. An exception is that in some States married women may not. In many of the States personal estate may be willed at an earlier age. If upon the probate of a will (page 81) it is shown that the testator was of unsound mind, or made it under undue influence from any one, it will be declared void.

**3. Formalities**—A will must be made in the mode prescribed by the law, or it is void. In the first place, it must, in general, be written.\* It must be signed by at least two, in some States three, attending witnesses, in whose presence the testator must sign the will, or acknowledge that he signed it, and declare it to be his last will and testament.

**4. Revocation**—A will has no effect until after death. Before death the testator may revoke or alter it in any particular. Revocation may be made in two ways: (1) by burning, tearing, or otherwise purposely destroying it, and (2) by making a new will with the same formalities expressly revoking the prior will. If a will is accidentally destroyed, and there is no intent to revoke it, it still legally exists. If a second will is made and does not expressly revoke the former, both stand as far as they do not contradict each other; but as far as they are antagonistic the later one prevails, as where both dispose of the same property but in dif-

---

\* Oral wills can only be made by soldiers in active service, or sailors at sea.

ferent ways. If particular property is disposed of in a will, but is sold by the testator before his death, the will is in that respect void.\*

**5. A Codicil** is an addition or a supplement to a will, and must be executed with the same formalities. It is no revocation of the will, except in the precise degree in which they are inconsistent.

### *b. Intestacy.*

**6. Distribution of Property**—The order and proportion in which the relatives of a deceased person, who leaves no will, share in his property, are regulated by the statutes of the several States, which are not uniform. But it is a general rule that all brothers and sisters, when entitled, share alike; *i.e.*, there is no preference of the first-born over the others, nor of the male over the female.†

**7. As to Real Estate**, if there are children they take it all, or if any are dead their children take their parents' shares. If there are no direct descendants, in some States the father or mother of the intestate will be entitled, in others the brothers and sisters. In some the husband or wife is entitled to a portion, whether there are children or not. There is no proceeding before the probate court as to real estate. The person or persons inheriting are entitled to the immediate possession.

---

\* In some States marriage or the birth of a child will revoke a will, so that the wife or husband or child will not remain unprovided for.

† An *heir* is one entitled to the *real estate* of another who dies intestate. Neither one who receives personal property in that way, nor one who receives any kind of property under a will, is properly called an heir.

**8. As to Personal Property** the rules of distribution are in general about the same as in case of real estate; though in some States they differ somewhat. Those entitled do not take possession immediately on death. An administrator is appointed by the court, and he takes possession of it all. After a certain time he distributes it among those entitled (page 81).

## SECTION IV.—CRIMINAL LAW

### CHAPTER LXI

#### CRIMES

**1. A Crime** is an offence against the public, the whole body of the people, because it tends to disturb the public peace and to overturn the body of laws which the public has established for the security of life and property of each person. The purpose of the penalty inflicted is not expiation, but simply to protect the community against its future commission. Almost every crime is also the violation of some private right for which the private individual has his remedy (page 83, *note*); but usually the public penalty is so great that the former is lost sight of, and very often is not enforced.\*

**2. The Laws of each State** define the crimes of which it takes cognizance, and prescribe the punishments. The definitions given in this chapter agree substantially with those of similar crimes in every State in the Union. The punishment for the same

---

\* Ignorance of the law excuses no one. If it did, no law could be enforced.

crime is not the same in all the States, nor is there in any State an equal measure of punishment inflicted in all cases for the same offence. The laws usually declare the longest and the shortest term of imprisonment, and the highest and lowest fine for each offence, leaving the exact measure of punishment, except for crimes punishable by death, to the discretion of the judges to be fixed according to the aggravation of the offence.

**3. Capital Punishment** is punishment by death, and the crimes for which it is inflicted are called *capital crimes*. These are now very few, in many States only treason and murder. In a few States capital punishment has been abolished. For other crimes the punishment ranges from imprisonment for life in case of the most heinous crimes, to imprisonment for a few days in case of the slightest misdemeanors.

**4. Treason** is levying war in any State against the people of the State; or adhering to enemies of the State while it is engaged in war with them, and giving them aid and comfort.\*

**5. Murder** is the killing of a human being deliberately and maliciously, and with intent to effect death; or killing a person in committing some other crime, though not with a design to effect death. The less aggravated cases of murder are in some States distinguished as murder in the second degree, and punished by imprisonment for a long term, or for life.

**6. Manslaughter** is killing a person either upon a sudden quarrel, or unintentionally while committing some unlawful act not a crime. The difference be-

---

\* This is treason against a State. Treason against the United States is another crime (page 135).



tween murder and manslaughter is in the premeditated malice of the former.\*

**7. Arson** is maliciously burning any dwelling-house, shop, barn, or any other building, the property of another. Arson in the first degree, which is burning an inhabited dwelling *in the night-time*, is in some States punishable with death.

**8. Burglary** is forcibly breaking into and entering *in the night-time* the dwelling-house of another with intent to commit a crime.

**9. Robbery** is the taking of personal property from another in his presence and against his will, by violence, or by putting him in fear of immediate injury to his person.

**10. Larceny**, popularly called *theft* or *stealing*, is the wrongful taking of another's personal property, with the intent to deprive him of it permanently. In some States the stealing of property above a certain amount in value is called *grand larceny*, and is a State-prison offence. If the value of the property stolen is of less amount the offence is called *petit larceny*, and is punished by fine or imprisonment in jail or both.

**11. Embezzlement** is fraudulently taking with intent to apply to one's own use what is intrusted to him by another. To buy or receive property knowing it to have been embezzled, is to be guilty of the same offence. Embezzlement is usually punishable in the same manner as larceny of the same amount.

---

\* *Homicide* means mankilling in general. When a crime it is either murder or manslaughter. Homicide is lawful when committed (1) by an officer when necessary in the execution of his duty to take or prevent the escape of a prisoner, (2) by a private person in self-defence or in preventing any atrocious crime, (3) by any one through unavoidable accident without fault on his part.

**12. Forgery** consists in falsely making, counterfeiting, or altering any instrument in writing with intent to defraud. The word *counterfeiting* is generally applied to making false coin or paper money, or in passing them ; but it is a kind of forgery.

**13. Perjury** is wilfully swearing or affirming falsely to any material matter, upon an oath legally administered. *Subornation of perjury* is instigating another to swear falsely ; it is punishable as perjury.

**14. Bribery** is the offering money or other reward to a public officer to influence his vote or judgment, or its acceptance by the officer for such purpose.

**15. Bigamy** is the crime of having two or more wives, and is also called *polygamy*. These words, in law, are applied also to women having two or more husbands (page 220).

**16. Other Crimes**—Besides those already named there are many other acts made crimes in most States. The following are some of them : Intentionally *maiming* another by disabling any member or limb ; *inveigling* or *kidnapping* ; *decoying* and taking away *children* ; *exposing children* in the street to abandon them ; *opening a grave* and removing a dead body for any unlawful purpose, or purchasing such body knowing it to have been unlawfully disinterred ; *aiding* a prisoner to *escape* ; *duelling* ;\* *assault and battery* ; *imprisonment* without authority ; *libel* ; *rioting*. There are also numerous smaller misdemeanors and immoralities, such as willful trespasses and injuries to property, drunkenness, gambling, indecent exposure, etc.

**17. Attempts** to commit a crime, though unsuccessful

---

\* If either party be killed it is in many States murder.

ful, are also criminal, but the punishment is usually lighter.

**18. Accessories** are those concerned in the commission of crimes though not actually committing them themselves. He who advises, procures, or commands another to commit a felony, is called an *accessory before the fact*, and is punished in the same manner as the principal. One who conceals the offender knowing that an offence has been committed, or gives him any aid to prevent his being brought to punishment, is an *accessory after the fact*, and also subject to punishment.

**19. Arrests** may and should be made by any one, though a private person, in whose presence a heinous crime or breach of the peace is committed. When no one witnesses the commission, arrest can only be made by an officer provided with a warrant against the offender.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

### MUNICIPAL LAW

#### *Civil Rights in General*

1. What is municipal law ? Is it regulated by State or Nation ?
2. What is common law ? Statute law ?
3. Name and describe the three fundamental rights of persons.
4. What is slander ? Libel ? How is each punished ?
5. Name the public relative civil rights. How enforced ?
6. Describe the duties and rights of a parent toward his child.
7. What is a guardian ? His duties and rights ? An apprentice ?

#### *Contracts*

8. What is a contract ? Describe the different kinds.
9. What is the fundamental rule of contracts ?
10. What persons need not fulfil their contracts ? Why ?
11. If an offer is made and accepted by mail, at what moment is the contract complete ?

12. What is the consideration of a contract? State the rule as to consideration.
13. In case of fraud or force, may the party upon whom it is practised enforce the contract? May the other? Why?
14. What contracts must be in writing? Why?
15. How long may one delay to sue?
16. Name the three kinds of remedy for breach of contract.
17. At what age is marriage lawful? What relatives may marry?
18. Is a ceremony of marriage necessary?
19. State the former rule as to the effect of marriage upon the wife's property. The present rule.
20. What is dower? Does it exist now?
21. What is divorce? For what causes granted?
22. What is an agent? Name some classes.
23. State the fundamental rule of agency.
24. When is an agent himself liable to third parties?
25. What is partnership? State its fundamental rule.
26. May a partner sell his interest to any one?
27. State how partnerships may be dissolved.
28. What is a sale? Barter?
29. If goods are sold, but destroyed without fault before delivery, who must bear the loss?
30. When must a contract of sale of goods be written? When not?
31. If property is stolen and sold to one who is ignorant of that fact, to whom does it belong? State the exception.
32. When does a seller of goods warrant the title? When the quality?
33. May one give away all his property? Who may complain?
34. State the effect of non-delivery in a gift. In a sale. In a barter.
35. Define a promissory note. A bill of exchange. A maker. A payee. A drawer. A drawee. An acceptor.
36. Describe acceptance. Indorsement. Blank indorsement.
37. When may a note be indorsed? A bill?
38. What is an accommodation note? May the payee of such a note sue the maker? Who may?
39. Explain negotiability, and its reason.
40. What are days of grace?
41. To whom is an indorser liable? Who are liable to him?
42. What two things are necessary to make an indorser liable?
43. State the rule as to skill and care, in services rendered. In the use of property of another.
44. What is a common carrier? Describe his liability as to goods. As to passengers.
45. Name and describe the different kinds of lien.
46. Define the three kinds of insurance.
47. What is abandonment in marine insurance?
48. Who may insure property? Who may insure life?
49. When are ship-owners liable for the loss of goods?
50. What is a bill of lading? Describe its use.
51. What is general average? Salvage?
52. What is usury? Its effect?

*Real Estate*

53. What is an estate in fee? Estate for life? Future estate? Estate for years? Trust?
54. May a life tenant sell the land? May he mortgage it?
55. What is a deed? A mortgage? May they be oral?
56. State the necessary contents of a deed or mortgage. Is delivery necessary?
57. What is the purpose and effect of recording? Of acknowledgment?
58. What is a covenant of warranty in a deed? Its effect?
59. What are appurtenances? Name some common ones.
60. What is a lease? What leases may be oral?
61. When may a landlord evict his tenant? In what way?
62. What effect has a sale of the property upon a prior lease?
63. Who must repair leased property?
64. State the difference between an assignment of a lease and a sublease. To whom must the new tenants pay rent in each case?
65. When is notice to quit necessary?
66. Who may make wills?
67. May children be disinherited by will?
68. How is a will made? How revoked?
69. Who receives the property of one dying without will? What is an heir?

*Criminal Law*

70. What is the object in punishing crime?
71. What are capital crimes?
72. What is treason? Murder? Manslaughter? Arson? Burglary? Robbery? Larceny? Embezzlement? Forgery? Counterfeiting? Perjury? Bribery? Bigamy?
73. What are accessories? How punished?
74. By whom may arrests be made?

## DIVISION II

### INTERNATIONAL LAW

#### SECTION I.—PEACEFUL RELATIONS OF NATIONS

#### CHAPTER LXII

##### NATURE AND AUTHORITY OF INTERNATIONAL LAW

**1. Definition of Nation**—A nation—also called a state\*—is a body of persons living within a certain territory under a sovereign government organized for the purpose of administering universal justice. Thus a body of pirates, though having an organized government and laws, is not a nation and is not entitled to any of the rights of nations, for its purpose is not justice but plunder. So communities of savages do not come under international law. But there are very few countries appearing on the map which are not now considered entitled to protection.

**2. Sovereignty** is the chief attribute of a nation. This means the full power to govern its subjects without interference or direction from any other power, and the right to enter into relations with other states.

---

\* In this connection the two words mean the same. In the United States this word has a peculiar meaning, for none of our States are nations. Through this division they will be used as synonymous. The rules here stated apply only to the United States as a nation, for the States, as such, can have no relations with foreign nations.



All states, no matter how small or how great in territory or power, possess an equal degree of independent sovereignty.

**3. Dependence**—There is a sense, however, in which nations are dependent upon each other. Persons in the social state, as we have seen, are dependent upon each other for assistance (page 11). Such is, in a measure, the mutual dependence of nations. Although the people of every nation may have within themselves the means of maintaining their individual and national existence, their prosperity and happiness are greatly promoted by commerce with other nations; consequently there is more or less intercourse between them and their respective citizens.

**4. International Law**, called also the *law of nations*, is the system of rules regulating this intercourse between nations and their respective subjects, as acknowledged by the civilized states of the world. Like the civil law, it is founded in the principles of natural justice, but is not and cannot be so broad as the law of nature (page 17).\* It is made necessary by the fact that nations, as well as individuals, have their rights which other nations must respect, the right of property, of reputation, the right to protect citizens against injury by foreigners; just as municipal law is necessary to regulate the rights of men (page 12).

**5. Of Recent Origin**—As a system the law of nations is of modern growth. It has existed but a few centuries.

---

\* It must be remembered that international law not only does not and cannot descend to all the details of justice made obligatory by the divine law, but also that in some cases it allows positive injustice; for it consists not of what most Christian nations *ought* to agree upon, but what they *have* agreed upon.

Nations, even beyond the middle of the Christian Era, were little governed by the principles of natural justice. Little respect was paid by one to the persons and property of the citizens of another. Robbery on land and sea was not only tolerated, but esteemed honorable; and prisoners of war were either put to death or reduced to slavery. By this rule commerce was destroyed, and perpetual enmity kept up between nations.

**6. Cause of its Growth**—The law of nations is the recognition of the fact that foreigners have claims upon us. It has always been, and is now to a great extent, a principle of action with all peoples, that foreigners are entitled to no consideration. The less that is known of them, the less are their rights regarded. Christianity, the spirit of chivalry, and the increasing intercourse of nations with each other, have been the agents which have caused the world to recognize the natural rights of foreigners, and which have built up the law of nations.

**7. Enforcement**—The strongest distinction between international and civil law is that while the latter has the power of a state to enforce it, with the former there is no means of enforcement, in case of dispute or disobedience. This follows from the sovereignty of each nation. There is no sovereign power above them all. It is and must remain a system of laws which the parties may or may not obey, as long as the world remains composed of separate nations. The only remedy is for the nation injured by any violation to appeal to the sense of justice of the other (generally a futile appeal), or to resort to war.

**8. Arbitration** is a proceeding which has been resorted to at times in the settlement of minor dis-

putes; but there is no power to compel submission to arbitration, or obedience to the decision when made.

**9. Treaties**, as such, form no part of international law. They are binding only on those who make them, while the law of nations is binding on all nations. But they often contain agreements to do many things enjoined by the law of nations, and if most of the treaties between the powers contain the same stipulations, they thus become evidence of what the law is in those particulars.

**10. The Defects** of international law are as follows: (1) There is no international legislature to declare what shall be law, and to make changes when necessary; (2) there is no judiciary to apply it in cases of disputes between nations, and each nation must make the decision for itself; (3) there is no supreme power to execute the law (sec. 7), and the injured nation must execute it by war, and if it cannot, must submit. For these reasons the law is uncertain, even at best, acknowledged by but a portion of the world, and very slow to improve. In case of dispute, neither disputant is likely to make a just judgment, and justice is virtually denied to the weak power when against the interest of the strong.

**11. Observance**—Having thus the power in their own hands, nations do not always observe the law, even when it is clearly established. Even in the latest times it has been flagrantly violated by ambitious princes or misguided people. But comparing its commencement in the Middle Ages with its present position we can say that it has made much progress, and we may hope that in the future, as civilization

advances and the principles of justice become better known and more widely admitted, its progress will be still greater.

## CHAPTER LXIII

### ORDINARY RULES OF PEACE

**1. Recognition**—Every nation has a right to establish such form of government as it shall see fit, and when established to have its government recognized as such by all others. Otherwise it would be giving one nation the right to interfere in the affairs of another (sec. 6). International law takes governments as they are, without questioning their legitimacy, and thus a usurping monarch is entitled to all its protection. Any other rule would make continual war.

**2. Jurisdiction**—The exclusive jurisdiction of a state extends not only over the land within its boundaries, but to all rivers flowing through it, the bays, harbors, etc., upon the coast, and a marine league of the contiguous ocean. The remainder of the ocean is free to all. All nations may use it for transit, fishing, or any other purpose.

**3. Intercourse**—International law has not yet advanced so far that intercourse is a right which may be demanded in all cases. In the absence of treaty obligation, or the right accorded by custom, a nation may refuse to allow others to have commercial relations with it, or may prevent immigration into it. It may shut out all mankind. This we believe to be contrary to the true advantage of any state, but the right of sovereignty over its territory implies such a power. But when general intercourse has been once estab-

lished, the deprivation of the privilege, except for some good reason, would be an injury and the violation of a right, for the right is gained by usage. Free intercourse both for travellers and immigrants is now granted by all civilized nations, and it may perhaps be expected that, as the commerce of the world increases and travel becomes more and more general, it will in time become established as a strict right. As to emigration, every citizen now has the right to leave his country whenever he chooses.

**4. Travellers** while in a country are subject to its laws, and if they violate them, though ignorantly, may be punished by them. On the other hand, they are entitled to the full protection of its laws and its government.

**5. Fugitive Criminals**—A criminal must usually be tried in the country where the crime is committed and whose laws are violated. There is, however, no strict obligation upon a nation to return criminals escaping into it. This, too, may in time come to be a principle of international law, for it is now very common to have it provided for in treaties, and our government has *extradition treaties*, as they are called, with several nations.

**6. Non-Interference**—It is a general principle that no nation has the right to interfere in the affairs of another, either its internal affairs or its relation with other states. Interference would be a violation of sovereignty. Therefore no nation has the right to aid the colonies, or any portion of another, which are in revolt against their government, while the two nations sustain peaceful relations. Such an act is unfriendly. When a revolt has progressed so far that

a new government has been established, and the old government has virtually surrendered the contest, though it may not in words have so declared, the new state, because it is a state, may demand recognition and non-interference from all (sec. 1).

**7. Exception**—There is an important exception to this rule of non-intervention. A state in Europe may interfere when the political policy of another, even though it be otherwise just and peaceful, threatens to endanger the security of the former. Thus if one state by uniting peacefully with another will grow so powerful as to threaten the independence of others, they may interfere to prevent the union. This is called preserving the *balance of power*, and applies only to the nations of Europe, which have ever been jealous of each other. Extreme cases of outrageous tyranny or cruelty on the part of a government toward its subjects will justify interference.

**8. Treaties are Contracts**—As with persons, so with nations, all have the right of making contracts with each other, and when made the parties are under obligation to carry them out. But treaties cannot be made which disregard the rights of others, or which bind to do unlawful acts. So, also, if obtained through force or fraud, they are void.

**9. Ambassadors**—These have been before described (page 173). They form an exception to the rule that foreigners always become subject to the laws of the country in which they are. Ambassadors,\* their assistants, families and servants, are not subject to the laws of the countries in which they are. They cannot

---

\* We here mean foreign ministers of all kinds.



be sued in civil suit nor prosecuted criminally; in other words, their persons and property are inviolate. They are held answerable only to the laws of their own country when they shall return home. The reasons for this rule are, (1) the respect due them as the representatives of a nation, and (2) the necessity that they should be free from all interruption and danger in the discharge of their important duties. They are also entitled to the same privileges in the countries through which they pass in going to or returning from the country to which they are sent. Any disrespect shown to them is disrespect to the nation they represent.

**10. Consuls** are not entitled to the privilege enjoyed by ministers, but are subject to the laws of the country in which they reside. As in the case of ministers, consuls carry a certificate of their appointment, and must be acknowledged as such by the government of the country in which they reside, before they can perform any duties pertaining to their office.

**11. Reprisals** have been before explained (page 155). They are sometimes used as a means of obtaining satisfaction without actual war. The property when taken is kept until all hope of satisfaction is gone, and then it is confiscated.\* But now reprisals are seldom resorted to in time of peace.

**12. Embargo** is the detention for a time of all vessels in the ports of a country by its government. When directed against all vessels, national and foreign, for the purpose of protecting them, it is a *civil embargo*. When directed against foreign vessels in time of peace

---

\* To *confiscate* is to adjudge property to be forfeited, and to appropriate it to the use and benefit of the state.

it is called a *hostile embargo*, and is a species of reprisal. Embargo is lawful, but is falling into disuse, except as a measure of war.

## SECTION II.—RELATIONS OF NATIONS IN WAR

### CHAPTER LXIV

#### CAUSES AND OBJECTS OF WAR

**1. Rightfulness of War**—A nation itself has rights, the right of sovereignty, independence, property, etc., and is under obligation to protect them, and also to protect the rights of its citizens. The purpose of government is to protect these rights against all the world. But we have seen that when these rights are violated or threatened by a foreign nation or its subjects there is no supreme power to whom to look for redress or protection. Therefore each nation has in itself the two rights of redress and self-defence; that is, it may use force to redress or to prevent the infliction of an injury upon itself or its subjects. War, therefore, though a great evil, is just when used as a means to prevent a greater evil; and war in itself is not wholly an evil, for it has often been the means of bringing back the decaying virtue of a people.

**2. Cause**—But war is not lawful unless it has (1) a just cause, and (2) a proper and sufficient object; that is, there must be some cause recognized as just by most nations, and the object to be attained by it must be sufficient to compensate the world for the injury it inflicts. A just cause is the violation of any of

the rights of a nation or its subjects. Thus, interference by another with its sovereignty, or independence, seizure of its territory, unjust injury to the liberty, security, or property of its citizens, insults to its flag or its ambassadors, and violations of treaties, are just causes of war by the nation injured against the one injuring.

**3. Object**—A proper object of a just war may be, (1) to obtain redress for wrong committed, (2) as a punishment to prevent its repetition, and (3) in self-defence to prevent its present commission. Self-defence against unjust attack is always a sufficient object of war. But in many cases the injury committed or threatened is so small as not to justify a war; that is, the object is proper but not sufficient. Injuries to single individuals are often of this nature. And yet sometimes a small injustice to a single person may be done in such a manner as to imply contempt for his nation: in such case the interests of the whole nation compel it to resent the wrong.

**4. Who Judges**—And yet, as we have seen, the nation intending to resort to war is the only one authorized to decide whether its cause be just and its object proper and sufficient. Others have no right to interfere, even though they should think the war unjust. But if no pretext of right be offered, any or all nations may interfere, for there is no such thing as the right of conquest.

**5. Arbitration**—It may be said that in justice all peaceful measures to obtain redress ought to be taken before war is resorted to; such as, demand of satisfaction, and offer to arbitrate. This is one of the cases in which international law has not yet reached its high-

est point, for such preliminaries, though frequently taken, are not necessary to a just war. Indeed, in some cases, as of an attack without warning, they are not possible.

**6. Alliance for War**—By treaty of alliance, nations sometimes agree to assist each other in case of war with a third power. But when the occasion arises each of the allies must decide for itself whether it will take part, for no treaty can bind one to wage an unjust war.

## CHAPTER LXV

### RIGHTS AND DUTIES OF BELLIGERENTS \*

**1. Declaration**—When a nation has resolved on making war, it is usual to announce the fact by a public declaration. It was usual, formerly, to communicate a declaration of war to the enemy, but this is not now necessary. Any manifesto or paper from an official source, published in such a way as to give notice to its citizens, the enemy, and neutrals, is sufficient. Every one should be notified whose rights may be affected, so that he may protect them. The recalling of a minister has alone been regarded as a hostile act, and followed by war, without any other declaration, but such cases have not been frequent.

**2. Effect upon Intercourse**—The government of a state acts for and in behalf of all its citizens; and its acts are binding upon all. Hence, when war is declared, all intercourse between the two countries at once ceases. All trade between the citizens, directly

---

\* *Belligerents* are those taking active part in a war; *neutrals* are all others.

or indirectly, is strictly forbidden; and all contracts with the enemy made during the war are void.

**3. Foreigners within the Country** belonging to the hostile nation are, upon the declaration of war, either allowed to remain during good behavior, even through the war, or else a reasonable time is given them by public proclamation to depart with their property.

**4. Private Acts**—Formerly war made every citizen of one state the enemy of every citizen of the other, but now the accepted theory is that it is simply a contest between the governments. Private persons have no right to engage in hostilities without authority from their government. If they do they are liable, if captured by the enemy, to be treated as murderers, robbers, and pirates, rather than as prisoners of war.

**5. Combatants** are the members of the army and navy actually engaged in prosecuting the war. They may be killed by the enemy. The right to use force implies the right to take the life of those who make resistance. There is little limit to the kinds of weapons that may be used for this purpose, though the use of poison is prohibited. So also stratagems and deceit are allowable, but not so far as to constitute a breach of faith. When an enemy surrenders or is captured the right to kill is gone.

**6. Prisoners of War** are members of the opposing army or navy captured in war. They may be confined, and even fettered, if there is reason to apprehend that they will rise against their captors or make their escape, but must be treated with humanity. Prisoners of war are detained to prevent their returning to join the enemy, or to obtain from their government a just satisfaction as the price of their liberty, and may be

kept till the end of the war. Deserters and spies, when captured, may be shot.

**7. Non-Combatants** are citizens of the belligerent nations who take no part directly in carrying on the war. Not only are they not subject to capture or any personal molestation, but their property on land is exempt from capture, as long as they take no active part in the war. Marauding and ravaging by an invading army is therefore unlawful.\* This follows from the fact that the war is between the governments and not the subjects. But sometimes, when necessary for the support of an army, the inhabitants of an invaded country may be compelled to give up the property wanted at a fair value, or even in rare cases without compensation.

**8. Siege**—The treatment of a fortified town which has resisted and has been taken by the enemy is sometimes far below humanity. The town may also be bombarded, and thus the property and lives of non-combatants destroyed. It is to be hoped that future wars will mark an improvement in this particular.

**9. Civil War**—The foregoing rules of war apply not only to war between separate nations, but also to civil war between portions of the same nation, and to war with savages. In the last case it is not justice to treat the savage with inhumanity because he so treats us.

**10. At Sea** the property rights of non-combatants are essentially different from those upon land. The

---

\* Even the public property of a nation may not be captured or destroyed by the enemy, unless used for war purposes ; but forts and other military buildings and stores may be.

International law does not allow the interest of a hostile nation or its subjects in the public funds of its enemy to be confiscated.



object of maritime war is to destroy the commerce and navigation of the enemy, with a view of weakening his naval power. To this end, the capture or destruction of private property belonging to subjects of the hostile nation is necessary, and is justified by the law of nations. It may be that in time this rule will be modified, as there seems to be little justice in it.

**11. Privateers**—Besides national ships of war, there are armed vessels owned by private citizens, and called *privateers*. Their owners receive from the government a commission to go on the seas, and to capture any vessel of the enemy and its cargo, whether it is owned by the government or by private citizens, and whether it is armed or not. And to encourage privateering the government allows the owner and crew of a privateer to keep the property captured as their own (page 156). But privateering is little more than legalized piracy. Many nations have agreed to give it up.

**12. Prize** is property captured from an enemy at sea. In reality it belongs to the government, but is distributed as a reward among the captors. Whether captured by a national vessel or a privateer, it must first be brought into a port, where a court examines into the facts, and distributes it to those entitled.

**13. Truce**—This is an agreement to suspend hostilities temporarily. It may be for a few days, or for years, and for any purpose. A truce binds the contracting parties from the time it is made; but individuals of the nation are not responsible for its violation before they have had due notice of it. For all prizes taken after the time of its commencement the government is bound to make restitution. During the cessation of hostilities each party may, within his

own territories, continue his preparations for war without being charged with a breach of good faith.

**14. Treaty of Peace**—War is generally terminated, and peace secured, by *treaties of peace*. They leave the contracting parties no right to take up arms for the same cause. The parties to a treaty of peace are bound by it from the time it is made, and a government is bound to order and enforce the restitution of property captured subsequently to the conclusion of the treaty. But, as in the case of a truce, persons are not held responsible for any hostile acts committed before the treaty was known.

## CHAPTER LXVI

### RIGHTS AND DUTIES OF NEUTRALS

**1. Neutral Territory**—A neutral nation may insist that neither belligerent shall carry on operations against the enemy upon its territory. It may even forbid the transportation of troops across it. No captures can be made within its jurisdiction on land or sea.

**2. Neutrality**—A neutral nation is bound to observe a strict impartiality toward the parties at war. If it aids one party it may be treated as an enemy by the other. A loan of money to one of the belligerents, allowing the enlistment of troops or equipment of war-vessels within the neutral territory, or supplying it with other means of carrying on a war, if done with the view of aiding it in the war, would be a violation of neutrality.

**3. Aid by Subjects**—But a neutral nation is not required to keep its subjects within such strict lines of

neutrality as it is itself bound by. Private persons belonging to the neutral nation may lend money to either belligerent by buying its bonds, or may enlist in its armies, without involving their own nation. Such things are difficult to prevent. But it is a violation of neutrality for a neutral nation to allow its subjects to equip private vessels for privateers and accept letters of marque in the interest of one of the belligerents.

**4. Trade**—In general, the rule is that a neutral nation may continue its customary trade with either belligerent during the war, although such trade may furnish it the means of carrying on the war.\* Hence goods belonging to neutrals cannot be captured by either belligerent, even though they are in vessels belonging to subjects of one of the belligerent powers, though in such case the vessel may be captured; and the goods belonging to the subjects of one belligerent nation may not be captured by the other when found in neutral vessels. In other words, the only property which may be captured by a belligerent is property belonging to the other belligerent or its subjects, when found at sea in vessels belonging to the latter nation or its subjects, and outside the jurisdiction of any neutral state.

**5. Contraband of War**—But there are certain articles (called *contraband of war*) which neutrals have no right to supply to either belligerent, because they are directly useful in the prosecution of the war. What these articles are, it is impossible to say with precision, as some may in certain cases be lawfully carried, which

---

\* This is the rule. The cases of contraband goods (sec. 5) and blockade (sec. 7) are exceptions to it.

would be justly prohibited under other circumstances. The matter is very often regulated by treaty. Among the articles usually contraband are arms, cannon, ammunition, ships, horses, and sometimes materials for ship-building, naval stores, or even provisions. Contraband goods intended for one belligerent may be seized and confiscated by the other, no matter to whom they belong, when captured outside of neutral territory.

**6. Right of Search**—To prevent the conveyance of contraband goods the law of nations gives a belligerent nation the *right of search*; that is, the right, in time of war, to search neutral vessels to ascertain their character and what articles are on board. A neutral vessel refusing to be searched by a lawful cruiser would thereby render herself liable to condemnation as a prize. Private merchant vessels only are subject to search; the right does not extend to neutral public ships of war.

**7. Blockade**—One of the rights of a belligerent nation which a neutral is bound to regard is the right of blockade. A war blockade is the closing of an enemy's ports, to prevent all vessels from coming out or going in. The object of a blockade is to hinder supplies of arms, ammunition, and provisions from entering, with a view to compel a surrender by hunger and want, without an attack. A neutral vessel attempting to enter or depart may be seized and confiscated. Towns and fortresses also may be shut up by posting troops at the avenues.

**8. Paper Blockade**—A simple decree or order declaring a certain coast or country in a state of blockade does not constitute a blockade. A force must be

stationed there competent to maintain the blockade, and to make it dangerous to enter. Without such a force it is called a *paper blockade*. And it is necessary that the neutral should have due notice of the blockade, to subject his property to condemnation and forfeiture. According to modern usage, if a place is blockaded by sea only, trade with it by a neutral nation may be carried on by inland communication. And a neutral vessel, loaded before the blockade was established, has a right to leave the port with her cargo.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

### INTERNATIONAL LAW

#### *Peaceful Relations of Nations*

1. What is a nation ? Is New York State a nation ? Why ?
2. What is sovereignty ?
3. Define international law. How old is it ?
4. Name the chief causes of its growth.
5. How is it enforced ? Why ?
6. Are treaties a part of international law ?
7. Name its defects, and why they are such.
8. What is the right of recognition ? Do usurpers have it ?
9. State the jurisdiction of a nation.
10. How far is commercial intercourse between nations a right ?  
May a state prevent immigration ? May it prevent emigration ?
11. To what laws are foreigners travelling in a country subject ?  
State the exception to that rule, and its two reasons.
12. What is extradition ? Is it demandable as a right ?
13. State the rule of non-intervention. What is the balance of power ?
14. May provinces in revolt be aided by a foreign nation ? Why ?  
May a nation be aided in a war with its provinces ?
15. What are reprisals ? Embargo ? Their object ?

#### *Relations of Nations in War*

16. What are belligerents ? Neutrals ?
17. Why is war right ? What two general rights does it rest upon ?

18. What three things are necessary to a just war ?
19. Name some just causes of war.
20. Name the proper objects of war.
21. May a neutral nation prevent a war because it is unjust ?
22. Is there any obligation to arbitrate ?
23. To whom should notice of a state of war be given ? Why ?
24. What is the effect of war upon trade between the belligerents ?  
Between a belligerent and neutral ? Between neutrals ?
25. What is the effect of war upon foreigners within the hostile nation ?
26. May private individuals take part in the war ?
27. Who may be put to death in war ? What means may be used ?  
What deceit ?
28. May prisoners of war be put to death ? Deserters ? Spies ?
29. What are non-combatants ? May they be made prisoners ? Is  
their property subject to capture, on land ? At sea ?
30. What are privateers ? Prize ?
31. What is a truce ? A treaty of peace ? From what time do they  
bind individuals ?
32. What rights have nations at war over neutral territory ?
33. State the rule of neutrality.
34. What aid may neutral subjects render ?
35. State the rule as to neutral trade. Its two exceptions.
36. What property may be captured in war ?
37. Define contraband of war. What articles are contraband ?
38. What is the right of search ?
39. What is the right of blockade ? The penalty ? What is a paper  
blockade ?



## SALARIES

President of the United States . . . . .	\$50,000
Vice-President . . . . .	8,000
Cabinet Officers . . . . .	8,000
Chief Justice . . . . .	10,500
Associate Justices . . . . .	10,000
Judges of United States Circuit Court . . . . .	6,000
Lieutenant-General . . . . .	11,000
Major-General . . . . .	7,500
Brigadier-General . . . . .	5,500
Colonel, \$3,500 ; increasing with years to . . . . .	4,500
Admiral . . . . .	13,500
Rear Admirals, first nine, \$7,500 ; second nine . . . . .	5,500
Captains . . . . .	3,500
Ambassadors to Great Britain, France, Germany, Russia, and Mexico . . . . .	17,500
For salaries of other Diplomatic and Consular Officers, see "World" or "Tribune" almanacs.	
Members of Congress . . . . .	5,000
And mileage at 20 cents per mile going to and returning from the Capital.	
Speaker of the House . . . . .	8,000
President <i>pro tempore</i> of the Senate . . . . .	8,000

# INDEX

	PAGE
Accessory.....	265
Acknowledgment (of deed, etc.)....	250
Action (at law). <i>See</i> Suit.	
Administrator.....	81, 261
Admiralty.....	184
Agent. <i>See</i> Principal and Agent.	
Alderman.....	60
Alien.....	27, 147
Alliance.....	163, 278
Ambassador,	
appointment.....	173
exemptions.....	274
reception.....	175
Amendment (of Constitution),	
national.....	190, 193-201
State.....	25
Answer (in suit at law).....	84
Appeal (in suit at law).....	86
Appointment. <i>See</i> Governor, Pres- ident.	
Apprentice.....	211
Appropriation.....	162
Appurtenance.....	252-255
Arbitration (between nations)....	270, 277
Aristocracy.....	20
Arms, right to keep.....	195
Army.....	75, 156
Arraignment.....	89
Arrest.....	88
by whom made.....	265
Arson.....	263
Assault and battery.....	83, 264
Assessment (of taxes).....	64
Assessments.....	66
Assessors.....	57
Assent (in contract).....	214
Assignment (by debtor).....	232
Asylum.....	72
Attainder.....	161, 165
Attempt (at crime).....	264
Attorney.....	84
Attorney-General,	
national.....	178
State.....	50
Auditor. <i>See</i> Comptroller.	
Ball.....	88
excessive.....	197
Balance of Power.....	274
Bankruptcy.....	149
Belligerent.....	278
Bigamy.....	220, 264
Bill (legislative).....	43
Bill of Attainder. <i>See</i> Attainder,	

	PAGE
Bill of Credit.....	164
Bill of Exchange.....	233-239
Bill of Lading.....	245
Bill of Rights.....	193
Blockade.....	284
Body Politic.....	24
Bribery.....	264
Broker.....	234
Burglary.....	263
Cabinet.....	177
Canal.....	72
Capital.....	39
Capital Punishment.....	262
Captures.....	156, 281
Census,	
National.....	131
State.....	37
Challenge (at election).....	30
Charter.....	59
Chattel.....	232
Chattel Mortgage.....	232
Check.....	235
Child. <i>See</i> Parent and Child.	
Citizen,	
defined.....	147
privileges in different States....	188
City.....	59-62
Civil Law.....	16
Civil Service.....	175
Civil War, Rules of.....	280
Clearance (of vessels).....	146, 162
Codicil.....	260
Coinage,	
by Nation.....	150
by State.....	164
Colonies, Government in.....	94
Colony, defined.....	93
Combatant (in war).....	279
Commerce, regulation of.....	143
Commission Merchant.....	224
Committee, Legislative.....	42
Common Carrier.....	241
Common Council.....	60
Common Law.....	205
Complaint (in suit at law).....	84
Comptroller.....	49
Confederacy.....	100
Confederation, The.....	97-100
Confiscation.....	275
Congress, Continental.....	96
Congress (of U. S.),	
adjournment.....	107, 115
composition.....	130

	PAGE
Congress (of U. S.),	
Journal .....	107
meetings .....	138, 175
officers .....	137
quorum .....	107
rules .....	138
Congress, Members of,	
compensation .....	138
civil officer .....	108
election .....	107
privileges .....	138
Congress, Powers of ..	125, 127, 140-157, 187-191, 198
Consideration (of contract) .....	215
Constable .....	57
Constitution, English .....	26
Constitution, State .....	23-25
Constitution, U. S.,	
adoption .....	100
text of .....	104-129
Consul .....	173, 275
Contraband of war .....	283
Contract .....	212-218
Contract, law impairing obligation of .....	165
Convention, Constitutional .....	100
Convention of 1786 .....	99
Copyright .....	151
Coroner .....	54
Corporation,	
control by State .....	73
municipal .....	52, 62
Corruption of blood .....	186
Council, Executive .....	48
Counterfeiting .....	110, 264
County,	
importance .....	52
officers .....	53-56
origin .....	51
County Commissioners .....	53-56
Courts,	
National .....	180-182
jurisdiction .....	182-185
State .....	78-82
Covenant (in deed) .....	251
Creditors, rights of .....	231
Crimes,	
defined .....	261
punishable by Congress .....	152, 186
punishable by the State .....	261, 265
Crop, right of tenant to .....	257
Customs .....	141, 143
Days of Grace .....	238
Death, distribution of property upon ..	260
Debt,	
of Nation .....	200
of State .....	74
Declaration (in suit at law) .....	84
Declaration of Independence .....	96
Deed .....	249-251
Defendant .....	83
Delivery (of property) .....	229, 231
Democracy .....	21
Departments of Government .....	32-34
Departments (national) .....	176-180
Deposit Fund (of U. S.) .....	69

	PAGE
Deserter, punishment of .....	280
Despotism .....	20
Diplomacy .....	177
District Attorney .....	55
District of Columbia .....	153
Divorce .....	221
Dower .....	220, 248
Drunkards, contracts by .....	214
Duties,	
collection of .....	145
defined .....	141
laid by Nation .....	142, 143, 162
laid by State .....	165-166
Education .....	67-71
Election .....	29-32
Electors, qualifications of .....	26-28
Electors, Presidential .....	169-171
Embargo .....	275
Embezzlement .....	263
Emigration, right of .....	273
Eminent Domain .....	73
Entry (of vessels) .....	146, 162
Envoy .....	173
Estates .....	247-249
Eviction (from land) .....	256
Excise .....	67, 141
Execution (in suit at law) .....	86
Executor .....	81
Ex post facto law .....	161, 165
Fee-simple .....	247
Force (in contract) .....	216
Foreclosure .....	251
Forgery .....	239, 264
Franchise .....	27
Fraud (in contract) .....	216
Fraudulent transfer .....	232
Freedom of Speech .....	16, 194
Freedom of the Press .....	16, 194
Freeholder .....	131
Free Trade .....	145
Fugitive Criminals .....	188, 273
General Average .....	245
Gift .....	231
promise of .....	215
Government,	
necessity for .....	13
forms of .....	19-22
Governor .....	46-48
Guardian and Ward .....	15, 210
Habeas Corpus,	
described .....	88
suspension of .....	160
Heir .....	260
Highway,	
regulation of .....	57
rights of adjoining owners .....	252
Homicide .....	263
Hotel-keeper .....	241
Husband and Wife. <i>See</i> Marriage.	
Idiot, contract by .....	214
Immigration, right to prevent .....	272
Impeachment .....	79, 82, 138

	PAGE		PAGE
Impost,		National Guard.....	77
laid by Nation.....	141, 142	Naturalization.....	148
laid by State.....	67	Navigation, regulation of.....	144, 146
Indians, commerce with.....	147	Navy.....	156
Indictment.....	87	Negotiable Paper.....	230, 236
Indorsement.....	235, 238	Negro, rights of.....	28, 199-201
Infant.....	213	Neutrals,	
Inspectors of Election.....	29	who are.....	278
Insurance.....	242-244	rights and duties of.....	282-285
Insurrection.....	76, 190	New States.....	189
Interest.....	246-247	Non-combatants (in war),	
Intestacy.....	259	on land.....	280
Joint Owner.....	247	at sea.....	280
Judge,		Note, promissory.....	233-239
of national court.....	174	Notice to Quit.....	258
of State court.....	82		
Judgment.....	86	Oath of office.....	191
Jurisdiction, kinds of.....	79-82	Ordinance (of city).....	60
Jury,		Overseers of the Poor.....	57
grand jury.....	87		
trial by.....	84	Paper Blockade.....	284
protected.....	196, 197	Pardon.....	48, 172
Justice of the Peace.....	80	Parent and Child.....	15, 210, 211
		Partnership.....	225-228
Landlord and Tenant.....	255-258	Party Wall.....	254
Larceny.....	263	Patent.....	151, 178
Laws,		Patriarchal Government.....	19
defined.....	12	Pauper.....	28, 57
classified.....	16, 17, 205	Pension.....	178
making of		Perjury.....	264
in Nation.....	138, 139	Personal Property.....	63
in State.....	43-46	Petition (legislative).....	42
Lease.....	255-258	Petition, right of.....	195
Legal Tender.....	164	Piracy.....	152
Legislature, of Nation. <i>See</i> Congress.		Plaintiff (in suit at law).....	83
Legislature, of State,		Plca (in suit at law).....	84
how constituted.....	35-38	Pleading (in suit at law).....	84
meetings and organization.....	38-41	Plurality (in election).....	31
Letters of Marque.....	155, 164	Policy (of insurance).....	244
Libel.....	207	Poll.....	29, 63
Liberty.....	16	Polygamy. <i>See</i> Bigamy.	
Lien, kinds of.....	224, 229, 242, 245	Poor. <i>See</i> Pauper.	
Lieutenant-Governor.....	39, 48	Postmaster-General.....	178
Lunatic, contract by.....	214	Post-office.....	150
		Preamble (of U. S. Constitution)....	130
Majority (in election).....	31	Premium (in insurance).....	242
Manslaughter.....	262	President (of U. S.),	
Marque. <i>See</i> Letters of Marque.		election.....	169, 198
Marriage.....	218-221	powers and duties.....	172-176
Master and Servant.....	16, 211, 212	qualifications.....	171
Master (of vessel), authority of.....	246	salary.....	171
Mayor.....	60	term of office.....	168
Measures, standard of.....	150	Principal and Agent.....	222-225
Message,		Prison.....	74
of Governor.....	42	Prisoner of War.....	279
of President.....	175	Privateer.....	155, 281
Militia.....	75-77, 157	Prize.....	281
Minister. <i>See</i> Ambassador.		Probate (of will).....	80
Minor. <i>See</i> Infant.		Prohibitions,	
Monarchy.....	19	on the States.....	163, 166
Money, what is.....	150	on the United States.....	160-163
<i>See</i> Coinage.		Property, basis of right of.....	12
Mortgage.....	232, 249-251	Prosecuting Attorney.....	55
Murder.....	262	Protection.....	144-145
Nation, character of.....	93, 100, 268	Quarantine.....	147

	PAGE
Quorum,	
in National Legislature.....	107
in State Legislature.....	40
Railroad.....	73
Real Estate, defined.....	63, 247
Rebellion,	
defined.....	76
aid by foreign nation.....	273
Record (of deed, etc.).....	250
Records, of one State in another....	187
Recorder.....	54
Register.....	54
Registration (of voters).....	30
Registry (of vessels).....	146
Release, from debts.....	232
Religion, freedom of.....	194
Rent.....	255
Repairs (to rented property).....	257
Representatives, House of,	
National.....	130-134, 199
State.....	35-38
Reprieve.....	48, 172
Reprisal.....	155, 275
Republic.....	21, 23
Revenue Bills.....	139
Revolution, Causes of the.....	94-96
Rights,	
defined.....	14
how forfeited.....	14
classified.....	14-18
Road. <i>See</i> Highway.	
Robbery.....	263
Sale.....	228-231
Salvage.....	246
Schools, Common.....	67-71
Schools, Normal.....	71
School Funds.....	68
Search, right of (in war).....	284
Search-warrant.....	195
Seat of Government.....	39, 153
Secretary	
of Agriculture.....	179
of State.....	49, 177
of the Treasury.....	177
of the Interior.....	178
of War.....	178
of the Navy.....	178
Seizure.....	195
Selectmen (of town).....	56
Senate,	
National.....	130, 134-137
State.....	35-38
Sergeant-at-arms.....	40
Servant. <i>See</i> Master and Servant.	
Services.....	215-216, 240-242
Sheriff.....	54
Shipping, law of.....	244-246
Siege.....	280
Slander.....	207
Slaves, fugitive.....	188
Slavery, abolition of.....	199
Slave Trade.....	160
Soldiers, in private houses.....	195

	PAGE
Sovereignty.....	268
Speaker.....	39, 137
Spy, punishment of.....	280
State,	
admission of.....	189
suit against.....	198
not a nation.....	268
Statement (by civil officers).....	163
State's Attorney.....	55
Statute.....	206
Stock, State.....	74
Stratagem (in war).....	279
Stream, rights of adjoining owner....	252
Sub-lease.....	257
Subpœna.....	85
Suit, proceedings in,	
civil.....	83-87
criminal.....	87-90
Suffrage.....	26
Summons (in suit at law).....	83
Supervisors.....	56
Supervisors, Board of.....	53
Tariff.....	140
Tax,	
by Nation.....	140-143, 161
by State.....	63-67, 165
Tenant. <i>See</i> Landlord and Tenant.	
Tender. <i>See</i> Legal Tender.	
Territories,	
how governed.....	21, 190
represented in Congress.....	134
Test Oath.....	192
Theocracy.....	19
Title of Nobility.....	163, 165
Tonnage.....	166
Town Officers.....	56-58
Town Meeting.....	58
Township.....	56
Treason,	
against Nation.....	185, 186
against State.....	262
Treasurer,	
State.....	49
county.....	53
town.....	57
Treaty,	
defined.....	172
by whom made.....	172
State forbidden to make.....	163
as part of international law.....	271, 274
Treaty of Peace.....	282
Trial.....	82, 85, 89
<i>See also</i> Jury.	
Truce.....	281
Trust.....	248-249
Usury.....	246-247
Vacancy,	
in State Legislature.....	38
in Congress.....	106
Verdict.....	86
Vessels. <i>See</i> Entry, Clearance,	
Registry, Shipping.	

	PAGE		PAGE
Veto,		War,	
by Governor.....	45, 46	effect upon neutrals.....	282
by President .....	139	Ward. <i>See</i> Guardian and Ward.	
Voters. <i>See</i> Electors.		Warranty,	
Village.....	60-62	of title.....	230, 251
War,		of quality.....	230
power of Congress over.....	155-157	Way, Right of.....	253
by States.. ..	166	Weights, standard of.....	150
by private persons.....	279	Wife,	
rightfulness of.....	276	power to contract.....	214
just causes of.....	276	property rights.....	220
objects of.....	277	right of support.....	221
effect upon belligerents.....	278	<i>See</i> Marriage.	
		Will.....	258-261





# NEW YORK

PROPERTY OF THE  
CITY OF NEW YORK.

ITS STATE AND LOCAL GOVERNMENT  
WITH THE CONSTITUTION

BY

MYRON T. SCUDDER, M.A.



MAYNARD, MERRILL, & CO.

NEW YORK

Copyright, 1885,  
BY  
**CLARK & MAYNARD.**

---

Copyright, 1895, 1901,  
BY  
**MAYNARD, MERRILL, & CO.**

# NEW YORK,

## ITS STATE AND LOCAL GOVERNMENT;

WITH

## THE CONSTITUTION COMPLETE.

---

COPYRIGHT, 1885, BY CLARK & MAYNARD.  
COPYRIGHT, 1895, BY MAYNARD, MERRILL, & Co.  
COPYRIGHT, 1901, BY MAYNARD, MERRILL, & Co.

---

### TO TEACHERS.

#### HELPS TO THE STUDY OF CIVIL GOVERNMENT.

As the limits of this Supplement are of necessity restricted, many of the paragraphs are of a merely suggestive character, and it is left to the teacher to supplement them. The following aids are suggested:

1. A copy of the Legislative Manual, which may be secured for the school library through the courtesy of a State senator or of a member of assembly.
2. A copy of the World Almanac or the Tribune Almanac.
3. A copy of the election laws and regulations for voting, which are published on large sheets and sent to town clerks for use at the polls. The town clerk also has copies of the session laws, issued annually, also of the election laws, published in full in book form. These, doubtless, may be borrowed occasionally.
4. Samples of the ballots used at elections.

Instruct pupils regarding the *Myers' voting-machine*, which has been used in many towns in this State. Find information in the election laws.

Encourage research as to the location and management of great educational and charitable institutions, asylums, State prisons, penitentiaries, etc. Consult cyclopedias.

# SYNOPSIS OF CONTENTS.

---

CHAP.	I. <b>Introductory:</b> Its rank among the States; Government before the Revolution; The several constitutions; Geographic divisions.....	295
CHAP.	II. <b>Elections:</b> Qualifications of voters; Registration; Candidates, how chosen; Time of election—General, Municipal; Manner of voting; Voting-machines; Canvassing votes.....	297
CHAP.	III. <b>The Legislature:</b> Of whom composed; When it meets; Quorum; Passage of law; Veto.....	309
CHAP.	IV. <b>The Governor:</b> Importance of office; Veto power; Appointing power; Pardoning power; Commander-in-chief; Lieutenant-Governor.....	314
CHAP.	V. <b>Administrative State Officers:</b> Comptroller; Attorney-General; Secretary of State; Treasurer; State Engineer and Surveyor; Superintendent of Public Works; of State Prisons; of Banks; of Insurance; Railroad Commissioners; Court of Claims; Excise commission; Department of Health; Quarantine Commissioners; State Board of Charities; State Commission in Lunacy; State Commission of Prisons; Civil Service Commissioners; Forest, Fish, and Game Commission; Commissioner of Agriculture; Commissioners of the Land Office; State Tax Commissioners; The Department of Labor; United States Senators.....	318
CHAP.	VI. <b>Courts:</b> Justices of the Peace; County Judges; Supreme Court; Court of Appeals; Surrogates; Methods of procedure.....	331
CHAP.	VII. <b>County and Town:</b> Historical development; Supervisors; Sheriff; District-Attorney; County Clerk; Town-meeting.....	335
CHAP.	VIII. <b>Cities and Villages:</b> Nature; How formed; Classification; Mayor; Aldermen; Government.....	346
CHAP.	IX. <b>Other Public Institutions:</b> Poor-houses; Roads; Canals; Taxes; Public Debt; Militia; Jury duty .....	354
CHAP.	X. <b>Education:</b> Common Schools; Other Educational Institutions .....	358

# GOVERNMENT IN NEW YORK STATE

---

## CHAPTER I.—IMPORTANCE OF THE STATE: ITS COLONIAL GOVERNMENTS: ITS CONSTITUTIONS.

1. **The Empire State.**—A knowledge of the relative importance of a subject is necessary to a good understanding of it. New York is properly called “The Empire State,” for it is the greatest in population and in wealth, the two main elements determining political rank. With more electoral votes than any other State, it is the chief factor at each election in determining who is to be president of the United States.\* Of the other States, 41 have less than half the population or wealth of New York, while 23 have less than one-fifth its population, and 29 have less than one-fifth its wealth. Thus only three or four approach it in importance. Even as an independent nation it would rank well. Its population (7,268,012 by the census of 1900) is more than one-fourth that of England, one-sixth that of France, and exceeds that of Sweden, Belgium, or Portugal.

2. **As a Dutch Colony.**—New York has been a political unit from the time of its settlement, its govern-

---

\* Under the Apportionment Act of 1901 New York has 39 electoral votes.

ment beginning about 1624. For 40 years, as a Dutch colony, it was ruled by a director-general, sent out by a Dutch commercial company, who exercised nearly arbitrary powers over the people.

**3. As an English Colony.**—From 1664 until the Revolution, 112 years, it was an English colony, under what was called a provincial government. This consisted of a governor, appointed by the king of England; a council, also appointed by the king; and an assembly, elected by the people of the colony. The governor here also exercised most of the powers of government alone. The council and assembly constituted a legislature, but it did not meet regularly, and all its laws were subject to the approval of the governor and of the king.

**4. The Several Constitutions.**—During its existence as a State, since 1776, New York has had four constitutions. The first one was adopted in 1777, before independence was won. It was both framed and adopted by a convention elected for those purposes by the people. The second, adopted in 1822, the third, adopted in 1846, and the present one, adopted in 1894, were framed by conventions elected by the people, but were adopted by the people. The main features of government under all four have been the same. In 1866 the people called a convention to revise the constitution of 1846. But the work of this convention did not meet the approval of the people, and the revision, with the exception of two amendments, was rejected.

**5. Contents of Constitution.**—The present constitution is a document more than twice as long as the national constitution. The full text of the New York State constitution will be found at the end of the book on



page 379. Most of the features of government which will be described in the following chapters are established by the constitution; the rest by law passed by the legislature. Some think that the tendency of late in the United States has been to insert in State constitutions matters which might better be left to the legislatures. Constitutions should treat only of fundamental matters.

**6. Revision and Amendment.**—With regard to its own revision, the constitution provides that the question, “Shall there be a convention to revise the constitution and amend the same?” shall be voted on in the year 1916, and in every 20th year thereafter. It further provides that amendments may be adopted by being first passed by two successive legislatures and then ratified by the people. The legislature has not infrequently submitted amendments and new articles to the people, and these have nearly always been adopted.

**7. Geographic Divisions.**—The State is divided into 61 counties, and each county (except New York) into towns, or towns and cities. While greatly varying, the population of a county, exclusive of those containing large cities, is about 50,000, and of a town about 2500; while that of the cities varies from about 6000 to that of Greater New York with its population (1900) of 3,437,202,—nearly half the entire population of the State. There are also about 350 incorporated villages in the State, which are not independent divisions, but are parts of the towns in which they lie. The number of counties, towns, cities, and villages has increased with the population, and their boundaries have been and are being frequently changed.

**8. Political Subdivisions of the State.**—But the State is subdivided in various other ways in order to provide for and to facilitate (a) the election of local, State, and national officers, (b) the administration of government, (c) the administration of justice, and (d) the education of youth. Thus: †

To elect congressmen	the State is divided into 34 congressional districts.			
“ senators	“	“	50 senatorial	“
“ assemblymen	“	“	150 assembly	“
“ school commissioners	“	“	113 commissioner	“
“ school trustees,* etc.	“	“	(about) 10,700 school	“
“ Supreme Court justices	“	“	8 judicial	“

For the administration of justice (a) through State courts the State is divided into *4 judicial departments*, (b) through United States Courts into *4 United States judicial districts*.

Furthermore, to facilitate quickness and convenience in voting and the rapid counting of votes, there are upwards of 4600 election districts. These, after all, are the political units out of which all other districts or political subdivisions are formed.

## CHAPTER II.—ELECTIONS.

**1. Who may Vote.**—There are four personal qualifications. The voter must be (1) of the male sex, (2)

---

\* For the sake of convenience and brevity, union free school districts and city systems are roughly classed here.

† Maps, or lists of each of these, may be found in the Legislative Manual. It would be interesting as well as of practical value to have each student provide himself with four or five outline maps of the State, showing the counties, and then trace in and color the congressional, senatorial, assembly, and judicial districts after the manner of the maps in the Legislative Manual.

21 years of age, (3) unconvicted of heinous crime, and (4) a citizen of the United States for 90 days. Women have no vote (except at school meeting); nor have aliens, no matter how long they may have lived in the State. Neither the ownership of property nor the ability to read or write is necessary. About one-fifth of the population are qualified voters. Besides the four personal qualifications there are three others relating to residence, registration, and bribery. (*See also pp. 26-28.*)

**2. Residence.**—To have the right to vote one must have resided one year in the State, four months in the county, and 30 days in the election district, immediately preceding the election. Thus one loses his vote by moving from one district into another, though in the same city, within the 30 days. Residence means permanent home. Hence soldiers, sailors, travelers, students, etc.,\* do not lose their vote by being away most of the time; they may come home to vote. (*See also par. 5.*)

**3. Registration.**—Each town and city is divided into election districts containing from about 200 to 600 voters. There are over 4600 of these districts in the State. Registry lists of the voters are made in each district at least 10 days before each election, town and village elections excepted, and only those registered can vote. In cities and villages of 5000 or more inhabitants voters can be registered only on appearing in person and requesting it. New lists are made and voters registered anew for each election. Outside such

---

\* See § 3, art. 2, of State constitution.

cities and villages, since the places of registration are often far distant from many of the voters, the constitution forbids the requirement of personal attendance on the first day of registration. The list of the year before is taken as it was, and the names of new voters, so far as they can be ascertained, are added; but on the last day of registration voters are registered only on personal application. In cities and villages of 5000 or more inhabitants there are four registration days before each election, namely, the fourth Friday, the fourth Saturday, the third Friday, and the third Saturday. Elsewhere there are two registration days before a general election, namely, the fourth and third Saturdays; but for town and village elections registration is not required unless so provided by law.

**4. Bribery and Betting.**—Betting either before or during an election is a punishable offense. The giving or receiving of a bribe for a vote is an “infamous crime,” punishable by imprisonment for not less than three months nor more than one year. In addition to this penalty the briber becomes incapable of holding public office for five years, while the person bribed is excluded from the right of suffrage for five years.

**5. Right of Suffrage Single.**—The right to vote is entire. One having all the qualifications may vote for any elective officer, but if disqualified in any particular he loses the right to vote at all. Thus, by moving from one county to another within four months of the election, he loses the right to vote not merely for county officers, but even for State and national officers at that election.

**6. For Whom One may Vote.**—Nearly all officials, the

highest as well as the lowest, judges as well as members of the legislature and executive officers, are elected directly by the people.\* The only ones elected by the people of the whole State are the governor, lieutenant-governor, comptroller, attorney-general, secretary of State, treasurer, State engineer and surveyor, and judges of the Court of Appeals. The voters of the respective counties vote also for their own sheriff, district-attorney, and other county officers, and the voters of each town for their supervisor and other town officers. (*See pp. 335 to 346.*) Each voter votes for a senator, member of assembly, and for judges of the Supreme Court, the State being divided into special districts for each of them. The voters of a city or village have also their own city or village authorities to elect. A member of congress and presidential electors complete the list.† At some elections one has as many as 50 officers to vote for, but ordinarily from 10 to 20.

**7. How the Candidates are Chosen.**—In every town or ward each party has a committee whose duty it is, on the approach of an election, to call a party caucus or primary meeting. At their respective primaries the parties nominate their candidates for local office, and, if a general election is approaching, choose delegates for the county or assembly district conventions. These delegates are called together by their respective county

---

\* By *official* is here meant one having an office named by law, and duties prescribed by law, not the heads of departments, inspectors, secretaries, clerks, etc., under him. Those are appointed by him.

† School elections are not referred to in this chapter.



or assembly district committees to nominate party candidates for county and assembly district offices, and to appoint delegates to the Congressional, the Senate, or the State convention. The latter meet soon after to nominate their party candidates, and, when a presidential election is approaching, the State convention elects delegates to the national convention, where the president and vice-president are nominated. Of all these meetings and conventions, the primary or town caucus is in one sense the most important, as being the point at which the people can most directly exert an influence in behalf of good government, for here they give into the hands of a few of their number the power to nominate the men who are eventually to rule the commonwealth.

**8. Time of Election.**—There is one election each year throughout the State. It occurs on the Tuesday following the first Monday of November, and is called the *general election*. At it are elected officers named in paragraph six, to succeed those whose terms of office may be about to expire, except town, city, and village authorities. For their own authorities, cities of the third class and villages usually have a separate election in the spring; town officers are chosen at town-meeting. Article 12, sec. 3, of the constitution provides that in cities of the first and second classes all elections of city officers shall be held in November in an odd-numbered year, while State officers are to be elected in November in an even-numbered year. By thus separating municipal elections from State and national elections, it is possible for our cities to conduct their campaigns on purely local issues, their voters unbiased



by State or national politics; while on the other hand, the issues of State and national politics are less likely to be affected by local municipal disturbances.

**9. The Ballot.**—All elections except for such town officers as the law may direct to be otherwise chosen must be by ballot, or by some other prescribed method of secret voting. (*See Art. II, sec. 5.*) The voter must cast his ballot in person at the polling-place in the district where he resides. Only official ballots may be voted. In this State the Australian ballot\* is used. Each voter is provided with one of these ballots already folded, which, after entering a voting-booth,† he opens, marks in a way to indicate the candidates of his choice, folds again, and returns to the inspector to be deposited in a box prepared for the purpose.

**10. Manner of Voting.**—The polls are open from six A.M. to five P.M. When the voter appears before the inspectors, his name is found upon the registry, and upon his voting it is checked off. His right to vote may be challenged by an inspector or another voter. He may then be questioned upon his qualifications, and he must

---

\* The names of all candidates for all offices are printed on one large sheet, those of each party arranged in a separate column with some figure or emblem, as a flag, an eagle, a ship, printed at the head of the column. The voter votes for all the candidates of his party by making a cross mark, ×, in a large circle just above the column of names and directly under the party emblem. If he does not wish to vote a straight or party ticket throughout, he may make a × before the name of each candidate for whom he wishes to vote.

† Not less than one voting-booth for every 75 voters must be provided at every polling-place. No voter may occupy a booth more than five minutes when others are waiting to vote,

answer; but if he insists upon voting, and swears that he has all the qualifications, his vote must be received. Inspectors have no right to reject a vote unless the voter has failed to register, or refuses to answer or to take the oaths; but the voter voting illegally may be punished. The inspectors deposit the ballots as received in boxes provided for the purpose. All the proceedings are open to the public. (*See also page 30.*)

**11. Voting-machines.**—In some places the authorities have taken advantage of the permission to adopt some other method of voting than that of the printed ballot, and use what is known as a voting-machine. This is a large cabinet or closet within which the voter finds series of knobs or buttons representing parties and candidates. By pressing these his vote is at once recorded. By an ingenious contrivance the mechanism is locked as soon as he has pressed the button, so he cannot by any possibility register more than one vote for any office. The arrangement is such that he may vote a straight ticket by using the button appropriated thereto, or he may vote separately for the candidates, one for each office only being permitted by the locking arrangement referred to above. As he passes out of the cabinet by a side door the opening and shutting of the door throws the buttons into gear again and gets them ready for his successor. Voting by means of such a machine is far quicker than by ballot, and no votes are thrown away because of mistakes in marking the ballots. Every vote therefore counts, and when the polls are closed a glance at the index shows exactly how many votes each candidate has received.

**12. Counting the Vote at General Elections.\***—At five o'clock in the afternoon the voting ceases, and the ballots must be immediately counted by the inspectors of election, without adjournment. The room is still open to the public. As soon as the entire vote has been ascertained, the chairman of the inspectors announces the result publicly, after which written certificates of the number of votes cast in the town for the various county and State officers are made. One of these certificates is filed with the town clerk, another, together with the stubs and the unvoted ballots, is deposited with the county clerk, while a third is sent to the supervisor. The voted ballots are destroyed. The supervisor meets on the Tuesday following election with the other supervisors of the county, forming the county board of canvassers, which ascertains from the returns sent by the several towns who have been elected to county offices, and what the result of the county vote for State offices is. One certificate of this result is sent to the governor, another to the comptroller, and a third to the secretary of State. The latter lays all the returns he has received before the board of State canvassers,† which he must summon to Albany for this purpose on or before the 15th of December, and which determines the result of the vote of the State for State officers. But the result is usually known long before that, for the reason that an unofficial canvass of the election returns is made at once by other persons.

---

\* Slightly different rules prevail in New York and Brooklyn.

† The members of this board are the secretary of State, the attorney-general, the comptroller, the State treasurer, the State engineer and surveyor.

**13. Plurality Sufficient.**—The candidate having the greatest number of votes for any office is elected. A majority is not necessary.\*

**14. The Referendum, the Initiative, and Proportional Representation.** — The mode of balloting and of conducting elections, described above, has been devised, or perhaps we should say evolved, to meet the needs of a representative form of government. The main idea is that every man shall be represented in government by some officers whom he has had a voice in electing. As a matter of fact, however, it would be more nearly correct to say that only a part of our citizens are so represented, for where several parties nominate candidates, of course some will fail to elect their representatives. And even a successful party is not always truly represented, as must be evident from the prominent part that *bosses* have played in our politics. To be sure, we always have the complete machinery of representative government in full operation, and we are continually holding primaries and elections, yet the primaries are frequently neglected by the best citizens, and are generally little more than a mere ceremony for legalizing the cut-and-dried plans of a few men in each election district who are particularly interested in politics.

Without going into an elaborate discussion on this subject, † it must suffice here to say that the following suggestions for improving our scheme of representative

---

\* See page 31 for difference between majority and plurality.

† For an excellent treatise on these matters see "Proportional Representation," by Professor John R. Commons.

government have been made and have been successfully tested in many localities :

(1) *The Referendum*.—Sometimes the elected representatives of the people enact laws or ordinances that do not suit the people. When a city council, or a State or national legislature passes laws, of course the mayor, governor, or president, as the case may be, has the power of veto, but even then objectionable measures may be passed and become laws. In a truly representative government the *people* ought to have the veto power, also, and this is what is provided by the Referendum. Here as soon as a law or ordinance is passed it is published, but cannot go into force for a certain number of days. In the meantime, if the people do not like the measure they may demand by a petition, signed by say 10 per cent of the voters, that the matter be submitted to a vote of all the citizens. If at this special election the majority vote against the measure, the action of the legislative body that originally passed it is of course vetoed by the people.

(2) *The Initiative*.—This provides that any citizen or group of citizens may draft a proposed law or bill in the exact words in which he or they may wish it to be adopted. If a certain per cent of the citizens sign a petition asking to have this bill submitted to a vote of all the citizens a special election is called and in it the people express their will as to the proposed measure. If the majority favor it, it becomes a law just as much as though passed by a legislature. By the Initiative, then, citizens may get such legislation as they want, and by the Initiative and Referendum together the tre-



mendous power of the town-meeting is restored to the people.

(3) *Proportional Representation*.—It has been said above that only a part of our citizens are fairly represented in our present scheme of government. Where four or five parties are in the field it is often true that one of these parties elects all its candidates, and of course the other three or four parties have no representatives in office. In this case the majority of the people may actually be unrepresented. Thus in New York City, in the municipal elections of 1897, the successful candidate for mayor received less than half (44 per cent) of the votes that were cast.

Now the object of *Proportional Representation* is to have every party represented in proportion to the number of its constituents. It does away with majority and plurality elections, and gives each party the influence or weight it is entitled to have in enacting laws. The following is one of the methods devised for effecting this. Take for instance the election of aldermen in a city; the election law might be summarized as follows:

1. The Board of Aldermen shall be elected on one ticket for the entire city, in the same way as the mayor, and not by wards or districts.

2. Nominations shall be by petition submitted to the city clerk. A petition shall have at least  $x$  signatures.\* Each petition shall present the names of as many candidates as the petitioners choose, less than the total number to be elected. The same candidate shall not appear on more than one ticket. The petition shall also add the name of an *election judge*.

3. The city clerk shall publish the list of candidates.

4. Each voter has as many votes as there are candidates to be

---

\* Depending, of course, on the size of the city.



elected. He can *cumulate* his votes as he pleases. He can give all his votes to one candidate; or he can scatter his votes in any way he pleases.

5. All the election judges of the different parties shall meet with the city clerk as an *election board*. They shall count the votes and publish the results of the election as follows:

(1) They shall prepare a list of candidates and find the total number of votes cast for each candidate.

(2) They shall add together the votes of all the candidates on the same party ticket, in order to find the number of votes cast for each party.

(3) They shall add together the votes of all parties in order to find the total number of votes cast.

(4) They shall divide the total number of votes cast by the number of candidates to be elected. The result shall be known as the "*electoral quotient*."

(5) They shall then divide the vote of each party as ascertained above (See (2)) by the *electoral quotient*. The result shall indicate the number of candidates elected by each party. In case this division does not come out even, the remaining candidate goes to the party having the highest remainder.

(6) The successful candidates on each party ticket are the ones who have the highest number of votes on each ticket up to the full number of candidates to which the party is entitled.

To illustrate: Ten aldermen are to be elected, and three parties have tickets in the field. One casts 10,320 votes, another 5670, and the third 2120. These sum up to 18,110. Dividing this number by the number of aldermen to be elected, viz., 10, we get the *electoral quotient*, 1811. Aldermen are therefore elected as follows: 1st party, 6; 2d party, 3; 3d party, 1. Each party is therefore proportionately represented.

### CHAPTER III.—THE LEGISLATURE.

1. **Its composition.**—The legislature is composed of two houses, the *senate* and the *assembly*. The senate,

meant to be the more select body, is to consist hereafter of 50 (possibly more \*) members, elected for two years; the assembly, of 150 members, elected for one year.

**2. Districts.**—Senators and assemblymen are elected each for a separate district. The State is thus divided into 50 senate and 150 assembly districts. Once in 10 years, a new census being taken, the districts may be changed, to equalize them on the basis of population.

**3. Eligibility.**—With the exception noted in sec. 8, Art. III, of the Constitution, there is no provision by law as to eligibility for membership in the legislature. Each house is the sole judge of the qualifications of its own members.

**4. Salary.**—Senators and assemblymen alike receive a salary of \$1500, and 10 cents a mile for traveling to and from Albany once in each session.

**5. Annual Session.**—The legislature meets annually on the first Wednesday† in January, at the Capitol, in Albany. It may also be called to meet in extra session by the governor at any time, but then can only consider such subjects as the governor presents. The legislature itself determines the date of final adjournment, but the two houses must adjourn together. The ordinary length of the annual session is four or five months.

**6. Daily Session.**—When in session, it meets daily, Saturdays and Sundays excepted. The two houses meet in separate chambers, and all their proceedings are dis-

---

\* See Art. III, sec. 4.

† Changed from Tuesday to Wednesday, "so that the speakership contest need not occupy the Sunday before the beginning of the session." (Address of the majority delegates.)

tinct. Each adjourns from time to time without reference to the other, but may not adjourn for more than two days without the consent of the other. Sometimes night sessions are held. The proceedings are open to the public.

**7. Organization: Leaders.**—The lieutenant-governor presides over the senate. The assembly elects its own presiding officer, called the *speaker*. The senate usually has another prominent officer, namely, the president *pro tempore*, who is elected by the senators and of course represents the majority. He can be elected only when the lieutenant-governor is absent. The latter sometimes retires in order that this election may be held. But besides these officers each house has its *leaders*, a leader of the *majority* and a leader of the *minority*. In the senate the leader of the majority is either the president *pro tempore* or the chairman of the finance committee. The minority leader is the senator selected by the minority as their candidate for president *pro tempore*. In the assembly the leader of the majority is usually the chairman of the ways and means committee, while the leader of the minority is the assemblyman selected by the minority as their candidate for speaker.

In the assembly, the speaker is always the representative of the majority party, and therefore appoints the committees. In the senate the lieutenant-governor is not necessarily the representative of the majority party, but inasmuch as the president *pro tempore* always is, the latter usually appoints the senate committees.

**8. Membership in the Legislature.**—Those entitled to take part in the organization of the legislature are

those who hold certificates of election. But these certificates are not binding upon the house, for each house is the sole judge of the election of its members. A candidate who contends that he was really elected, though, through some mistake or fraud, another received the certificate, may present his case to the house, and it may admit him and oust his opponent. But sometimes final action is not taken until near the close of the session; in the meantime the one holding the certificate is the member, entitled to act as such.

**9. Quorum.**—In general, a majority of the members elected constitutes in each house a quorum to do business. To this there is one important exception; the final vote upon bills affecting the purses of the people, such as bills imposing taxes, creating State debt, or appropriating (in other words, spending) the money of the State, can only be taken when three-fifths are present. And as certain appropriation bills and all vetoed bills require a two-thirds vote (*see par. 10*), they of course require the presence of at least two-thirds. In all cases a majority of those present is sufficient for adjournment.

**10. Legislative Powers.**—There are, as in every State, two (and only two) authorities higher than the legislature: the United States constitution and the State constitution. No provision found in either of these documents can be violated or changed by the legislature, but within these limits the legislature may pass any law whatsoever.\* The two houses have like

---

\* Every word of the constitution is, in a sense, a restriction upon the power of the legislature. For some express restrictions, see page 389 ff.

powers of legislation. Any measure may originate in either.

**11. Passage of a Law.**—Every measure, to become law, must pass each house, word for word, the same year. If amended in one, the amendments must be concurred in by the other, or the measure fails. To pass, it must receive in each house the votes of a majority of all the members elected: neither a majority of those voting nor a majority of those present is sufficient. Bills appropriating public money for private purposes, and vetoed bills, require more; viz., the votes of two-thirds of the members elected. Each house establishes its own rules and methods of procedure. The general sketch on pages 38 to 46 is correct for New York State.

**12. Veto.**—After passage by both houses, the bill goes to the governor. He may approve or veto it. If he approves, he signs it, and it is a law: if he vetoes it, he must return it within 10 days to the house in which it originated, with his objections. The two houses may again consider it, and if it again passes them, and with a two-thirds majority, it becomes a law in spite of the veto. The governor has no power of amendment; he must approve or veto the whole bill. To this principle there is one exception: in bills containing several items of appropriations he may approve or veto separate items.

**13. When Governor Must Act.**—If the governor fails to return the bill within the 10 days, it becomes a law without his signature—unless the legislature ends the session within the 10 days. He has 30 days after final

adjournment to consider all bills not acted upon by him, and such as he fails to approve do not become laws.

**14. U. S. Senators: Appointments: Impeachment.**—Besides the enacting of laws there are three duties performed by the legislature. (1) It elects United States senators.\* This is done in joint session, i.e., the senate and assembly meeting as one body. (2) Many officers, it is provided, shall be appointed by the governor “by and with the advice of the senate.” This means that the senate has power to confirm or reject the appointment. The assembly has nothing to do with appointments. (3) The assembly may impeach high officials, such as the governor, judges, etc., for misconduct in office: the senate and Court of Appeals, sitting together, try the accusation, and may remove the person from office.

#### CHAPTER IV.—THE GOVERNOR.

**1. Dignity of Office.**—The governor was intended to be, and is, the highest officer of the State. In importance of powers and duties no other officer can compare with him. To understand this, one need only consider two of his powers; viz., the veto power (*par.* 4), and the possible military power (*par.* 8). Aside from any factitious importance lent by tradition and caste, the governor of the State has more real power over the interests of the people than some monarchs. (*Read Art. IV., N. Y. Const.*)

**2. Term: Eligibility: Salary.**—He is elected by the

---

\* Also regents of the university and the superintendent of public instruction.



people of the whole State for a term of two \* years. There is no provision against successive re-elections. There are but three conditions of eligibility. (1) He must be a citizen of the United States, (2) he must be at least 30 years of age, (3) he must have resided in the State the last five years. His salary is \$10,000 a year, and a residence is furnished him.

**3. Nature of Office.**—The powers and duties of the governor are numerous and of great variety, but chiefly of an executive nature. He is, in a sense, the hand of the State, by which it acts. The most important of his functions are named in the constitution, but the legislature is continually adding various others, and the duty of assuming those is laid upon him by that clause of the constitution which says, “he shall expedite all measures resolved upon by the legislature.” It will be impossible to do more than describe the highest of his powers and duties.

**4. The Veto Power** is the most important. The method of its use has been explained (*page 309*). Although it cannot be said that he has an equal share in legislation with the two houses,—for the two reasons that he cannot originate legislation, and that in spite of his veto a bill may become law,—yet there are two reasons why this power is greater than it would at first seem. One is, that a veto has so strong a moral influence that very few bills are ever passed over it; the other is, that the legislature every year adjourns, leaving many (sometimes more than half) of the bills it has passed unacted upon by him, and as to those he has an absolute veto.

---

\* See page 302, par. 8.

**5. Appointments.**—There are several thousand officers, including notaries public, trustees of State institutions, officers of the militia, etc., whom the governor has power to appoint. Many of the offices so filled are of small moment. The constitution names some officers whom the governor shall appoint, but as to most the power is given by laws passed by the legislature. Nearly all the governor's appointments are subject to confirmation by the senate.

**6. Removals.**—Over many officers the governor has the power of removal for misconduct in office—even some elected by the people.\*

**7. Pardons.**—The governor may grant reprieves, commutations, or pardons,† to convicts, except in cases of treason or impeachment. A pardon may be conditional or unconditional. It is somewhat common, where intoxication has much to do with the crime for which the pardon is granted, to provide that it shall be forfeited by future intoxication.

**8. Commander-in-Chief.**—The governor is commander-in-chief of the naval and military forces of the State. As the State has no naval and military force in use, and as it is probable that in case of war with other countries

---

\* But he has no such power unless the law gives it to him. The right to appoint does not imply the right to remove. Nor is he superior to any other officer of government in the sense of having the right to supervise or direct him. Thus he has no more right to interfere with (for example) the state treasurer or a county clerk, in the discharge of his duty, than they have to interfere with him. He is not their master, but he and they alike are, each in his own sphere of duty, independent, having but one master—the people.

† For definitions, see page 48.

the national government would assume its direction, it would seem as if this position were an empty one. Insurrection within the State is probably the only case in which the Governor would be called upon for active duties as commander-in-chief of the militia; but if we imagine a great insurrection, and an army of 50,000 men to put it down,—both possible,—we can see that his powers and duties in this direction might be all-important. This provision originated before the national constitution was adopted, and when war between the States was not so improbable as at present.

**9. Other Powers and Duties.**—The governor may convene the legislature, or the senate alone, in extra session, whenever he deems the occasion demands. He must send to each legislature a message, stating the condition of the State, and recommending such legislation as he thinks best. This is done at the beginning of each annual session. Another and comprehensive duty laid upon him by the constitution is to “take care that the laws are faithfully executed.” If, for instance, the orderly execution of the law were resisted by insurrection beyond the power of the sheriff or police to quell, it would be his duty to call out the militia for that purpose. Besides all the powers and duties that have been named in this chapter, he has many of a special nature. It is quite common, when anything of an executive nature is to be done, in which the whole State is interested, for the legislature to lay the chief duty upon the governor.

## THE LIEUTENANT-GOVERNOR.

**10. Term: Eligibility: Salary.**—The lieutenant-governor is, like the governor, elected by the people of the whole State, for a term of two years. He must have the same qualifications for eligibility as the governor. His salary is \$5000 a year.

**11. Duties.**—This office is one of comparatively small dignity or moment. The lieutenant-governor has but two duties: (1) to preside in the senate, where he has not even a vote, unless the senate is equally divided; and (2) to serve on certain boards and commissions. Thus by virtue of his office he is a commissioner of the canal fund, a member of the canal board, a trustee of Union College, of Cornell University, a regent of the University, and a trustee of the new Capitol and of several other public buildings of the State. But in possibility the office is of the greatest importance. If the governor dies, resigns, is removed from office, or becomes unable to perform its duties, the lieutenant-governor becomes governor, with all the powers and duties of that office, until the end of the term.

## CHAPTER V.—ADMINISTRATIVE STATE OFFICERS.

**1. Business Agents.**—The last two chapters have dealt with officials who govern the people; for the making of laws, pardoning of criminals, and other functions of the governor or legislature are acts of authority, acts of governing. But the State, like an individual, has also its business affairs—its money to collect and spend, its

property to buy, sell, and manage, etc.; and it is of the agents by whom it does this, its business managers, that this chapter treats. Most of these officials have their offices at Albany, and report annually to the legislature. Some are elected by the people, many are appointed by the governor with consent of the senate, and a few are elected by joint ballot of the legislature. Like the lieutenant-governor, they serve on various boards and commissions. For a more complete account of their duties and powers than the limits of this book permit consult the Legislative Manual prepared annually by the secretary of State.

#### OFFICERS ELECTED BY THE PEOPLE FOR TWO YEARS.

**2. The Comptroller** manages the funds of the State. He receives its taxes, negotiates its loans, directs its expenditures. He has no power to say what tax shall be laid, what money shall be borrowed, or for what purpose expenditures shall be made; the law does that. But when the law has been passed, he executes it. He audits all claims upon the State; no debt of the State can be paid without his warrant. His salary is \$6000.

**3. The Attorney-General** is the legal advocate and adviser of the State. He carries on all lawsuits in which property interests of the State are involved, and also gives advice to the other officers of government when called upon. With criminal proceedings he has in general nothing to do; these are attended to by the district-attorneys of the counties. His salary is \$5000.

**4. The Secretary of State** is the custodian of state documents. The original copies of the laws, deeds of

land belonging to the State, the great seal, certain election returns, and various kinds of records are kept in his office. He also reports the statistics of pauperism and crime in this State to the legislature, and superintends the publication and distribution of the session laws. At the January session of the legislature he administers the oath of office to each member of the assembly. His salary is \$5000. He is thus only an important kind of clerk.\* The national secretaryship of State is an office of far different and higher character, for attached to it are all the diplomatic relations of the nation. The State has no foreign relations.

**5. The Treasurer** is the custodian of the State's money. He receives from the comptroller whatever is collected, and pays out only that for which he receives the comptroller's warrant. His salary is \$5000.

**6. The State Engineer and Surveyor** must be a practical engineer. His duties are the ordinary duties of a civil engineer (such as surveying, map-making, etc.), in connection with the canals and lands owned by the State. His salary is \$5000.

SOME OF THE OFFICERS APPOINTED BY THE GOVERNOR FOR  
VARIOUS TERMS AND CONFIRMED BY THE SENATE.

**7. The Superintendent of Public Works** holds his office until the end of the term of the governor by whom he is nominated and until his successor is appointed and qualified. He has general charge of the management and repair of the State canals, and makes the rules and

---

\* Popularly this office is considered higher than any of the others named in this chapter, but the author does not hold this opinion.



regulations for the navigation and use of these canals. He is also charged with the expenditure of moneys specially appropriated by the legislature for public improvements. Salary, \$6000.

**8. The Superintendent of State Prisons** has the general management of the three State prisons, at Sing Sing, Auburn, and Dannemora during a term of office of five years. He appoints the agents and wardens, physicians and chaplains of these prisons.\* Salary, \$6000.

**9. The Superintendent of Banks** has supervision over and receives quarterly reports from all the banks in the State, and semi-annual reports from savings banks, trust, loan, mortgage and guaranty companies, building loan associations, and other moneyed corporations. He reports concerning them to the legislature. His term of office is three years. Salary, \$7000.

**10. The Superintendent of Insurance** investigates and reports the condition of all the fire and life insurance companies of the State. He holds office for a term of three years. Salary, \$7000.

#### BOARDS AND COMMISSIONS.

**11. The Board of Railroad Commissioners**, three in number, meet at least once a month, in Albany. They are charged with the investigation of all railroads, with reference to their condition and to the manner in which they are operated. They have power to examine the

---

\*In State prisons are confined those convicted of the graver crimes, such as murder, burglary, robbery, etc.; those convicted of lesser crimes are confined in county jails.

books and affairs of all railroad companies, and must investigate the causes of accidents that result in loss of life or injury to persons. One of their duties is to supervise the work of gradually abolishing the grade crossings that menace thousands of lives along the route of every railway. Unsatisfactory management, violation of charters, and criminal negligence are reported to the attorney-general. The board also reports annually to the legislature. Salary, \$8000 each.

**12. The Court of Claims\*** consists of three judges appointed for six years by the governor. The court holds at least four sessions each year to hear and determine private claims against the State and decide what award is justly due from the State on such claims. It may also hear and determine claims that the State may have against a claimant. Salary of each judge, \$5000, and \$500 for expenses.

**13. State Commissioner of Excise.** — The legislature of 1896 abolished all local boards of excise and created a State commissioner of excise to control the liquor traffic under the provisions of the famous liquor tax law. The *commissioner* is appointed for a term of five years at a salary of \$5000 a year and \$1800 for expenses. He appoints a *deputy commissioner* at a salary of \$4000 with \$1500 for expenses, five *special deputies* for Greater New York and one for Erie county, at salaries varying from \$2500 to \$4000, and 60 *special agents* at salaries of \$1200 and necessary expenses, besides various other officers and clerks. In other counties than those for which special deputies are

---

\* Until March, 1897, known as the Board of Claims.

appointed the *county treasurers* work under the direction of the commissioner in issuing liquor tax certificates and collecting pay therefor.

One-third of the money collected, including fines, penalties, etc., goes to the State, and the other two-thirds to the city or town from which it is collected.

The *special agents* assist in the collection of excise taxes and penalties, and gather evidence of the violation of the liquor tax law.

**14. State Department of Health.** —An act that became a law in 1901 abolished the State board of health and created in its stead a *State department of health* and the office of *commissioner of health*. The law provides that this commissioner shall be appointed by the governor for four years at a salary of \$3500 per year and expenses. The commissioner of health must be an experienced physician. He has great responsibilities resting on him, for the law reads: "The commissioner of health shall take cognizance of the interests of health and life of the people of the State, and of all matters pertaining thereto. He shall make inquiries in respect to the cause of disease, especially epidemics, and investigate the source of mortality, and the effect of localities, employments, and other conditions upon the public health. . . . He shall have all necessary powers to make examinations into nuisances or questions affecting the security of life and health in any locality." Thus, for instance, the law says that if the commissioner is satisfied that "disease or sickness is caused by waters of the canal escaping or discharged therefrom, he shall so report to the superintendent of public works, without unnecessary delay, who shall

forthwith abate the cause of such disease or sickness." The commissioner's jurisdiction extends still further, for "If any municipal corporation, authorized by law to establish a local board of health, shall omit to do so, the commissioner of health may, in such municipality, exercise the powers of a local board of health and appoint a health officer thereof and fix his duties and compensation." Connected with the department is a *bureau of vital statistics* for the registration of births, marriages, deaths, and prevalent diseases; also a *bureau of bacteriology* for the manufacture of diphtheria antitoxine, and for pursuing investigations as to the nature of tuberculosis, typhoid fever, and kindred diseases, and the possibility of curing these by means of antitoxines.

**15. Three Quarantine Commissioners** (salary \$2500 each), together with the health officer of the port of New York (salary \$12,500), have duties relating to the examination of vessels, to prevent the introduction of disease from other countries. Quarantine station is at the entrance to New York harbor, and there all vessels coming from suspected ports are detained until inspected. If contagious disease, like yellow fever, cholera, typhus fever, or small-pox is discovered on a vessel, those suffering from the disease are removed to the quarantine hospital at Swinburne Island, while the vessel itself is thoroughly fumigated and disinfected before it is allowed to proceed up the harbor. By such precautions at quarantine great misery has been spared the country, and the sacrifice of thousands of lives averted.

**16. State Board of Charities.**—This is one of the

most important of the State boards. Created in 1867, it became a constitutional body, that is, was mentioned in the State constitution and its duties defined, in 1895. There are 12 commissioners appointed by the governor for eight years, each commissioner receiving as compensation 10 dollars for each day's attendance at meetings of the board or any of its committees, though not to exceed \$500 in any one year plus necessary expenses incurred in connection with his duties. Article VII, sections 11-14, of the constitution, when carefully read (see page 412) gives some idea of the responsibilities of this board, but it is only when one pores over the voluminous reports of the board, sees how many laws, by-laws, and rules have been laid down for it by the legislature, and how many institutions are under its supervision, that any adequate notion can be formed of the great work accomplished by our State through this board for tens of thousands of our unfortunate and helpless citizens. In the index of one of these reports would be found the names of upwards of 8000 institutions, boards, homes, poorhouses, hospitals, dispensaries, missions, reformatories, aid societies, bureaus, day nurseries, schools and other charitable organizations that are the outgrowth of the nobler impulses of modern civilization. The law places all these under the supervision of the State board of charities. Money is appropriated by the legislature to aid in their support, and it is a duty of the board to see that this money is wisely expended. Other duties are to secure a just, humane, and economic administration of these institutions, investigate the conduct and efficiency of the officers in charge, aid in securing the best possible sani-



tary conditions, advise measures for the protection and preservation of the health of inmates, maintain industrial education and moral training in institutions having the care of children, and investigate the condition of the poor and distressed who are seeking public aid.

**17. The State Commission in Lunacy** consists of three commissioners appointed for six years by the governor. Each receives a salary of \$5000 and an allowance of \$1200 for traveling expenses and incidentals. One must be a reputable physician, one a reputable lawyer, and the third a reputable citizen. This commission is charged with the duty of examining the condition of all institutions for the insane, public or private, as to grounds and buildings, methods of management, and general efficiency and usefulness.

**18. The State Commission of Prisons** is entrusted with the duty of visiting and inspecting "all institutions used for the detention of sane adults charged with or convicted of crime." It consists of three members appointed by the governor for four years. One of these is designated by the governor as president of the commission, and receives a salary of \$2500 per year. The other two commissioners serve without compensation, though of course all necessary expenses are paid. The commission annually elect a secretary, whose salary is \$3000.

**19. The Civil Service Commission** was established by the laws of 1883. Three commissioners, at a salary of \$2000 each, appoint a chief examiner at a salary of \$3600, a secretary at a salary of \$2000, and such other assistants as are necessary. The civil service of this State includes all persons in the employ of the govern-



ment, except those in the army and navy. Under the old system, where the spoils of office went to the victorious political party, an army of employés, clerks, and officials in the civil service would be turned out of their positions at every political change, their places not infrequently being taken by inexperienced persons, often to the detriment of the public service. A reform was brought about by a law basing the appointment, promotion, and permanency of employment, in many of these positions, on merit instead of on personal or political considerations. Under this law positions are graded into classes. To ascertain who are best fitted to fill them, competitive examinations open to all, and adapted to the kind and grade of service to be required, are held as often as may be necessary under the supervision of the commissioners, but under the immediate direction of the chief examiner; lists are prepared of those who pass, and if there is a vacancy in any class it is filled by a candidate who stands among the three highest in the examination for that class. (*See also Const., art. V., sec. 9.*)

**20. The Forest, Fish, and Game Commission** consists of three commissioners appointed for four years. One of these is designated by the governor as president, and receives a salary of \$5000 and necessary expenses. The two associate commissioners receive no salary but are paid necessary expenses.

These commissioners have charge of the eight fish-hatcheries of the State, from which our lakes and streams are restocked by artificially hatched fish, and they devise means for protecting and increasing the fish supply. Under their direction fish-ways or fish-

ladders are constructed in many places to enable fish to ascend dams and cataracts into the waters beyond. Then laws are passed regulating the times and modes of fishing, and forbidding the use of nets at certain seasons, in order that there may be no undue destruction of fish while spawning. Oyster-beds are also scientifically cared for, and the hunting and shooting of wild game regulated. Thus, under intelligent direction, some of our most important sources of food-supply are developed with extremely satisfactory results.

These commissioners also have supervision over the forest lands of the State,\* on the care and preservation of which depends the water supply of our principal rivers and canals, and the value of these regions as a health resort. The constitution says that these preserves must forever be kept as wild forest lands. The commissioners make rules for preserving these wild tracts, and to carry out these regulations and to enforce the fish and game laws of the State they appoint foresters, fish and game protectors. They also appoint a superintendent of forests, a superintendent of hatcheries, a State fish culturist, foremen of hatcheries, and as many special agents as they may need.

**21. The Commissioner of Agriculture** represents a branch of State service the importance of which is becoming more and more recognized. Appointed for three years at an annual salary of \$4000 and \$500 for expenses, he in turn may appoint a director of farmers' institutes, five expert butter and cheese makers, and such assistant commissioners, clerks, chemists, agricul-

---

\* Also of many islands in Lake George, owned by the State.

tural experts, and other officers as are indispensable. Under his direction butter and cheese factories are inspected, the care and feeding of cows improved, and all other matters pertaining to the dairy interests of the State are investigated. His assistants attend agricultural fairs, meetings, and societies to impart the best methods of making butter and cheese. The commissioner must take measures to suppress infectious and contagious diseases among domestic animals. He is empowered to quarantine farms where such diseases exist and to prescribe treatment for the afflicted animals through his veterinary surgeons. He may even have sick animals killed, when their destruction is necessary to suppress disease or to prevent disease from endangering the health of people, as in the case of tuberculous cows. The board of claims decides what compensation the owners of animals thus destroyed are entitled to. In a similar way the commissioner's jurisdiction extends over diseased bees, diseased fruit-trees, and diseased agricultural products. The State weather bureau, of which the central station and office is at Cornell University, is also under his management, and the agricultural experimental station at Geneva, N. Y., sends a full and detailed report of its operations to him annually.

**22. The Commissioners of the Land Office** are as follows: The lieutenant-governor, the speaker of the assembly, the secretary of State, the comptroller, the State treasurer, the attorney-general, and the State engineer and surveyor. They have the general care and superintendence of all State lands, the superintendence of which is not vested in some other officer or board.

**23. The State Tax Commissioners**, appointed by the governor for three years, officially visit every county in the State, at least once in two years, to inquire into methods of assessment and taxation, to advise and instruct local assessors, and to hear and determine appeals from local equalizations. These commissioners and the commissioners of the land office constitute the State board of equalization, the duty of which is to determine the amount of State tax that each county is to pay. Salary of each commissioner is \$2500 and actual expenses.

**24. The Department of Labor** was created by the laws of 1901. The head of this department is known as the commissioner of labor, appointed by the governor for four years at a salary of \$3500. He in turn appoints two deputy commissioners of labor. The department is divided into three bureaus.

1. *The Bureau of Factory Inspection*.—This is under the special charge of the first deputy commissioner of labor, who has under him a force of 50 inspectors, 10 of whom may be women, whose duty it is to inspect as often as possible the factories, workshops, bakeries, mines, and other establishments of this State where manufacturing is carried on, and enforce the merciful laws that the legislature has passed regulating the conditions of the men, women and children who work in these establishments.

2. *The Bureau of Labor Statistics*, under the special charge of the second deputy commissioner of labor. This bureau collects statistics concerning all departments of labor in this State, and reports on the commercial, industrial, social, and sanitary condition of

workingmen, and on the productive industries of the State.

3. *The Bureau of Mediation and Arbitration* is under the special charge of the commissioner of labor himself. It is the duty of this bureau to endeavor by mediation to bring about a friendly settlement of strikes and lock-outs, a most important duty in these days when such occurrences are not infrequent.

OFFICERS APPOINTED BY JOINT BALLOT OF THE LEGISLATURE.

**25. United States Senators**, who are elected for six years. They must be at least 30 years of age, and have been citizens of the United States for at least nine years. The salary is \$5000 a year, and a mileage of 20 cents for traveling expenses is allowed.

**26. Regents of the University of the State of New York, and the Superintendent of Public Instruction.** Their functions are explained in Chapter X.

CHAPTER VI.—COURTS.

**1. Judges: Election; Term; Salary.**—All judges are elected; justices of the peace by towns, county judges by counties, Supreme Court justices by special districts, of which there are eight, and judges of the Court of Appeals by the whole State. Compared with executive offices, the terms are long, varying from four years in



the lowest courts, to 14 in the highest. Justices of the peace are paid by fees; all the rest have salaries, varying from \$1000 to \$17,500. (*See page 376.*)

**2. The Judicial System** of the State consists of four grades of judges; viz., commencing with the lowest: (1) four Justices of the Peace in each town, (2) a County Judge in each county,\* (3) 76 Supreme Court judges,† and (4) seven judges of the Court of Appeals. All hear both civil and criminal cases. There are also additional judges elected in cities.

**3. Justices of the Peace** have jurisdiction‡ of civil cases in which the amount involved does not exceed \$200, and of some petty criminal offenses. They also issue warrants of arrest, and examine persons charged with crime, and commit them to jail to await the action of the grand jury (*page 87*). A case in a justice's court may be tried by jury if the contesting parties so desire; frequently, however, there is no jury. A case originating in a justice's court may be appealed to the county courts.

**4. The County Judge** alone constitutes the county court, in each county, and has jurisdiction of civil cases where the amount involved does not exceed \$2000. The county court is also the main (though not the highest) criminal court § of the county, having juris-

---

\* *Two* in Kings Co. since 1895.

† *See Const., Art. VI, secs. 1, 4, and 5.*

‡ For definitions see foot-notes on *page 79*.

§ Formerly the county judge and two justices of the peace made up in each county what was called the Court of Sessions, the main criminal court of the county. Since 1895, however, the Court of Sessions has been abolished in every county but New York, and its jurisdiction vested in the County Court.



diction of all criminal cases except the gravest. A case may be appealed from a county court to the Supreme Court.

**5. The Supreme Court** is one court, but the judges hold different branches of it, separately, scattered throughout the State, so that the effect is the same as if there were so many different courts. It has jurisdiction of all civil cases.

Under the present State constitution radical changes have been made in the organization of the Supreme Court. For some years the overcrowding of the calendars of the Court of Appeals, and of the trial calendars in some of the cities, had seriously retarded the administration of justice. To obviate these evils the number of Supreme Court justices was increased to 76, and their powers were greatly enlarged. The State is divided into four judicial departments.\* In each department a tribunal known as the Appellate Division of the Supreme Court, composed of seven justices in the first department and five in each of the others, constitutes a court of last resort on many questions that for-

---

\* Formerly the Supreme Court judges held criminal courts in each county, called courts of Oyer and Terminer, in which only the gravest criminal cases were tried, such as cases for murder or perjury. Branches of the Supreme Court, five in number, and branches of the City Courts of New York, Brooklyn, and Buffalo, were known as General Terms. These consisted of three justices each, who sat together, and heard appeals only.

But under the revised constitution several of these features are changed. Thus Circuit Courts and courts of Oyer and Terminer are abolished; so are the General Terms of the Supreme Court, and of the City Courts of New York, Brooklyn, and Buffalo. In place of these General Terms, nine in number, we now have the appellate divisions of the Supreme Court mentioned in the text.

merly would have come on appeal before the Court of Appeals. The remaining fifty-four Supreme Court justices hold special and trial terms under the direction of the justices of the Appellate Division at fixed times and places throughout the State.

**6. The Court of Appeals**, the highest permanent court of the State, consists of seven judges acting as a single court. It sits at Albany. It tries no cases, but merely hears appeals. The constitution limits its functions thus: "The jurisdiction of the Court of Appeals, except where the judgment is of death, shall be limited to the review of questions of law." The second division of the Court of Appeals is rendered unnecessary by the establishing of an Appellate Division of the Supreme Court.

**7. Surrogate.**—The County Judge is also surrogate of his county in about half of the counties of the State. In the remainder a separate officer is elected as surrogate of the county. The Surrogate's Court has jurisdiction only of matters relating to the proof of wills and distribution of the personal property of deceased persons.

**8. Sessions.** —All the courts have sessions for trials at stated intervals. Justices hold court as often as necessary. The other courts, except the Court of Appeals, have from two to six sessions a year, each lasting a week or two. The Court of Appeals is almost continuously in session.

**9. The Court for the Trial of Impeachments** consists of the lieutenant-governor, the senators, and the judges of the Court of Appeals. In a sense this is the highest court of all, but it is not a permanent court, inasmuch

as it is organized only to try some officer who is impeached by the assembly. By the good fortune of the State, this court has sat but a few times in its history.

**10. Methods of Procedure.**—The description of this subject given in Chap. XX. (82-90) applies to New York State in all respects.

*For jury duty see page 357, par. 10.*

## CHAPTER VII.—COUNTY AND TOWN; ORGANIZATION AND OFFICERS.

**1. Local Government.**—In New York, as throughout the Union, the administration of government is chiefly in the hands of local officers. Thus, highways are regulated, paupers cared for, schools supported and managed,\* the public peace guarded, etc., not by the State, but by each county, city, or town for itself. Of the money raised by taxation not more than one-tenth is applied to state purposes.

**2. Beginnings of Government.** — At this point we may enquire briefly concerning the origin and development of the political institutions with which this chapter is concerned, and which are the very foundations of representative government.

As we read history, we often come across the terms: *clan, tribe, tun, mark, manor, parish, borough and county*. Back of each of these is an interesting history, if one cares to stop and look it up, for they are of very ancient origin. As political divisions they were not scientifically planned by statesmen and then arbitrarily

---

\* About 75% of the cost of the maintenance of public schools is paid by local taxation.

made to order, but they are the results of evolutionary processes in social development, beginning crudely enough and reaching their final form only after being adjusted and readjusted in the light of experience.

**3. Towns.** — In ancient Europe villages were often built in the middle of a considerable clearing so that no enemy could approach unseen under cover of the forest. The space outside the village was held in common for pasturage or cultivation, and was known as the *mark*. For further protection it was found well to enclose the village by a thick hedge or stockade called the *tun*, whence, finally, the village itself came to be called the *tun* or *towne*,\* though it was also known as the *mark*. When descendants of these peoples built homes in England they transferred the name town to their new villages.

At *town-meetings*, held in the open air, laws were passed, officers elected, and justice administered. Among the officers elected were the *reeve*, the *beadle*, and the *tithing men*. † After a while it became necessary to elect “*four best men*” to represent the town in the county courts. Thus almost from the beginnings of history we have the principle of representative government.

**4. Boroughs.** — When towns grew more populous, or when on account of common interests several contiguous towns united under one government, they were

---

\* “When necessity, by reason of warres and troubles, caused whole thorpes (villages) to bee with such tunes (hedges) enuironed about, those enclosed places did thereby take the name of *tunes*, afterward pronounced *townes*.” *Verstegan*; quoted in *Century Dictionary*.

† See any good dictionary.

called *boroughs*. Nowadays they would be called cities. Boroughs were strongly fortified to resist encroachments against their liberties. They became rich and powerful and figured very conspicuously in English politics because of their bold stand for their rights.

**5. Parish.** — When the Christian religion was established in England by priests from Rome many of the towns came to be called *parishes*, which was the name applied to the district surrounding the church and devoted to the support of the church. The parish sometimes included an entire township and sometimes two or three townships.\* In the parish the *vestry-meeting* took the place of the town-meeting, and there the townsfolk elected their officers, such as *vestry clerks*, corresponding to the modern town clerk; *beadles*, *way wardens*, *haywards*, and *collectors*. The people guided their own affairs, and developed representative government, only the district was called a *Parish* instead of a *Town*.

**6. Manors.** — But a third name came to be given to this same remarkable Anglo-Saxon political district. When England was conquered by Normans the townships, or parishes, became the property of powerful Norman barons, and were called *manors*, that is, permanent residences of the lords, and the townspeople became their tenants. While the latter were shorn of almost all of their liberty yet it seems that some of the prerogatives of freemen were left them, for town-meetings

---

\* *Township* sometimes refers to a village and its surrounding mark; sometimes to a village and the farms that are within a Sabbath day's journey of the village church; sometimes to any division of territory less than a county. Our western (U. S.) townships usually contain 36 square miles.

were continued after a fashion, and so were some of the courts. Later on, of course, home rule and representative government assumed their old-time prominence and vigor in England, and when finally liberty-loving Englishmen came to America they brought their political institutions with them, and the town-meeting once more became a potent factor in the making of a nation.

**7. Transference to America.**—We are prepared now to understand why, when colonists came from various parts of England to this country, bringing with them English customs and English institutions, the towns they established should be called *townships* in some parts of the country, *parishes* in others, and *manors* in still others, according to the usage of these colonists in the old country. In New York we still have our manors,—Livingston manor, Pelham manor, etc.,—and the term parish is not unknown; but these names have not been applied to political divisions in this State; here *town* has always been used.

**8. The Town in New York.**—Local self-government in New York was of course instituted by the Dutch, but was greatly developed under English rule. The town officers at first were eight *overseers* and a *constable*. A little later elective offices, such as we now have, came into existence.

**9. Town and County.**—Although the town was the first political organization to take the field in this State, yet an original turn was given to the body politic which soon determined that the county, and not the town, should be our most important political subdivision. This was the law that, in 1703, originated our famous “supervisor system,” whereby each town elected a



supervisor to meet with other town supervisors to act as a county board. (*For the origin of the county, see page 51.*) The tendency ever since then, and particularly of late years, has been to increase the importance of the county. There is no systematic plan in the division of governmental functions between town and county, but the chief offices are county offices. Each county has its county-seat, where are its court-house, jail, and county offices.

10. As has been said before, New York State is divided into counties, and each county except New York is subdivided into towns. Furthermore in many towns are incorporated villages which are not wholly independent divisions, but are parts of the towns in which they lie. Then there are the cities, which may occupy an entire town, as does Rome, or an entire county, as does New York. The main sub-divisions of the State, then, that are organized to carry on local self-government, government "by the people and for the people," are counties, towns, villages, and cities. In each of these we find that three-fold division of sovereign power that the Anglo-Saxon is so insistent on, namely, the *legislative*, the *executive*, and the *judicial*. (*See page 32.*) These are not always so clearly defined perhaps as they are in national or State government, yet nevertheless they lie at the very foundation of all our forms of local government.

11. **County Officers.** — The following table gives the officers of a county, grouped according to the three-fold division alluded to in paragraph 10 of this chapter. Any of these officers may be removed by the governor for cause, though not until a fair opportunity for defense

has been given. Educational officers are treated in the chapter on Education, hence school commissioners are not classed here.

## COUNTY OFFICERS.

	How many.	By what authority chosen.	Term.	Manner of compensation.
<b>LEGISLATIVE :</b> Supervisors.....	One from each town.	Town-meeting.	2 years.	\$4 per day* as county officers; \$2 per day as town officers; fees ; mileage.
<b>EXECUTIVE :</b> Sheriff.....	1	Fallelection	3 years.	Many fees.
District-attorney.....	1	"	"	Salary varies in different counties.
County clerk...	1	"	"	Fees.
County treasurer.....	1	"	"	Salary and fees.
Superintendents of the poor .....	1 or 3	"	"	Salary.
Coroners.....	1 to 4	"	"	Fees and mileage.
Sealer of weights and measures.....	1	Appointed by supervisors.	At pleasure of supervisors.	Fees.
<b>JUDICIAL :</b> County judge...	1	Fallelection	6 yrs.	Salary varies in different counties.
Surrogates... }	(Two in Kings Co.) 1	}	6 yrs.	Salary.

\* Per day means each day of actual service.

## THE LEGISLATIVE BODY OF THE COUNTY.

**12. Supervisors.** — Each town in a county elects a supervisor in town-meeting. Important as his duties are as a town official, he has much more important duties as a county officer, for in each county the supervisors of the towns composing it meet annually as a *county board of supervisors*. They may also hold special meetings. Where a city forms part of a county, each of its wards sends one supervisor to the board. In the counties of

New York, Kings, and Richmond, those who are elected to the Municipal Assembly of Greater New York constitute the boards of supervisors of those counties, their chief function being to canvass the votes for county officers and to divide the counties into assembly districts whenever that is necessary.

The board of supervisors is the most important agent of local government in the State. It represents the county as a corporation; is its official head. It has the management of property owned by the county, may amount to be raised by taxation for county purposes, such as court-houses, jails, asylums, etc., determines the amount to be raised by taxation for county purposes, and controls its expenditures. The board may borrow money on the county's credit and authorize towns to borrow money, providing the amount does not exceed 10 per cent of the assessed valuation of the property. It may alter the boundaries of towns and of school commissioner districts within the county and erect new ones. It is also charged with the duty of dividing counties into assembly districts. County highways and bridges, public monuments in honor of noted persons or events, and other similar improvements come under the jurisdiction of this powerful board. Other powers are given them from time to time by special acts of the legislature, and it thus comes about that the boards in some counties will have greater responsibilities than those in other counties. A very important duty of the board of supervisors is to make up annually a list of 300 or more citizens to serve as grand jurors. On the Tuesday after elections each board meets as the board of county canvassers. (*See page 30.*)

## EXECUTIVE OFFICERS OF THE COUNTY.

**13. Sheriff.**—Each county has its sheriff. His duty is to execute the decrees of the courts; chiefly in (1) arresting persons charged with crime, and summoning witnesses and jurors; (2) taking charge of the county jail and the prisoners confined there; (3) collecting judgments for money by seizing the debtor's property and selling it. A further duty is to keep the peace of the county—which means the duty to arrest any one committing a crime or creating a disturbance—and he may, when it is necessary, compel citizens to assist him in this, forming what is known in law as the *posse comitatus*. The sheriff is thus the arm of the law for his own county. He cannot make arrests or seize property outside of his county. He cannot serve two successive terms.

**14. District-Attorney.**—There is in each county a district-attorney. He is charged with the duty of prosecuting all persons to be tried for crime in the county. He also advises with the grand jury, and to some extent directs it. If any public officer is guilty of neglect of duty or misuse of power, it is the duty of the district-attorney to bring him to trial.

**15. County Clerk.**—Each county has its county clerk's office at the county-seat, where all the public records for that county are kept. The county clerk is their custodian. The most important records kept are those of deeds and mortgages of land, and of judgments for money, but there are others of various kinds. Three counties, New York, Kings, and Westchester, have a separate officer, the register, for the recording of deeds

and mortgages. The county clerk is also clerk of all the county courts; he draws jurors, and administers oaths to jurors and witnesses. He also sends certificates of election to the successful candidates for county offices, and if vacancies occur in county offices he reports such vacancies to the governor.

**16. County Treasurer.** — This officer receives all money belonging to the county, including the county's portion of the State tax, which funds are deposited in banks designated by him. He pays all legal bills against the county and all salaries of county officers.

**17. Superintendents of the Poor,** usually *one* in each county, though a few counties have *three*. These officers have charge of the county poorhouses and see that relief is available for the poor in their respective counties. In the counties comprising Greater New York these duties are performed under the direction of Commissioners of Public Charities.

**18. Coroners.** \* — From one to four coroners are elected in each county. Most counties have four. It is the duty of these officers to inquire into the cause of suspicious death. They hold inquests, if necessary, over bodies of persons who appear to have died other than a natural death, and determine if possible whether a murder has been committed, or whether death was due to accident. Coroners may summon a jury and call witnesses, when in their judgment this is necessary.

---

\* No longer a constitutional office: i.e., not mentioned in the constitution.

19. The County Judiciary; County Judges; Surrogates.  
(See pages 332, 334.)

20. Town Officers. —The following table gives the officers of a town, grouped according to the three-fold division alluded to in paragraph 10 of this chapter.

### TOWN OFFICERS.

LEGISLATIVE: In a town the law-making body is composed of the voters assembled in town-meeting.

	How many.	By what authority chosen.	Term.	Manner of compensation.
EXECUTIVE:				
Supervisor.....		Town-m't'g.	2 years.	As town officer \$2 per day; as county officer \$4 per day; fees; mileage.
Clerk.....	1	"	"	\$2 per day; fees.
Assessors... ..	3	"	"	\$2 per day; fees.
Collector.....	1	"	"	Fees.
Overseers of the poor.....	1 or 2	"	"	\$2 per day.
Highway com'r	1 or 3	"	"	\$2 per day.
Constable.. . .	Not more than five.	"	"	Fees.
Inspectors of election.....	Four for each election dist. in the town.	Two elected, two appointed.	"	\$2 per day.
* Auditors.....	3	Elected.	"	\$3 per day.
Sealer of weights.....	1	Appointed by town board.	"	Fees.
JUDICIAL:				
Justices of the peace.....	4	Town-m't'g	4 years.	Fees.

\* Many towns do not have auditors. In these the town board act as auditors.

### THE LEGISLATIVE BODY OF THE TOWN.

21. The Town-meeting.—The voters of each town meet once a year in town-meeting, to elect town officers and direct the general affairs of the town. A justice of



the peace usually presides. The law required that these meetings be held between the first Tuesday in February and the first Tuesday in May, the exact date to be fixed by the board of supervisors. This is amended now so as to allow the town-meeting to be held at the same time as the general election, if so voted in town-meeting. Special town-meetings may be held at the call of 25 taxpayers. The town-meeting has control of the chief financial concerns of the town, having power to authorize the purchasing of land, the erection of a town hall, etc., and the raising of money for such purposes. It represents the town as the board of supervisors represents the county. Town-meeting in this State is not so important an occasion as in the New England States, for the town there performs duties which in New York belong to the county.

#### EXECUTIVE OFFICERS OF THE TOWN.

**22. Supervisor.**—There is in each town one supervisor, who is its chief executive officer. He is the manager of its financial concerns, receiving the money paid to it, and directing its expenditures. Once in three years he meets with the town clerk and assessors to make up a list of persons to serve as petit jurors. He is also a member of the town board. (For his duties as a county officer see page 340.)

**23. Town Clerk.**—This officer keeps the town records, acts as clerk or secretary at town-meetings, furnishes ballots for use at town-meetings, is a member of the town board, records marriages, births, and deaths, and files chattel mortgages.

**24. Assessors**, three in number, fix or appraise the value of property for purposes of taxation. They also act as *fence viewers* of the town, i.e., settling disputes as to division fences.

**25. Collector of Taxes.**—His chief duty is apparent from his title. The moneys collected by him are turned over to the supervisor.

**26. Overseers of the Poor**, assisting in the dispensing of public charities; **Highway Commissioners**, charged with the duty of inspecting and repairing highways and bridges; also of viewing fences; **Constables**, having duties like those of the sheriff; **Inspectors of Elections**, who register voters, distribute ballots, preside at elections, and after polls are closed, count the votes, these complete the list of executive officers as found in most towns.

**27. The Town Board.**—The town board is composed of the supervisor, the town clerk, and the justices of the peace. This board holds at least two meetings annually, when its chief duty is to audit all claims presented to the town.

THE TOWN JUDICIARY. JUSTICES OF THE PEACE. (See page 332.)

## CHAPTER VIII.—CITIES AND INCORPORATED VILLAGES.

**1. Nature.**—Cities and incorporated villages are distinct portions of the State which, on account of populousness, have needs that are not satisfied by simple town government, and therefore have certain officers and features of government of their own. They are therefore something more than districts with distinct

names: but there are hundreds of post-office stations, railway stations, and villages, as the name is popularly applied, which, not being incorporated, have only the ordinary town government. Nearly two-thirds of the population of the State is under city government.

**2. Relation to State, County, and Town.**—Cities and villages are parts of the State, and also of the counties in which they lie; and State and county officials have authority within them. Thus, the acts of the governor and the laws of the legislature have as much authority in the cities as elsewhere; a city is affected by the acts of the county board of supervisors; and the sheriff performs his duties in the city as elsewhere.\* But cities are not parts of towns, and the town-meeting, town officials, and all features of town government are entirely superseded in them. Villages, however, are parts of the town in which they lie, though the duties of some town officers are frequently modified in them.

**3. Formation of Villages.**—Up to 1847 villages were formed under special charter, but since then they have been and now must be formed under a general law. Under this law they are classified as follows:

**First Class.**—Those with a population of 5000 or more.

**Second Class.**—Those with a population less than 5000, but not less than 3000.

**Third Class.**—Those with a population less than 3000, but not less than 1000.

**Fourth Class.**—Those with a population less than 1000, but not less than 300. By this law any part of

---

\* His duty to keep the peace is, in a city, given to the police department.

a town not exceeding a square mile, or an entire town containing in either case a population of not less than 300, may by vote organize itself into a village; such a village may also by vote resume town government.\*

4. **Village Government** is, of course, a comparatively simple matter, but very effective in promoting the comfort and prosperity of the people if the provisions of the law are lived up to. The following is a table of the

VILLAGE OFFICERS.

	How many.	Elected or Appointed.	Term.	Compensation.
<b>LEGISLATIVE :</b>				
Trustees..... (Trustees act as Assessors, and also as Inspectors of Elections.)	2 or more.	Elected.	2 official years.*	Nothing.
<b>EXECUTIVE :</b>				
President.....	1	"	1 official yr.	"
Treasurer.....	1	"	"	"
Clerk..... (Women eligible)	1	Appointed by trustees.	"	Small salary.
Street commissioner.....	1	"	"	Usually \$2 per day.
Collector.....	1	Elected.	"	Fees.
Board of Health...	3 to 7	Appointed by trustees	"	Fees.
Policemen.. ..	1 or more.	"	"	Salary, with additional fees.
<b>JUDICIAL :</b>				
Police Justice .....	1	Elected.	4 calendar years.	Salary.

\* An "official" year begins at noon on the first Monday after the third Tuesday of March.

\* The process of incorporating a village begins as follows: 25 adult freeholders sign a "proposition for incorporation," deliver it to the supervisor of the town, and at the same time deposit \$50 with him. Finding that the proposition complies in every respect with the law, the supervisor files it with the town clerk, and the latter gives notice of an election, at which only property owners vote and cast ballots either "for incorporation" or "against incorporation." If the majority favor incorporation the town clerk certifies this to the secretary of State and to the county clerk, notice is given of an election of officers, and at this election all qualified to vote at town-meetings may cast ballots.

officers of a village; elections are held on the third Tuesday in March.

#### THE LEGISLATIVE BODY OF THE VILLAGE.

**5. The Village Trustees.**—The law says:

“Villages in the several classes shall elect trustees as follows:

“1. In the first class, not less than two nor more than eight.

“2. In the second class, not less than two nor more than six.

“3. In the third class, two or four.

“4. In the fourth class, two.

“Each village shall always have an even number of trustees.”

The trustees are by far the most important of the village officers. They are the village legislators and are empowered to legislate on all matters pertaining to the common needs of the village, the use of the streets, the protection of individual rights, water-works, sewage disposal, fire protection, lighting systems. These and many other things come under the supervision of the trustees.\* A detailed account of their powers and duties would fill many pages. Thus section 88 of the village law has 22 paragraphs specifying the general powers of trustees: the next section, 27 paragraphs, authorizes

---

\* But the village may decide by the referendum to have fire, water, light, sewer, and cemetery commissioners, a separate board for each, or may establish a *municipal board* combining the powers, duties and responsibilities of two or more of such separate boards.

them to enact, amend or repeal ordinances covering matters of the gravest importance, while section 90, 4 paragraphs, empowers them to pass ordinances that regulate by license, or entirely prohibit, various trades and occupations.\*

If the trustees and other village officers would only live up to the opportunities for bettering society that are given them by the law, our villages would be almost ideal places in which to live. General peace, comfort, and contentment in the midst of beautiful surroundings would be the rule instead of the exception.

#### EXECUTIVE OFFICERS OF THE VILLAGE.

**6. The Powers and Duties** of these officers may be inferred from what has been said of similar officers in town government on preceding pages. Other facts are given in the table on page 348. The village law is quite complex as to some of the offices, necessarily so since it has to take into consideration the needs of villages, some of which may not have more than 300 residents, while others may have upwards of 12,000.

#### THE VILLAGE JUDICIARY.

**7. Police Justice.** — The police justice, like a city magistrate, is a special judicial officer who has jurisdiction in civil cases where village ordinances have been

---

\* A copy of the laws of New York, 120th session, 1897, Vol. 1, may be borrowed of the village clerk or of any lawyer and these matters looked up in detail. This will prove exceedingly interesting to the class.



violated. Many villages do not elect a police justice. Civil cases in these villages come under the jurisdiction of the justices of the peace.

#### FORMATION OF CITIES.

**8. Formation.** — Cities, like villages, are formed only by a law passed by the legislature. The constitution classifies cities, by including all that have 250,000 or more inhabitants in the first class, all that have less than 250,000 but not less than 50,000 in the second class, and all others in the third class. Cities of the first and second classes are obliged to hold their municipal elections in odd-numbered years. (*See page 302, par. 8.*) Each of the cities has its own law, called its *charter*, establishing its name, boundaries, and officials, with their duties. A charter may be granted or refused, at the pleasure of the legislature, without reference to the number of inhabitants; and it may be altered at any time. But no special city act that has been passed by the legislature can become a law until it has been submitted for approval to the municipal authorities of the city or cities concerned. Should the bill not be approved it may nevertheless become a law if it is passed again by both houses of the legislature and is approved by the governor.

#### CITY OFFICERS.

##### Legislative:

Common council, or board of aldermen,

Police commissioners.

Fire commissioners,

Board of education.

Board of health.

Executive:

Mayor.

Comptroller.

Treasurer.

Superintendent of schools.

Assessors.

Collectors.

Judicial:

City or municipal courts.

Police courts.

#### LEGISLATIVE OFFICERS.

**9. Common Council; Board of Aldermen.**—Cities are divided into wards, from four to 30, in each of which one or two aldermen are elected, usually for a term of two years. The mayor and aldermen constitute the *common council*, which is the main agent and representative of the city as a corporation, as the board of supervisors is the main agent and representative of a county. It has charge of the city finances, expenditures, and property; and has certain legislative powers, such as regulating the use of the streets, etc.

**10. Other Legislative Officers.**—While the common council is the principal legislative body of a city, yet various boards and commissions have within certain limits important legislative powers. Thus the *fire commissioners* have power to frame and enforce measures that will minimize the loss of life and property by fires; the *board of education* establishes and conducts

public schools, their executive officer being the superintendent of schools; the *board of health* prescribes sanitary measures, and the *police commissioners* determine the best means for preserving order and decency.

#### EXECUTIVE OFFICERS.

**11. The Mayor** is the chief officer of the city, and is elected by the people usually for a term of one year. His duties are chiefly executive, such as, to see that order is preserved, the laws executed, and the property owned by the city cared for. In many cities he presides in the common council; in some he has the power to veto ordinances passed by the board of aldermen; in some he has the appointment of important officers.

**12. Other Officers.** — Besides the mayor every city has executive officers such as a *comptroller*, who superintends the collecting of moneys and the payment of current expenses and audits the city accounts; a *treasurer* or *chamberlain*, who pays out the city money on the warrant of the comptroller; *assessors*, and *collectors* of taxes; a *superintendent of schools*, and perhaps a *superintendent of streets*, and a *city engineer*.

The number of offices, the manner of electing or appointing the officers, their terms of office and salaries vary greatly in different cities, for of course the government of a city of say eight or nine thousand population is a much simpler and easier matter than in a city of more than three million inhabitants.

## CITY JUDICIARY.

**13. City Courts.**—Cities usually have a *city* or *municipal court* for minor civil cases, and a *police* or *magistrate's court* to deal with those arrested for drunkenness, disorderly conduct, etc. Sometimes there is also a *criminal court* to deal with serious crimes. New York City has *three* such courts.

## CHAPTER IX.—OTHER PUBLIC INSTITUTIONS.

**1. This Chapter** treats of two subjects: (1) certain things furnished by the community to the citizens, viz., protection from fire, robbery, and violence, support in poverty, and the means of travel; and (2) certain burdens laid upon him, viz., taxation, public debt, military duty, and jury duty.

**2. Fire Departments.**—Fires in the United States occasion the loss of many lives and destroy more than one hundred million dollars' worth of property annually. How to prevent fires and how to extinguish them when they occur is a matter of serious concern to every community. To this end fire departments are organized and maintained largely at public expense. Volunteer organizations are often formed in towns and villages, but in thickly settled communities there are usually well-organized departments, often under the management of fire commissioners. The firemen are either paid or are granted other immunities for their services. (*See e.g. par. 10 below.*) They are organized into small companies each of which under its chief is

assigned to a fire-engine, a hose-cart, a hook-and-ladder truck, or some other contrivance for assisting in extinguishing fires. The fire organizations in the United States are the best in the world.

**3. Police Departments.**—Among our citizens are many law-breakers and criminals, and many others who unless restrained would doubtless break out into open defiance of law and order. To prevent crime, to preserve order, and to enforce beneficent laws, cities and some incorporated villages have well-organized systems of police protection. One or more *police commissioners* are appointed or elected to maintain and regulate an efficient force of *policemen*. *Police courts* are established, over which *police justices* or *magistrates* preside, who try or hold for trial by higher judicial authority persons brought before the court by the policemen. Where such a system, or a similar one, is not maintained, police functions are performed by *justices of the peace*, who issue warrants for the arrest of those accused of crime; *constables*, who arrest such persons and bring them before a justice; and *sheriffs*, who are appointed to keep the peace in a county and who to that end may call on citizens to assist when necessary.

**4. Poor-houses : Asylums.** — Poor-houses exist in every county, in which any one unable to support himself or herself may obtain food, clothing, and shelter. Each town must support its own poor. There are also different kinds of asylums and hospitals, some supported by the State and some by the county, at which the pauper insane, blind, sick, etc., may be kept or treated. But the parents or children of paupers must support them, if able.

**5. Roads and Bridges.** — Nearly all the roads and bridges in the State are public highways, free to all, without toll. New highways are made and old ones closed by public authority, but railways are built and owned by private companies.

**6. The Canals.**—Most of the canals in the State, including the Erie Canal, are owned and managed by the State. They are free to all, without toll.

**7. Taxes.**—Over 60 millions of dollars are raised in the State by taxation each year, nearly all by a direct tax on property. The taxable real estate is valued at nearly four billion dollars, the taxable personal property at nearly half a billion dollars. In the case of real estate, assessments are made where the property is located, while personal property is assessed where the person owning it lives. The rate which each one pays varies greatly—from one-half per cent or less, to two per cent or over.\* Taxes are applied to two general purposes: (1) the ordinary expenses of government, such as salaries, expense of maintaining schools, prisons, etc.; and (2) the payment of interest upon municipal debt, which has been incurred for large public works, like public buildings, water-works, etc.

**8. Public Debt.**—The State is out of debt. Very many of the cities, villages, counties, and towns, however, have debts of their own; but by the constitution no city, village, county, or town can incur indebtedness

---

\* City property pays the highest rate of taxation. Country and city each pays its share (i.e., the same rate) of State and county taxes, but the city has its own taxes in addition; the great difference in the total rates therefore shows how costly the conveniences of a city are.



except for its own government and for public works for its own use,\* and no city of over 100,000 inhabitants, nor the county containing it, can have a debt exceeding 10 per cent of the valuation of the real estate in it.

**9. Militia.**—Every man between the ages of 18 and 45 is liable, in case of necessity, to be called upon by the State for military service. The only part of this possible force now organized, or of which any present military duty is required, is a number of volunteer regiments situated in different cities and called the National Guard. No one is obliged to enlist in the National Guard, but, becoming a member, he has certain duties (drilling, parading, etc.) to perform, and may be called upon by the governor for active service at any time.

**10. Jury Duty.**—With some exceptions,† citizens between the ages of 21 and 60 are liable to be called on for jury duty in their own county. This service seldom occupies more than a week or two, and the same person is seldom called more than once a year. If it is a jury to inquire into matters pertaining to roads (*road jury*), 12 men are drawn by the town clerk and notified by the constable. If it is a jury to investigate the causes of violent or mysterious death (*coroner's jury*), six to 15 men are summoned by the coroner. If it is a jury to serve in a justice's court (*justice's jury*), 12 men are

---

\* Prior to 1875, when this provision was added to the constitution, they sometimes lent their credit to private enterprises: thus some towns and cities now have debt incurred in aid of some railway.

† Postmasters, members of fire companies, members of the National Guard, policemen, locomotive engineers, clergymen, physicians, lawyers, and teachers, are some of those who are exempt from jury duty.

summoned by the constable and six are drawn for duty. At every term of a higher court, 36 trial jurors, whose names are drawn from the list referred to in Chap. VI., par. 3, are summoned to attend court, and from these 36 men, 12 are appointed as a jury (*trial or petty jury*) for each case to be tried. (For *Grand Jury*, see page 87.) In some cases in higher courts, in order to insure the fairest possible trial, or to secure an exceptionally intelligent jury, the Supreme Court and Superior City Courts may order a *struck jury*. Here the names of 48 men are carefully picked from the jury list by the county clerk, and each party in the trial, plaintiff and defendant, is allowed to object to, or *strike off*, 12 from this list. From the remaining 24 the struck jury is impaneled by usual procedure.

## CHAPTER X.—EDUCATION.

**1. Public Education a Public Duty.**—The citizens of New York recognize the duty they owe the State and themselves in the matter of educating the young. The constitution requires that schools shall be provided for all; it sets aside certain public funds \* for this purpose;

---

\* The State school-moneys, over \$5,000,000 annually, are derived from the following sources, which are arranged in the order of their establishment:

1. *The Literature Fund*, which was established by an act in 1786, and grew out of the sale of public lands. It was augmented by grants from the legislature, and now amounts to \$284,000, the income from which, about \$12,000, is apportioned by the Education Department for the benefit of academies.

2. *The Common School Fund* was established in 1805. Its capital, \$4,348,140, grew out of the sale of 500,000 acres of State lands, and must always be preserved inviolate. From the revenues of this

it establishes the University of the State of New York, an executive body which exercises important powers for the advancement of the educational interests of the State.

---

fund \$170,000 are annually appropriated to the common schools and \$6,000 to Indian schools.

3. *The United States Deposit Fund* grew out of an act of congress which, in 1836, divided the surplus in the United States treasury among the several States in proportion to their representation (*see page 69*) New York's share was about \$4,000,000. From the income of this fund there is distributed by the Education Department \$34,000 a year to academies and \$25,000 for public libraries, while \$26,500 are appropriated for regents' examinations, about \$25,000 are added to the capital of the common school fund, and \$75,000 are for dividends to the common schools.

4. *The State School Tax or Free School Fund* is an amount of about \$4,000,000, fixed from year to year by the legislature, and used for common schools, normal schools, teachers' institutes, teachers' classes, school commissioners' salaries, and other expenses of the Education Department.

5. *The College Land Scrip Fund*, amounting to nearly \$475,000, grew out of the sale of the western public lands that were granted by the United States for the support of State Agricultural Colleges. Its income, \$20,000 per year, is paid to Cornell University, which in return grants four *free scholarships* to each of the 150 Assembly districts of the State, where they are assigned to students by competitive examinations.

6. *The General School Tax*, often called the *general fund*, is the amount paid from the general treasury of the State for educational purposes. Appropriations are made annually for both higher and elementary education, swelling the grand total of State appropriations to the regents for higher education including State Library and Museum expenses to about \$350,000, and the total appropriations to the Education Department for elementary education, including reform schools, institutions for the deaf, dumb, and blind, etc., to more than \$5,000,000.

7. *Local Taxation*.—The moneys derived from the above sources pay only about one-fourth of the expenses of the common schools; the other three-fourths are raised by local taxation.

Legislative activity in behalf of education began at the first session of the legislature after the Revolutionary War. In speaking of the public leaders of that time and of their educational legislation, Governor Seymour said:

“They made a law which they meant should reach all classes, and to give a chance for all to gain knowledge in its largest forms and best estate. There are no grander words to be found in our statute-books, when we see their full scope, than these: ‘An university is instituted in this State, of which the government is and shall continue to be vested in a board of regents.’ In other sections of this law this board of regents was clothed with all the powers known to universities in Europe.

“By these brief words the whole territory of our State was made a seat of learning, in its broadest, highest sense. But few laws in the world’s history have been conceived in a larger spirit. It did not plant education in certain favored spots to which the few could resort who were able to seek knowledge at points remote from home; it meant that in all its forms it should be taught in all parts of its broad territory. It implied that not only common schools, but that academies and colleges were among the rights of the people where they desired their method of mental training. To this end they made a system by which all forms of instruction could easily be established in every town and county.”

**2. Historic Sketch.**—The University referred to in paragraph 2 was established May 1, 1784. The first governor of the State, George Clinton, was its first chancellor, while Alexander Hamilton, John Jay, and

Baron de Steuben were among the first regents. Organized chiefly in the interests of Kings, now Columbia, College, its functions were soon broadened to include all matters pertaining to collegiate and academic education. But the regents saw at once the necessity for a system of elementary schools. Under the lead of Hamilton they laid the matter before the legislature thus: "But before your committee conclude, they feel themselves bound in faithfulness to add that the erecting of public schools for teaching reading, writing, and arithmetic is an object of very great importance which ought not to be left to the discretion of private men, but be promoted by public authority." Their insistence on this subject before several successive legislatures resulted in the passage in 1795 of the now famous "act for the encouragement of schools," from which there eventually developed the present State system of elementary schools. To supervise this system there was elected by the legislature in 1854 a Superintendent of Public Instruction. His term of office was three years. Thus there came to be in this State two supervisory and administrative educational authorities—the University of the State of New York and the Superintendent of Public Instruction. These have now been combined to make the State Education Department, which has all the powers and duties formerly exercised by the separate organizations. Under its control are placed the varied interests of our great educational system.

**3. Public or Common Schools** free and accessible to all now exist in every town and city. There are more than one million children in these schools, and a vast majority of them receive no other education. Each town

is divided into *school districts* (see also page 70), in which certain officers are elected by the people,\* whose duty it is to organize and provide for the support of free schools. There are more than 10,000 of these districts in the State, with a total of nearly 12,000 public school-houses, and a property valuation of about \$50,000,000. Nearly 35,000 teachers are employed in these schools at an expense for salaries of about \$20,000,000. The cost to the State of maintaining its free schools is approximately \$43,000,000 a year.

A very large majority of these schools are known as *district schools*. In these the administrative officers are *one or three trustees*, a *clerk*, and a *collector*. The trustees, besides having custody of school property, have power to levy tax, to employ teachers, to prescribe subjects to be taught, to spend not more than \$50 annually for repairs or more than \$25 for books and apparatus. Their powers in these and other particulars

---

\* The annual meeting is held on the first Tuesday in August. In small districts officers are elected at this meeting; but in larger districts, where there are at least 300 children of school age (5 to 21 years), officers are usually elected on the day after the annual meeting between the hours of twelve and four. In a school district the following persons may vote: every citizen (aliens cannot vote), man or woman of at least 21 years of age, and for at least 30 days a resident in the district; (1) who owns or hires in the district real property that is taxable for school purposes; or (2) who on the last preceding assessment roll of the town was assessed an amount of at least \$50 on personal property, exclusive of that which is exempt from execution; or (3) who is parent of a child of school age that has actually attended the district school for eight weeks during the preceding year (in which case both parents may vote); or (4) who has such a child permanently residing with him or her (in which case only the head of the household may vote).



are enlarged and restricted by the voters at school meeting.

But when, in a district, or in two or more adjoining districts, the voters desire to improve their school facilities they may by a majority vote at a specially called meeting change the district school to a *union free* school, and elect not less than *three* nor more than *nine* members of a *board of education*. This board has some powers which even voters in the district school organization do not have. It may establish an academic department under the visitation of the regents, or, on vote of the district, adopt as the academic department of the district an existing academy. It may prescribe the text-books to be used,\* and may furnish them free to all pupils. It may establish kindergartens, in which the teachers must be regularly licensed, as are the others, and toward whose salaries the State pays a quota of \$100, as in the case of other teachers. It may buy such books and apparatus and make such repairs as it deems for the best interests of the school, and may appoint a *superintendent of schools*, toward whose salary, in districts of at least 5000 population, \$800 is paid from the free-school fund. It may also establish a truant school, and *must* employ one or more *attendance officers*.

**4. School Commissioner Districts.**—The supervisors of each county group the school districts by towns into school commissioner districts. There are 113 of these in the State (1904). In each district a school commissioner is elected for three years, whose duty it is to

---

\* Elsewhere than in union free school districts, this is done by voters at school meeting. In *any* case books may not be changed within five years except by a two-thirds vote.

visit as often as possible and inspect the management, discipline, and class work of every public school in his district.\* He apportions to each district its quota of State school money. He conducts the uniform examinations (*see par. 7, below*), and organizes the annual teachers' institute for his district (*see par. 6, below*). He changes boundaries of existing school districts and forms new ones, and reports to the Commissioner of Education, who is his superior. The usual salary is \$1000 with \$200 for expenses. The board of supervisors may increase this, and in a few instances have done so.

**5. Compulsory Education.**—Not only are free schools provided, but a compulsory education law is in operation with the following features:

Children between the ages of 8 and 16 must regularly attend school or receive equivalent instruction from a competent teacher elsewhere, as follows: Every child between the ages of 14 and 16 not regularly engaged in any useful employment or service, and every child between the ages of 8 and 14, must attend upon instruction as many days annually from October 1st to June 1st as the public schools are in session. Every child between the ages of 14 and 16 who is engaged in any useful employment or service in the city, and who has not completed the studies required for graduation from the elementary public schools, must attend the public evening school or other evening school offering an

---

\* City schools are not included in these districts, but are generally organized by special school acts under a board of education (the members of which are sometimes styled school commissioners) and a superintendent of schools.

† Holidays, vacations, and detentions by sickness excepted, of course; but there must be a total of 130 days' actual attendance.

equivalent course of study for not less than six hours each week for sixteen weeks in each year. Instruction received elsewhere than at a public school must be substantially equivalent to that given at the public school, and attendance shall be for as many hours of each day as are required of children of the same age at public schools. Parents and guardians of children between the ages of 8 and 16 must cause them to attend upon instruction under penalty of fine and imprisonment. Children under the age of 14 may not be employed by any person, corporation, or firm while the public school of the district is in session; while children between 14 and 16 must have attended school that year not less than 130 days before they can be employed.

Cities and union school districts, or common school districts whose limits include in whole or in part an incorporated village, must appoint attendance officers to arrest children between the ages of 8 and 16 who are truants, and may establish special schools for children between the ages of 8 and 16 who are habitual truants. Or they may contract for the disposal of their truants with cities or districts that have such truant schools established. County school districts, too, are authorized to establish such schools, or to contract with other districts as above.\* Industrial training must be supplied in every such school.

One half the public moneys may be withheld from districts that wilfully omit or refuse to enforce the provisions of this compulsory attendance law.

#### **6. Training Teachers.**—The State not only supplies

---

\* But the attendance officers of schools not included in the first part of this paragraph are appointed by the town board of each town.

schools in abundance and then compels the children to attend them, but it exercises great care in securing for these children the best possible instruction. As a result of its policy in this particular special agencies for the training of teachers are being rapidly established.

*A normal college* at Albany and 11 *normal schools* are supported by the State and annually graduate upwards of 500 skilfully trained teachers.

*Pedagogic departments* are maintained in several of the colleges and universities, in which many students who afterward become high school and academic principals and teachers receive a very high grade of professional training.

*Teachers' training-classes* supplement the work of the institutions named above by giving special pedagogic instruction to many hundreds of students annually \* who follow, for at least four 35-minute periods daily for 38 weeks, a prescribed course of pedagogic study. These classes are organized in connection with academies and academic departments of union free schools designated by the Commissioner of Education, and are maintained at an annual expense to the State of about \$100,000, the amount apportioned each school being on the basis of one dollar a week for each student instructed for the required time. While it is not claimed that these classes even approximate the work done in a full normal course, yet, since their graduates teach largely in rural schools that cannot secure normal graduates, they are an exceedingly important feature of our educational system, their value being attested

---

\* In 1901 there were about 2500 of these students.

not only by the results achieved but by the fact that other States are following New York's lead in this matter.

Another valuable means of instructing and inspiring our teachers is afforded by the *teachers' institute*, a State school which meets at a convenient place during five consecutive days in nearly every commissioner district. Outside of cities and districts employing a superintendent of schools all public schools are obliged to remain closed during the session of the institute, in order that the teachers may attend. Conductors sent out by the Education Department, and aided by local assistants, give instruction to upwards of 17,000 teachers annually at these institutes. This institution, like the *teachers' training-classes*, originated in New York, and has been widely adopted in other States.

*Summer schools* established during vacation months in several places offer teachers three to six weeks of excellent training under instructors of national reputation, and are largely patronized.

**7. Licenses to Teach.**—Public moneys and money raised by tax may be paid as salary only to licensed teachers, including the holders of certificates, as follows:

1. *Commissioners' Certificates.*—These are of three grades, and are given to those who pass the *uniform examinations*. These examinations have taken the place of the commissioners' examinations of former years, and are held simultaneously four times a year in all commissioner districts, the questions being prepared and printed by the Education Department at



Albany and sent in sealed packages to the commissioners, who open and distribute them when the hour of examination arrives. All answer papers are examined at Albany. Commissioners are notified of the successful candidates and issue the grade of certificate earned. A *third grade certificate* permits the holder to teach *one year*; it cannot be renewed. If the holder wishes to continue teaching he must take a more comprehensive examination and earn a *second grade certificate*, which is issued for *three years* and can be renewed only on re-examination. After having taught successfully for at least two years, teachers are eligible to the still more comprehensive and difficult examinations which lead to a *first grade certificate*. These are issued for *ten years* and may be renewed by the commissioner without subjecting the holder to another examination.

2. *Temporary Licenses* are issued on recommendation of a commissioner for not more than *six weeks*, pending one of the uniform examinations.

3. *State Certificates* are granted by the Commissioner of Education to candidates who after three years of successful teaching pass examinations in upwards of 25 prescribed subjects. The examinations are held in the summer vacation at places designated by the superintendent and continue five days. The certificates are for life and entitle holders to teach in any public school in the State.

4. *College Graduates' Certificates* are issued without examination by the Commissioner of Education, and in his discretion, to university or college graduates who have had three years' successful experience in teaching.



5. *Normal School Diplomas* are licenses to teach for life and are granted to students who complete prescribed four-year courses at any of our normal schools.

6. *Training Class Certificates*.—Members of training classes who attain the standing required for commissioners' certificates of the second grade and pass special training class examinations in January and June are granted *training-class certificates*, which are valid for three years, and renewable for 10 years without examination by any school commissioner in the State.

7. *Normal School Diplomas and Certificates from other States* are valid in New York schools when indorsed by our Commissioner of Education.

8. **The Regents**.—At the head of the State educational system is the State Board of Regents of the University. These are eleven in number, elected by the Legislature, one each year for a term of eleven years. The Regents of the University constitute the legislative body of the Department, and make the laws and regulations for the administration of all the educational laws of the State. The Regents elect a Chancellor and Vice-Chancellor, the Chancellor being the presiding officer of the Board.

9. **Commissioner of Education**.—The chief administrative officer of the Board of Regents is the Commissioner of Education, the first incumbent of the office being elected by the State Legislature for a term of six years, his successor to be elected by the Regents of the University.

There are three Assistant Commissioners of Education of equal rank. The First Assistant Commissioner has charge of higher education; the Second Assistant Com-

missioner of secondary education, and the Third Assistant Commissioner of elementary education, including the licensing of teachers for elementary schools. The Assistant Commissioners are nominated by the Commissioner of Education and their appointment confirmed by the Board of Regents.

**10. Administration.**—The administrative divisions are the Divisions of Accounts, of Attendance, of Examinations, of Inspection, of Law, of Libraries, of Records, of Science, and of Statistics. The Divisions of Accounts, Attendance, Records, Science, and Statistics are concerned with the purely administrative powers of the Department, and are not strictly educational.

The Division of Attendance has in charge the execution of the Compulsory Attendance law. The Division of Examinations has charge of the examinations conducted by the State, except the Civil Service examinations, including the examinations for licenses to practice medicine, dentistry, and veterinary medicine, for registering public accountants and nurses, the examinations for state scholarships in Cornell University, the examinations for admission to training schools and training classes, and for the licensing of teachers, and the Regents' examinations in secondary schools. The Division of Inspection is charged with the inspection of all the educational institutions of the State. The Division of Libraries manages the State Library and has supervision of public libraries, traveling libraries, and other allied library interests. The Division of Science supervises the State Museum and is charged with the conduct of the scientific investigations made by its staff.

**11. Chiefs of the Divisions.**—Each of these divisions

has at its head a chief, who, like the Assistant Commissioners, is nominated by the Commissioner of Education and confirmed by the Board of Regents. All the employees in each division are nominated by the Chief of the Division and confirmed by the Commissioner.

**12. The University of the State of New York** is a federation of all incorporated institutions of secondary or higher education in the State, including universities, colleges, professional and technical schools, and academies, together with such high schools, academic departments of union free schools, libraries, museums, university extension centers, and other educational agencies as may be incorporated or admitted to university privileges.

1. *Academic Fund*.—One of the important functions of the Department of Public Instruction is to distribute the academic fund of \$350,000. This is done through three channels. *First*, each high school, academy, and academic department receives a quota of \$100. *Second*, each school may have a grant, not to exceed \$250 in any one year, providing the school raises an equal amount from tax or other local source for buying approved books and apparatus. *Third*, what is left of the \$350,000 is distributed on the basis of the attendance of academic pupils, amounting perhaps to two or three cents per day for each pupil.

2. *Examinations*.—The Department of Education publishes syllabuses in subjects covering all college preparatory and higher liberal studies, and also in law, medicine, dentistry, library science, home science, manual training, and business education, and other professional and technical groups. Examinations are held several times a year in nearly 700 academies and high

schools, and elsewhere when convenience demands, even outside New York State. These examinations require about a million and a half question papers annually. Papers claimed by principals as having passed are re-examined by the department and records kept of the successful candidates. The completion of certain groups of studies entitles candidates to certificates and diplomas, which admit them free of examinations to many of the colleges and professional and technical schools throughout the United States, and which are required by law in the case of all not college graduates who wish to enter on the practice of law, medicine, dentistry, veterinary surgery, or public accounting in New York State.

3. *Home Education*.—By the efforts of the Education Department a complete system of university extension work has been put in operation. This includes designating to centers suitable teachers or lecturers, lending necessary books or apparatus, conducting examinations and granting credentials. Summer, vacation, evening, and correspondence schools, lecture courses, study clubs, and reading circles are assisted by the use of printed syllabuses, books, pictures, and other aids. The most important part of the extension work is the *public libraries division*, which expends \$64,000 a year for the benefit of free public libraries. It assists in the formation of local free libraries, apportioning money to them, annually giving each an amount, not to exceed \$200, equal to that raised by the library. It also lends *traveling libraries* for six months at a time to local libraries or to communities not yet having organized permanent libraries.

4. *State Library*.—This was made a department of

the university in 1889, and now occupies the third, fourth, and fifth floors of the west front of the Capitol. It contains more than 450,000 volumes, 140,000 bound duplicates, about 250,000 manuscripts, and 180,000 pamphlets. The law library, 65,000 volumes, is the best in the country.

A *library school* is organized in connection with the State library, to give instruction in the best methods of organizing, administering, and developing libraries.

5. *State Museum*.—This also was made a department of the university in 1889. It consists of very valuable collections of scientific specimens, works of art, and objects of historic interest. It has connected with it the research division carried on by the State geologist and paleontologist, botanist, and entomologist. The State has expended more than \$1,400,000 on this department, including the expense of publishing the natural history of the State, besides numerous reports and bulletins containing the researches of the scientific staff.

13. *School Holidays*.—New York State establishes the following legal holidays by statute law: New-Year's Day, January 1st; Lincoln's Birthday, February 12; Washington's Birthday, February 22; Decoration Day, May 30; Independence Day, July 4; Labor Day, first Monday in September; Thanksgiving Day, Thursday late in November; Christmas Day, December 25; every Saturday, from noon until midnight; general election days; any other days set apart by the president or the governor for fasting or thanksgiving. In addition to these, Arbor Day, the first Friday after the first Mon-



day in May, is observed as a holiday in our public schools.

**14. The American Flag and the Public School.—**

It is a custom in this State to display the American flag at every schoolhouse during school hours. In some schools the raising and lowering of the flag is attended by some simple ceremony, the purpose being to inculcate respect and reverence for the national emblem. This beautiful practice was doubtless suggested by the custom of our soldiers and sailors. Thus at army posts and on warships soldiers and marines present arms when the flag is being raised or lowered; officers not on duty, and civilians, uncover their heads, while the band plays "America" at the raising and the "Star Spangled Banner" at the lowering of the flag. The flag is not allowed to touch the ground or floor.

When the flag is to be at half mast it should first be raised to the mast-head, that is, hoisted to the top of the pole or staff, and then lowered to half-mast position. Before taking it down in the evening the flag should be raised again to the mast-head.

The following *flag salutes* have been suggested for schools:

1. We give our Heads and our Hearts to God and our Country. One Country! One Language! One Flag! (*Written by Colonel George A. Balch, U. S. A.*)

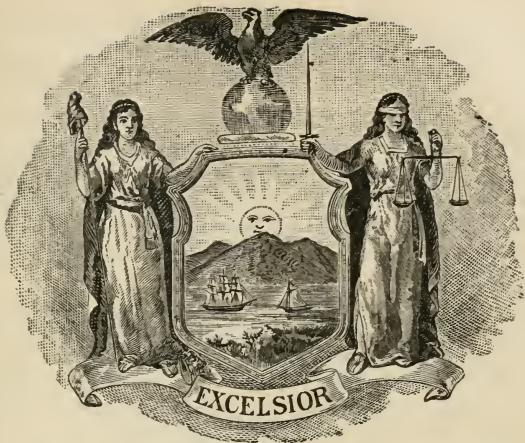
2. I pledge allegiance to my Flag, and the Republic for which it stands—one nation, indivisible, with liberty and justice for all. (*Youth's Companion.*)



## SALARIES.

Governor .....	\$10,000
Lieutenant-Governor .....	5,000
Secretary of State .....	5,000
Comptroller .....	6,000
Treasurer .....	5,000
Attorney-General .....	5,000
Engineer and Surveyor .....	5,000
Superintendent of Insurance .....	7,000
Superintendent of Banking .....	7,000
Railroad Commissioners (three) .....	each 8,000
Commissioner of Education .....	7,500
Superintendent of Public Works .....	6,000
“ “ Public Buildings .....	5,000
“ “ State Land Survey .....	5,000
“ “ State Prisons .....	6,000
“ “ Elections .....	5,000
Excise Commissioner .....	5,000
Water “ .....	4,000
Capitol “ .....	7,500
President, Forest, Fish and Game Commission.	5,000
President, Commission in Lunacy .....	7,500
Civil Service Commission:	
Three commissioners .....	each 2,600
Secretary .....	3,000
Chief Examiner .....	3,600
Board of Mediation and Arbitration (three commissioners) .....	each 3,000
Board of Tax Commissioners (three) ....	“ 2,500
Statutory revision (three commissioners). “	3,000

Inspector of gas meters.....	5,000
Superintendent of weights and measures.....	300
State historian.....	4,500
Director Agricultural Experiment Station, Geneva .....	4,000
Health officer, Port of New York.....	12,500
Quarantine commissioners (three).....each	2,500
Judges, Court of Claims (three)..... “	5,000
Court of Appeals, Chief Judge.....	14,200
“ “ “ Associate Judges.....	13,700
State Reporter.....	5,000
Supreme Court, Appellate Division:	
First department, 7 justices.....each	17,500
Second “ 5 “ .....	8,500
Third “ 5 “ .....	7,200
Fourth “ 5 “ .....	7,200
Supreme Court:	
First district, 19 justices.....each	17,500
Second “ { 5 “ .....	13,200
“ { 4 “ .....	10,950
Third “ 5 “ .....	7,200
Fourth “ 3 “ .....	7,200
Fifth “ 4 “ .....	7,200
Sixth “ 4 “ .....	7,200
Seventh “ 5 “ .....	7,200
Eighth “ 7 “ .....	7,200



THE ARMS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK,  
AS RE-ESTABLISHED BY CHAPTER 190 OF THE LAWS OF 1882  
AND AMENDED IN 1895.

## CHAPTER 190.

AN ACT to re-establish the original arms of the State of New York,  
and to provide for the use thereof on the public seals.

PASSED May 20, 1882; three-fifths being present.

*The people of the State of New York, represented in Senate and Assembly, do enact as follows :*

**Section 1.** The device of arms of this State, as adopted March sixteenth, seventeen hundred and seventy-eight, is hereby declared to be correctly described as follows:

**Charge.**—Azure, in a landscape, the sun in fess, rising in splendor, or,\* behind a range of three mountains, the middle one the highest; in base a ship and sloop under sail, passing and about to meet on a river bordered below by a grassy shore fringed with shrubs, all proper.†

**Crest.**—On a wreath, azure and or, an American eagle proper,

\* This word, or, derived through the French language from the Latin word *aurum*, gold, means *yellow or gold color*, and is represented in engravings by small dots.

† i.e., represented in their natural color.

rising to the dexter, from a two-thirds of a globe terrestrial showing the North Atlantic Ocean, with outlines of its shores.

**Supporters.**—On a quasi-compartment formed by the extension of the scroll.

**Dexter.**—The figure of Liberty proper, her hair disheveled and decorated with pearls, vested azure, sandaled gules, about the waist a cincture or, fringed gules, a mantle of the last depending from the shoulders behind to the feet, in the dexter hand a staff ensigned with Phrygian cap or, the sinister arm embowed, the hand supporting the shield at the dexter chief point, a royal crown by her sinister foot dejected.

**Sinister.**—The figure of Justice proper, her hair disheveled and decorated with pearls, vested or, about the waist a cinctured azure, fringed gules, sandaled and mantled as Liberty, bound about the eyes with a fillet proper, in the dexter hand a straight sword hilted or, erect, resting on the sinister chief point of the shield, the sinister arm embowed, holding before her her scales proper.

**Motto.**—On a scroll below the shield, argent, in sable, EXCELSIOR.

**Sec. 7.** During the hours when the legislature is in session, the State flag shall be displayed from the Capitol together with the flag of the United States; the State flag shall be blue containing a white circular space charged with the arms of the State in the colors as described in the blason of section one of this Act.

---

### STATE COLOR.

By common consent the imperial color, *purple*, has been used as the color of the Empire State. No official action was taken as to its adoption, however, till the Columbian exposition of 1893, when the State commissioners in charge of New York's exhibit adopted it as the color emblem of the Empire State.

### STATE TREE AND STATE FLOWER.

By vote of the school children of the State taken on Arbor day in 1889 the *maple* was adopted as the State tree, and in the same way in 1891 the *rose* was adopted as the State flower.

# THE CONSTITUTION OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK

---

*Adopted Nov. 3, 1846, as Amended, and in Force Jan. 1, 1895.*

Sections marked thus, †, are the additions to the Constitution of 1846 which were adopted in 1894.

WE THE PEOPLE of the State of New York, grateful to Almighty God for our Freedom, in order to secure its blessings, DO ESTABLISH THIS CONSTITUTION.

## ARTICLE I—Certain Personal Rights\*

§ 1. **Persons not to be disfranchised.**—No member of this State shall be disfranchised, or deprived of any of the rights or privileges secured to any citizen thereof, unless by the law of the land, or the judgment of his peers.

§ 2. **Trial by jury.**—The trial by jury in all cases in which it has been heretofore used, shall remain inviolate forever; but a jury trial may be waived by the parties in all civil cases in the manner to be prescribed by law.

§ 3. **Religious liberty.**—The free exercise and enjoyment of religious profession and worship, without discrimination or preference, shall forever be allowed in this State to all mankind; and no person shall be rendered incompetent to be a witness on account of his opinions on matters of religious belief; but the liberty of conscience hereby secured shall not be so construed as to excuse

---

\* The first 8 sections of Art I may be called the "Bill of Rights" of the N. Y. Constitution (*see page 193, secs. 2 and 3*), though § 6 is indicated in the text as the Bill of Rights.

acts of licentiousness, or justify practices inconsistent with the peace or safety of this State.

§ 4. **Habeas corpus.**—The privilege of the writ of *habeas corpus* shall not be suspended, unless when, in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require its suspension.

§ 5. **Excessive bail and fines.**—Excessive bail shall not be required nor excessive fines imposed, nor shall cruel and unusual punishments be inflicted, nor shall witnesses be unreasonably detained.

§ 6. **Grand jury—bill of rights.**—No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime (except in cases of impeachment, and in cases of militia when in actual service; and the land and naval forces in time of war, or which this State may keep, with the consent of Congress, in time of peace; and in cases of petit larceny, under the regulation of the Legislature), unless on presentment or indictment of a grand jury; and in any trial in any court whatever the party accused shall be allowed to appear and defend in person and with counsel as in civil actions. No person shall be subject to be twice put in jeopardy for the same offence; nor shall he be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself; nor be deprived of life, liberty or property without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

§ 7. **Compensation for taking private property; private roads; drainage of agricultural lands.**—When private property shall be taken for any public use the compensation to be made therefor, when such compensation is not made by the State, shall be ascertained by a jury or by not less than three commissioners appointed by a court of record, as shall be prescribed by law. Private roads may be opened in the manner to be prescribed by law; but in every case the necessity of the road, and the amount of all damage to be sustained by the opening thereof, shall be first determined by a jury of freeholders, and such amount, together with the expenses of the proceeding, shall be paid by the person to be benefited. † General laws may be passed permitting the owners or occupants of agricultural lands to construct and maintain for the drainage thereof, necessary drains, ditches and dykes upon the lands of others, under proper restrictions and with just compensation, but no special laws shall be enacted for such purposes.

§ 8. **Freedom of speech and press; criminal prosecutions for libel.**—Every citizen may freely speak, write and publish his



sentiments on all subjects, being responsible for the abuse of that right; and no law shall be passed to restrain or abridge the liberty of speech or of the press. In all criminal prosecutions or indictments for libels, the truth may be given in evidence to the jury; and if it shall appear to the jury, that the matter charged as libellous is true, and was published with good motives, and for justifiable ends, the party shall be acquitted; and the jury shall have the right to determine the law and the fact.

**§ 9. Right of petition; divorces; lottery, and gambling.**—No law shall be passed abridging the right of the people peaceably to assemble and to petition the government, or any department thereof, nor shall any divorce be granted, otherwise than by due judicial proceedings; nor shall any lottery, or the sale of any lottery tickets,† pool-selling, book-making, or any other kind of gambling hereafter be authorized or allowed within this State; and the Legislature shall pass appropriate laws to prevent offences against any of the provisions of this section.

**§ 10. Escheats.**—The people of this State, in their right of sovereignty, are deemed to possess the original and ultimate property in and to all lands within the jurisdiction of the State; and all lands the title to which shall fail, from a defect of heirs, shall revert, or escheat to the people.

**§ 11. Feudal tenures abolished.**—All feudal tenures of every description, with all their incidents, are declared to be abolished, saving however all rents and services certain which at any time heretofore have been lawfully created or reserved.

**§ 12. Allodial tenures.**—All lands within this State are declared to be allodial, so that, subject only to the liability to escheat, the entire and absolute property is vested in the owners, according to the nature of their respective estates.

**§ 13. Leases of agricultural lands.**—No lease or grant of agricultural land, for a longer period than twelve years, hereafter made, in which shall be reserved any rent or service of any kind, shall be valid.

**§ 14. Fines and quarter sales abolished.**—All fines, quarter sales, or other like restraints upon alienation reserved in any grant of land, hereafter to be made, shall be void.

**§ 15. Purchase of lands of Indians.**—No purchase or contract for the sale of lands in this State made since the fourteenth day of October, one thousand seven hundred and seventy-five, or which may hereafter be made of, or with the Indians, shall be

valid, unless made under the authority, and with the consent of the Legislature.

§ 16. **Common law and acts of the Colonial and State Legislatures.**—Such parts of the common law, and of the acts of the Legislature of the Colony of New York, as together did form the law of the said Colony, on the nineteenth day of April, one thousand seven hundred and seventy-five, and the resolutions of the Congress of the said Colony, and of the convention of the State of New York, in force on the twentieth day of April, one thousand seven hundred and seventy-seven, which have not since expired, or been repealed or altered; and such acts of the Legislature of this State as are now in force, shall be and continue the law of this State, subject to such alterations as the Legislature shall make concerning the same. But all such parts of the common law and such of the said acts, or parts thereof, as are repugnant to this Constitution, are hereby abrogated.

§ 17. **Grants of land made by the King of Great Britain since 1775.**—All grants of land within the State, made by the king of Great Britain, or persons acting under his authority, after the fourteenth day of October, one thousand seven hundred and seventy-five, shall be null and void; but nothing contained in this Constitution shall affect any grants of land within this State, made by the authority of the said king or his predecessors, or shall annul any charters to bodies politic and corporate, by him or them made, before that day; or shall affect any such grants or charters since made by this State, or by persons acting under its authority; or shall impair the obligation of any debts contracted by the State, or individuals, or bodies corporate, or any other rights of property, or any suits, actions, rights of action, or other proceedings in courts of justice.

§ 18. **Damages for injuries causing death.**—† The right of action now existing to recover damages for injuries resulting in death, shall never be abrogated; and the amount recoverable shall not be subject to any statutory limitation.

## ARTICLE II—Voting

§ 1. **Qualification of voters.**—Every male citizen of the age of twenty-one years who shall have been a citizen for ninety days and an inhabitant of this State one year next preceding an election, and for the last four months a resident of the county and

for the last thirty days a resident of the election district in which he may offer his vote, shall be entitled to vote at such election in the election district of which he shall at the time be a resident, and not elsewhere, for all officers that now are or hereafter may be elective by the people, and upon all questions which may be submitted to the vote of the people, provided that in time of war no elector in the actual military service of the State, or of the United States, in the army or navy thereof, shall be deprived of his vote by reason of his absence from such election district; and the Legislature shall have power to provide the manner in which and the time and place at which such absent electors may vote, and for the return and canvass of their votes in the election districts in which they respectively reside.

§ 2. **Bribery.**—No person who shall receive, accept or offer to receive, or pay, offer or promise to pay, contribute, offer or promise to contribute to another, to be paid or used, any money or other valuable thing as a compensation or reward for the giving or withholding a vote at an election, or who shall make any promise to influence the giving or withholding any such vote, or who shall make or become directly or indirectly interested in any bet or wager depending upon the result of any election, shall vote at such election; and upon challenge for such cause, the person so challenged, before the officers authorized for that purpose shall receive his vote, shall swear or affirm before such officers that he has not received or offered, does not expect to receive, has not paid, offered or promised to pay, contributed, offered or promised to contribute to another, to be paid or used, any money or other valuable thing as a compensation or reward for the giving or withholding a vote at such election, and has not made any promise to influence the giving or withholding of any such vote, nor made or become directly or indirectly interested in any bet or wager depending upon the result of such election. † The Legislature shall enact laws excluding from the right of suffrage all persons convicted of bribery or of any infamous crime.

§ 3. **Residence for voting purposes.**—For the purpose of voting, no person shall be deemed to have gained or lost a residence, by reason of his presence or absence, while employed in the service of the United States; nor while engaged in the navigation of the waters of this State, or of the United States, or of the high seas; nor while a student of any seminary of learning; nor while kept at any alms-house, or other asylum,† or institution wholly or

partly supported at public expense or by charity; nor while confined in any public prison.

§ 4. **Registration and election laws to be passed.**—Laws shall be made for ascertaining by proper proofs the citizens who shall be entitled to the right of suffrage hereby established, and for the registration of voters, which registration shall be completed at least ten days before each election. † Such registration shall not be required for town and village elections except by express provision of law. In cities and villages having five thousand inhabitants or more, according to the last preceding state enumeration of inhabitants, voters shall be registered upon personal application only; but voters not residing in such cities or villages shall not be required to apply in person for registration at the first meeting of the officers having charge of the registry of voters.

§ 5. **Manner of voting.**—All elections by the citizens, except for such town officers as may by law be directed to be otherwise chosen, shall be by ballot,† or by such other method as may be prescribed by law, provided that secrecy in voting be preserved.

§ 6. **Registration and election boards to be bi-partisan, except at town and village elections.**—† All laws creating, regulating or affecting boards or officers charged with the duty of registering voters, or of distributing ballots at the polls to voters, or of receiving, recording or counting votes at elections, shall secure equal representation of the two political parties which, at the general election next preceding that for which such boards or officers are to serve, cast the highest and the next highest number of votes. All such boards and officers shall be appointed or elected in such manner, and upon the nomination of such representatives of said parties respectively, as the Legislature may direct. Existing laws on this subject shall continue until the Legislature shall otherwise provide. This section shall not apply to town meetings or to  
\* village elections.

### ARTICLE III—The Legislature

§ 1. **Two houses.**—The legislative power of this State shall be vested in a Senate and Assembly.

§ 2. **How constituted.**—† The Senate shall consist of fifty members, except as hereinafter provided. The Senators elected in the year 1895 shall hold their offices for three years, and their

successors shall be chosen for two years.\* The Assembly shall consist of one hundred and fifty members who shall be chosen for one year.

§ 3. Senate districts.—† The State shall be divided into fifty districts, to be called Senate districts, each of which shall choose one Senator. The districts shall be numbered from one to fifty inclusive. (For list of Senate districts see page 421.)

§ 4. How changed.—† An enumeration of the inhabitants of the State shall be taken under the direction of the Secretary of State, during the months of May and June, in the year 1895, and in the same months every tenth year thereafter; and the said districts shall be so altered by the Legislature at the first regular session after the return of every enumeration, that each Senate district shall contain as nearly as may be an equal number of inhabitants, excluding aliens, and be in as compact form as practicable, and shall remain unaltered until the return of another enumeration, and shall at all times consist of contiguous territory, and no county shall be divided in the formation of a senate district except to make two or more senate districts wholly in such county. No town, and no block in a city enclosed by streets or public ways, shall be divided in the formation of senate districts; nor shall any district contain a greater excess in population over an adjoining district in the same county, than the population of a town or block therein, adjoining such district. Counties, towns or blocks which, from their location, may be included in either of two districts, shall be so placed as to make said districts most nearly equal in number of inhabitants, excluding aliens.

No county shall have four or more senators unless it shall have a full ratio for each senator. No county shall have more than one-third of all the senators; and no two counties or the territory thereof as now organized, which are adjoining counties, or which are separated only by public waters, shall have more than one-half of all the senators.

The ratio for apportioning senators shall always be obtained by dividing the number of inhabitants, excluding aliens, by fifty, and the senate shall always be composed of fifty members, except that if any county having three or more senators at the time of any

---

\* To bring the elections of State officers on even-numbered years, and of municipal officers on odd-numbered years, it was necessary to rearrange the terms of office and the times of election of governor, State officers, senators, and municipal officers.



apportionment shall be entitled on such ratio to an additional senator or senators, such additional senator or senators shall be given to such county in addition to the fifty senators, and the whole number of senators shall be increased to that extent.

§ 5. **Assembly districts.**—† The members of the assembly shall be chosen by single districts, and shall be apportioned by the legislature at the first regular session after the return of every enumeration among the several counties of the State, as nearly as may be according to the number of their respective inhabitants, excluding aliens. Every county heretofore established and separately organized, except the county of Hamilton, shall always be entitled to one member of assembly, and no county shall hereafter be erected unless its population shall entitle it to a member. The county of Hamilton shall elect with the county of Fulton, until the population of the county of Hamilton shall, according to the ratio, entitle it to a member. But the legislature may abolish the said county of Hamilton and annex the territory thereof to some other county or counties.

The quotient obtained by dividing the whole number of inhabitants of the State, excluding aliens, by the number of members of assembly, shall be the ratio for apportionment, which shall be made as follows: One member of assembly shall be apportioned to every county, including Fulton and Hamilton as one county, containing less than the ratio and one-half over. Two members shall be apportioned to every other county. The remaining members of assembly shall be apportioned to the counties having more than two ratios according to the number of inhabitants, excluding aliens. Members apportioned on remainders shall be apportioned to the counties having the highest remainders in the order thereof respectively. No county shall have more members of assembly than a county having a greater number of inhabitants, excluding aliens.

Until after the next enumeration, members of the assembly shall be apportioned to the several counties as follows: (See page —.)

In any county entitled to more than one member, the board of supervisors, and in any city embracing an entire county and having no board of supervisors, the common council, or if there be none, the body exercising the powers of a common council, shall assemble on the second Tuesday of June 1895, and at such times as the legislature making an apportionment shall prescribe, and divide such counties into assembly districts as nearly equal in



number of inhabitants, excluding aliens, as may be, of convenient and contiguous territory in as compact form as practicable, each of which shall be wholly within a senate district formed under the same apportionment, equal to the number of members of assembly to which such county shall be entitled, and shall cause to be filed in the office of the Secretary of State and of the clerk of such county, a description of such districts, specifying the number of each district and of the inhabitants thereof, excluding aliens, according to the last preceding enumeration; and such apportionment and districts shall remain unaltered until another enumeration shall be made, as herein provided; but said division of the city of Brooklyn and the county of Kings to be made on the second Tuesday of June 1895, shall be made by the common council of said city and the board of supervisors of said county, assembled in joint session. In counties having more than one senate district, the same number of assembly districts shall be put in each senate district, unless the assembly districts cannot be evenly divided among the senate districts of any county, in which case one more assembly district shall be put in the senate district in such county having the largest, or one less assembly district shall be put in the senate district in such county having the smallest number of inhabitants, excluding aliens, as the case may require. No town, and no block in a city enclosed by streets or public ways, shall be divided in the formation of assembly districts, nor shall any district contain a greater excess in population over an adjoining district in the same senate district, than the population of a town or block therein adjoining such assembly district. Towns or blocks which, from their location, may be included in either of two districts, shall be so placed as to make said districts most nearly equal in number of inhabitants, excluding aliens; but in the division of cities under the first apportionment, regard shall be had to the number of inhabitants, excluding aliens, of the election districts according to the state enumeration of 1892, so far as may be, instead of blocks. Nothing in this section shall prevent the division, at any time, of counties and towns, and the erection of new towns by the legislature.

An apportionment by the legislature, or other body, shall be subject to review by the Supreme Court, at the suit of any citizen, under such reasonable regulations as the legislature may prescribe; and any court before which a cause may be pending involving an apportionment shall give precedence thereto over all other causes

and proceedings, and if said court be not in session it shall convene promptly for the disposition of the same.

**§ 6. Compensation of members.**—Each member of the legislature shall receive for his services an annual salary of one thousand five hundred dollars. The members of either house shall also receive the sum of one dollar for every ten miles they shall travel, in going to and returning from their place of meeting, once in each session, on the most usual route. Senators, when the senate alone is convened in extraordinary session, or when serving as members of the Court for the Trial of Impeachments, and such members of the assembly, not exceeding nine in number, as shall be appointed managers of an impeachment, shall receive an additional allowance of ten dollars a day. .

**§ 7. Civil appointments of members void.**—No member of the legislature shall receive any civil appointment within this State, or the senate of the United States, from the governor, the governor and senate, or from the legislature, or from any city government during the time for which he shall have been elected; and all such appointments and all votes given for any such member for any such office or appointment shall be void.

**§ 8. Persons disqualified from being members.**—No person shall be eligible to the legislature who, at the time of his election, is, or within one hundred days previous thereto has been, a member of congress, a civil or military officer under the United States, or an officer under any city government; and if any person shall, after his election as a member of the legislature, be elected to congress, or appointed to any office, civil or military, under the government of the United States, or under any city government, his acceptance thereof shall vacate his seat.

**§ 9. Time of elections.**—The elections of senators and members of assembly, pursuant to the provisions of this constitution, shall be held on the Tuesday succeeding the first Monday of November, unless otherwise directed by the legislature.

**§ 10. Quorum; rules; determining membership; officers of each house.**—A majority of each house shall constitute a quorum to do business. Each house shall determine the rules of its own proceedings, and be the judge of the elections, returns and qualifications of its own members; shall choose its own officers; and the senate shall choose a temporary president† to preside in case of the absence or impeachment of the lieutenant-governor, or when he shall refuse to act as president, or shall act as governor.

§ 11. **Journals; open sessions; adjournments.**—Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and publish the same, except such parts as may require secrecy. The doors of each house shall be kept open, except when the public welfare shall require secrecy. Neither house shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than two days.

§ 12. **Privilege, or freedom of debate.**—For any speech or debate in either house of the legislature, the members shall not be questioned in any other place. (No member is liable for slander or libel for any speech in the house.)

§ 13. **Bills may originate in either house.**—Any bill may originate in either house of the legislature, and all bills passed by one house may be amended by the other.

§ 14. **Enacting clause of bills.**—The enacting clause of all bills shall be "The people of the State of New York, represented in senate and assembly, do enact as follows," and no law shall be enacted except by bill.

§ 15. **Manner of passing bills.**—No bill shall be passed or become a law† unless it shall have been printed and upon the desks of the members, in its final form, at least three calendar legislative days prior to its final passage, unless the governor, or the acting governor, shall have certified to the necessity of its immediate passage, under his hand and the seal of the State; nor shall any bill be passed or become a law, except by the assent of a majority of the members elected to each branch of the legislature; and upon the last reading of a bill, no amendment thereof shall be allowed, and the question upon its final passage shall be taken immediately thereafter, and the yeas and nays entered on the journal.

§ 16. **Private bills.**—No private or local bill, which may be passed by the legislature, shall embrace more than one subject, and that shall be expressed in the title.

§ 17. **Existing laws made applicable, to be inserted in acts.**—No act shall be passed which shall provide that any existing law, or any part thereof, shall be made or deemed a part of said act, or which shall enact that any existing law, or part thereof, shall be applicable, except by inserting it in such act.

§ 18. **Cases in which private and local bills shall not be passed; restrictions as to laws authorizing street railroads.**—The legislature shall not pass a private or local bill in any of the following cases:

Changing the names of persons.

Laying out, opening, altering, working or discontinuing roads, highways or alleys, or for draining swamps or other low lands.

Locating or changing county seats.

Providing for changes of venue in civil or criminal cases.

Incorporating villages.

Providing for election of members of boards of supervisors.

Selecting, drawing, summoning or impanelling grand or petit jurors.

Regulating the rate of interest on money.

The opening and conducting of elections or designating places of voting.

Creating, increasing or decreasing fees, percentage or allowances of public officers, during the term for which said officers are elected or appointed.

Granting to any corporation, association or individual the right to lay down railroad tracks.

Granting to any private corporation, association or individual any exclusive privilege, immunity or franchise whatever.

Providing for building bridges, and chartering companies for such purposes, except on the Hudson river below Waterford, and on the East river, or over the waters forming a part of the boundaries of the State.

The legislature shall pass general laws providing for the cases enumerated in this section, and for all other cases which in its judgment may be provided for by general laws. But no law shall authorize the construction or operation of a street railroad except upon the condition that the consent of the owners of one-half in value the property bounded on, and the consent also of the local authorities having the control of that portion of a street or highway upon which it is proposed to construct or operate such railroad be first obtained, or in case the consent of such property owners cannot be obtained, the appellate division of the Supreme Court, in the department in which it is proposed to be constructed, may, upon application, appoint three commissioners who shall determine, after a hearing of all parties interested, whether such railroad ought to be constructed or operated, and their determination, confirmed by the court, may be taken in lieu of the consent of the property owners.

§ 19. Private claims not to be audited by legislature.—The legislature shall neither audit nor allow any private claim or account

against the State, but may appropriate money to pay such claims as shall have been audited and allowed according to law.

**§ 20. Two-thirds bills.**—The assent of two-thirds of the members elected to each branch of the legislature shall be requisite to every bill appropriating the public moneys or property for local or private purposes.

**§ 21. Appropriation bills.**—No money shall ever be paid out of the treasury of this State, or any of its funds, or any of the funds under its management, except in pursuance of an appropriation by law; nor unless such payment be made within two years next after the passage of such appropriation act; and every such law making a new appropriation, or continuing or reviving an appropriation, shall distinctly specify the sum appropriated, and the object to which it is to be applied; and it shall not be sufficient for such law to refer to any other law to fix such sum.

**§ 22. Restrictions as to provisions in the appropriation or supply bills (i.e., prohibiting "riders" on appropriation bills.)**—† No provision or enactment shall be embraced in the annual appropriation or supply bill, unless it relates specifically to some particular appropriation in the bill; and any such provision or enactment shall be limited in its operation to such appropriation.

**§ 23. Certain sections not to apply to commission bills.**—Sections seventeen and eighteen of this article shall not apply to any bill, or the amendments to any bill, which shall be reported to the legislature by commissioners who have been appointed pursuant to law to revise the statutes.

**§ 24. Tax bills to state tax distinctly.**—Every law which imposes, continues or revives a tax shall distinctly state the tax and the object to which it is to be applied, and it shall not be sufficient to refer to any other law to fix such tax or object.

**§ 25. When ayes and nays are necessary: three-fifths to constitute a quorum for money-bills.**—On the final passage, in either house of the legislature, of any act which imposes, continues or revives a tax, or creates a debt or charge, or makes, continues or revives any appropriation of public or trust money or property, or releases, discharges or commutes any claim or demand of the State, the question shall be taken by yeas and nays, which shall be duly entered upon the journals, and three-fifths of all the members elected to either house shall, in all such cases, be necessary to constitute a quorum therein.

**§ 26. Boards of supervisors.**—There shall be in the several coun-



ties, except in cities whose boundaries are the same as those of the county, a board of supervisors, to be composed of such members, and elected in such manner, and for such period, as is or may be provided by law. In any such city the duties and powers of a board of supervisors may be devolved upon the common council or board of aldermen thereof.

§ 27. **Local legislative powers.**—The legislature shall, by general laws, confer upon the boards of supervisors of the several counties of the State such further powers of local legislation and administration as the legislature may from time to time deem expedient.

§ 28. **Extra compensation prohibited.**—The legislature shall not, nor shall the common council of any city nor any board of supervisors, grant any extra compensation to any public officer, servant, agent or contractor.

§ 29. **Prison labor: contract system abolished.**—† The legislature shall, by law, provide for the occupation and employment of prisoners sentenced to the several state prisons, penitentiaries, jails and reformatories in the State; and on and after the first day of January, in the year 1897, no person in any such prison, penitentiary, jail or reformatory, shall be required or allowed to work, while under sentence thereto, at any trade, industry, or occupation, wherein or whereby his work, or the product or profit of his work, shall be farmed out, contracted, given or sold to any person, firm, association or corporation. This section shall not be construed to prevent the legislature from providing that convicts may work for, and that the products of their labor may be disposed of to, the State or any political division thereof, or for or to any public institution owned or managed and controlled by the State, or any political division thereof.

#### ARTICLE IV—The Governor and Lieutenant-Governor

§ 1. **Executive power; term of office.**—The executive power shall be vested in a governor, who shall hold his office for† two years; \* a lieutenant-governor shall be chosen at the same time, and for the same term. The governor and lieutenant-governor elected next preceding the time when this section shall take effect shall hold office until and including the thirty-first day of December 1896,

---

\* See foot-note on page 385.



and their successors shall be chosen at the general election in that year.

§ 2. **Eligibility.**—No person shall be eligible to the office of governor or lieutenant-governor, except a citizen of the United States, of the age of not less than thirty years, and who shall have been five years, next preceding his election, a resident of this State.

§ 3. **Election.**—The governor and lieutenant-governor shall be elected at the times and places of choosing members of the assembly. The persons respectively having the highest number of votes for governor and lieutenant-governor, shall be elected; but in case two or more shall have an equal and the highest number of votes for governor, or for lieutenant-governor, the two houses of the legislature, at its next annual session, shall, forthwith, by joint ballot, choose one of the said persons so having an equal and the highest number of votes for governor or lieutenant-governor.

§ 4. **Duties and powers of governor; compensation.**—The governor shall be commander-in-chief of the military and naval forces of the State. He shall have power to convene the legislature (or the senate only) on extraordinary occasions. At extraordinary sessions no subject shall be acted upon, except such as the governor may recommend for consideration. He shall communicate by message to the legislature at every session the condition of the State, and recommend such matters to it as he shall judge expedient. He shall transact all necessary business with the officers of government, civil and military. He shall expedite all such measures as may be resolved upon by the legislature, and shall take care that the laws are faithfully executed. He shall receive for his services an annual salary of ten thousand dollars, and there shall be provided for his use a suitable and furnished executive residence.

§ 5. **Reprieves, commutations and pardons.**—The governor shall have the power to grant reprieves, commutations and pardons after conviction, for all offences except treason and cases of impeachment, upon such conditions, and with such restrictions and limitations, as he may think proper, subject to such regulations as may be provided by law relative to the manner of applying for pardons. Upon conviction for treason, he shall have power to suspend the execution of the sentence, until the case shall be reported to the legislature at its next meeting, when the legislature shall either pardon, or commute the sentence, direct the execution of the sentence, or grant a further reprieve. He shall annually com-

municate to the legislature each case of reprieve, commutation or pardon granted: stating the name of the convict, the crime of which he was convicted, the sentence and its date, and the date of the commutation, pardon or reprieve.

§ 6. **Power may devolve on lieutenant-governor.**—In case of the impeachment of the governor, or his removal from office, death, inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, resignation or absence from the State, the powers and duties of the office shall devolve upon the lieutenant-governor for the residue of the term, or until the disability shall cease. But when the governor shall, with the consent of the legislature, be out of the State in time of war, at the head of a military force thereof, he shall continue commander-in-chief of all the military force of the State.

§ 7. **Qualifications and duties of lieutenant-governor.** † **Gubernatorial succession.**—The lieutenant-governor shall possess the same qualifications of eligibility for office as the governor. He shall be president of the senate, but shall have only a casting vote therein. If, during a vacancy of the office of governor, the lieutenant-governor shall be impeached, displaced, resign, die, or become incapable of performing the duties of his office, or be absent from the State, the president of the senate shall act as governor until the vacancy be filled, or the disability shall cease; ‡ and if the president of the senate for any of the above causes shall become incapable of performing the duties to the office of governor, the speaker of the assembly shall act as governor until the vacancy be filled or the disability shall cease.

§ 8. **Salary of lieutenant-governor.**—The lieutenant-governor shall receive for his services an annual salary of five thousand dollars, and shall not receive or be entitled to any other compensation, fee or perquisite for any duty or service he may be required to perform by the constitution or by law.

§ 9. **Bills to be presented to governor; approval or veto; passage of bill by legislature if vetoed.**—Every bill which shall have passed the senate and assembly shall, before it becomes a law, be presented to the governor: if he approve, he shall sign it; but if not, he shall return it with his objections to the house in which it shall have originated, which shall enter the objections at large on the journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of the members elected to that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent together with the objections to the other house by which it shall likewise be reconsidered; and

if approved by two-thirds of the members elected to that house, it shall become a law notwithstanding the objections of the governor. In all such cases the votes in both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the members voting shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the governor within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the legislature shall, by their adjournment, prevent its return, in which case it shall not become a law without the approval of the governor. No bill shall become a law after the final adjournment of the legislature, unless approved by the governor within thirty days after such adjournment. If any bill presented to the governor contain several items of appropriation of money, he may object to one or more of such items while approving of the other portion of the bill. In such case, he shall append to the bill, at the time of signing it, a statement of the items to which he objects; and the appropriation so objected to shall not take effect. If the legislature be in session he shall transmit to the house in which the bill originated a copy of such statement, and the items objected to shall be separately reconsidered. If, on reconsideration, one or more of such items be approved by two-thirds of the members elected to each house, the same shall be part of the law, notwithstanding the objections of the governor. All the provisions of this section, in relation to bills not approved by the governor, shall apply in cases in which he shall withhold his approval from any item or items contained in a bill appropriating money.

#### ARTICLE V—Other State Officers

§ 1. **State officers.**—The secretary of state, comptroller, treasurer, attorney-general and state engineer and surveyor shall be chosen at a general election, at the times and places of electing the governor and lieutenant-governor, and shall hold their offices for two years, except as provided in section two of this article. Each of the officers in this article named, excepting the speaker of the assembly, shall, at stated times during his continuance in office, receive for his services a compensation which shall not be increased or diminished during the term for which he shall have been elected; nor shall he receive to his use any fees or perquisites of office, or other compensation. † No person shall be elected to the

office of state engineer and surveyor who is not a practical civil engineer.

§ 2. When elected; terms of office.—† The first election of the secretary of State, comptroller, treasurer, attorney-general and State engineer and surveyor, pursuant to this article, shall be held in the year 1895, and their terms of office shall begin on the first day of January following, and shall be for three years. At the general election in the year 1898, and every two years thereafter, their successors shall be chosen for the term of two years.\*

§ 3. Superintendent of public works.—A superintendent of public works shall be appointed by the governor, by and with the advice and consent of the senate, and hold his office until the end of the term of the governor by whom he was nominated, and until his successor is appointed and qualified. He shall receive a compensation to be fixed by law. He shall be required by law to give security for the faithful execution of his office before entering upon the duties thereof. He shall be charged with the execution of all laws relating to the repair and navigation of the canals, and also of those relating to the construction and improvement of the canals, except so far as the execution of the laws relating to such construction or improvement shall be confided to the State engineer and surveyor; subject to the control of the legislature, he shall make the rules and regulations for the navigation or use of the canals. He may be suspended or removed from office by the governor, whenever, in his judgment, the public interest shall so require; but in case of the removal of such superintendent of public works from office, the governor shall file with the secretary of State a statement of the cause of such removal, and shall report such removal, and the cause thereof, to the legislature at its next session. The superintendent of public works shall appoint not more than three assistant superintendents, whose duties shall be prescribed by him, subject to modification by the legislature, and who shall receive for their services a compensation to be fixed by law. They shall hold their office for three years, subject to suspension or removal by the superintendent of public works, whenever, in his judgment, the public interest shall so require. Any vacancy in the office of any such assistant superintendent shall be filled for the remainder of the term for which he was appointed by the superintendent of public works; but in case of

---

\* See foot-note on page 385,

the suspension or removal of any such assistant superintendent by him, he shall at once report to the governor, in writing, the cause of such removal. All other persons employed in the care and management of the canals, except collectors of tolls, and those in the department of the State engineer and surveyor, shall be appointed by the superintendent of public works, and be subject to suspension or removal by him. The superintendent of public works shall perform all the duties of the canal commissioners, and board of canal commissioners, as now declared by law, until otherwise provided by the legislature. The governor, by and with the advice and consent of the senate, shall have power to fill vacancies in the office of superintendent of public works; if the senate be not in session, he may grant commissions which shall expire at the end of the next succeeding session of the senate.

**§ 4. Superintendent of State prisons.**—A superintendent of State prisons shall be appointed by the governor, by and with the advice and consent of the senate, and hold his office for five years unless sooner removed; he shall give security in such amount, and with such sureties as shall be required by law for the faithful discharge of his duties; he shall have the superintendence, management and control of State prisons, subject to such laws as now exist or may hereafter be enacted; he shall appoint the agents, wardens, physicians and chaplains of the prisons. The agent and warden of each prison shall appoint all other officers of such prison, except the clerk, subject to the approval of the same by the superintendent. The comptroller shall appoint the clerks of the prisons. The superintendent shall have all the powers and perform all the duties not inconsistent herewith, which were formerly had and performed by the inspectors of State prisons. The governor may remove the superintendent for cause at any time, giving to him a copy of the charges against him, and an opportunity to be heard in his defence.

**§ 5. Commissioners of the land office; of the canal fund; canal board.**—The lieutenant-governor, speaker of the assembly, secretary of State, comptroller, treasurer, attorney-general and State engineer and surveyor, shall be the commissioners of the land office. The lieutenant-governor, secretary of State, comptroller, treasurer and attorney-general shall be the commissioners of the canal fund. The canal board shall consist of the commissioners of the canal fund, the State engineer and surveyor, and the superintendent of public works.



§ 6. **Powers and duties of boards.**—The powers and duties of the respective boards, and of the several officers in this article mentioned, shall be such as now are or hereafter may be prescribed by law.

§ 7. **State treasurer may be suspended.**—The treasurer may be suspended from office by the governor, during the recess of the legislature, and until thirty days after the commencement of the next session of the legislature, whenever it shall appear to him that such treasurer has, in any particular, violated his duty. The governor shall appoint a competent person to discharge the duties of the office during such suspension of the treasurer.

§ 8. **Certain offices abolished.**—All offices for the weighing, gauging, measuring, culling or inspecting any merchandise, produce, manufacture or commodity whatever, are hereby abolished, and no such office shall hereafter be created by law; but nothing in this section contained shall abrogate any office created for the purpose of protecting the public health or the interests of the State in its property, revenue, tolls, or purchases, or of supplying the people with correct standards of weights and measures, or shall prevent the creation of any office for such purposes hereafter.

§ 9. † **Civil service.**—Appointments and promotions in the civil service of the State, and of all the civil divisions thereof, including cities and villages, shall be made according to merit and fitness to be ascertained, so far as practicable, by examinations, which, so far as practicable, shall be competitive; provided, however, that honorably discharged soldiers and sailors from the army and navy of the United States in the late civil war, who are citizens and residents of this State, shall be entitled to preference in appointment and promotion, without regard to their standing on any list from which such appointment or promotion may be made. Laws shall be made to provide for the enforcement of this section.

## ARTICLE VI—The Judiciary

§ 1. **Supreme Court; how constituted; judicial districts.**—† The Supreme Court is continued with general jurisdiction in law and equity, subject to such appellate jurisdiction of the Court of Appeals as now is or may be prescribed by law not inconsistent with this article. The existing judicial districts of the State are continued until changed as hereinafter provided. The Supreme Court shall consist of the justices now in office, and of the judges trans-



ferred thereto by the fifth section of this article, all of whom shall continue to be justices of the Supreme Court during their respective terms, and of twelve additional justices who shall reside in, and be chosen by the electors of, the several existing judicial districts, three in the first district, three in the second, and one in each of the other districts; and of their successors. The successors of said justices shall be chosen by the electors of their respective judicial districts. The legislature may alter the judicial districts once after every enumeration, under the constitution, of the inhabitants of the State, and thereupon reapportion the justices to be thereafter elected in the district so altered.

§ 2. **Judicial departments; appellate division; governor to designate justices; time and place of holding court.**—† The legislature shall divide the State into four judicial departments. The first department shall consist of the County of New York; the others shall be bounded by county lines, and be compact and equal in population as nearly as may be. Once every ten years the legislature may alter the judicial departments, but without increasing the number thereof.

There shall be an appellate division of the Supreme Court, consisting of seven justices in the first department, and of five justices in each of the other departments. In each department four shall constitute a quorum, and the concurrence of three shall be necessary to a decision. No more than five justices shall sit in any case.

From all the justices elected to the Supreme Court the governor shall designate those who shall constitute the appellate division in each department; and he shall designate the presiding justice thereof, who shall act as such during his term of office, and shall be a resident of the department. The other justices shall be designated for terms of five years, or the unexpired portions of their respective terms of offices, if less than five years. From time to time as the terms of such designations expire, or vacancies occur, he shall make new designations. He may also make temporary designations, in case of the absence or inability to act, of any justice in the appellate division. A majority of the justices designated to sit in the appellate division in each department shall be residents of the department. Whenever the appellate division in any department shall be unable to dispose of its business within a reasonable time, a majority of the presiding justices of the several departments, at a meeting called by the presiding justice of the department in arrears, may transfer any pending appeals from

such department to any other department for hearing and determination. No justice of the appellate division shall exercise any of the powers of a justice of the Supreme Court, other than those of a justice out of court, and those pertaining to the appellate division or to the hearing and decision of motions submitted by consent of counsel. From and after the last day of December 1895, the appellate division shall have the jurisdiction now exercised by the Supreme Court at its general terms, and by the general terms of the Court of Common Pleas for the City and County of New York, the Superior Court of the City of New York, the Superior Court of Buffalo and the City Court of Brooklyn, and such additional jurisdiction as may be conferred by the legislature. It shall have power to appoint and remove a reporter.

The justices of the appellate division in each department shall have power to fix the times and places for holding special and trial terms therein, and to assign the justices in the departments to hold such terms; or to make rules therefor.

**§ 3. Judge or justice not to sit in review; testimony in equity cases.**—† No judge or justice shall sit in the appellate division or in the Court of Appeals in review of a decision made by him or by any court of which he was at the time a sitting member. The testimony in equity cases shall be taken in like manner as in cases at law; and, except as herein otherwise provided, the legislature shall have the same power to alter and regulate the jurisdiction and proceedings in law and in equity that it has heretofore exercised.

**§ 4. Terms of office; vacancies, how filled.**—† The official terms of the justices of the Supreme Court shall be fourteen years from and including the first day of January next after their election. When a vacancy shall occur otherwise than by expiration of term in the office of justices of the Supreme Court, the same shall be filled for a full term, at the next general election, happening not less than three months after such vacancy occurs; and, until the vacancy shall be so filled, the governor by and with the advice and consent of the senate, if the senate shall be in session, or if not in session, the governor may fill such vacancy by appointment, which shall continue until and including the last day of December next after the election at which the vacancy shall be filled.

**§ 5. City courts abolished; judges become justices of Supreme Court; salaries; jurisdiction vested in Supreme Court.**—† The Superior Court of the City of New York, the Court of Common

Pleas for the City and County of New York, the Superior Court of Buffalo, and the City Court of Brooklyn, are abolished from and after the first day of January 1896, and thereupon the seals, records, papers and documents of or belonging to such courts shall be deposited in the offices of the clerks of the several counties in which said courts now exist; and all actions and proceedings then pending in such courts shall be transferred to the Supreme Court for hearing and determination. The judges of said courts in office on the first day of January 1896, shall, for the remainder of the terms for which they were elected or appointed, be justices of the Supreme Court; but they shall sit only in the counties in which they were elected or appointed. Their salaries shall be paid by the said counties respectively, and shall be the same as the salaries of the other justices of the Supreme Court residing in the same counties. Their successors shall be elected as justices of the Supreme Court by the electors of the judicial districts in which they respectively reside.

The jurisdiction now exercised by the several courts hereby abolished shall be vested in the Supreme Court. Appeals from inferior and local courts now heard in the Court of Common Pleas for the City and County of New York and the Superior Court of Buffalo shall be heard in the Supreme Court in such manner and by such justice or justices as the appellate division in the respective departments which include New York and Buffalo shall direct, unless otherwise provided by the legislature.

**§ 6. Circuit courts and courts of Oyer and Terminer abolished.**—† Circuit courts and courts of Oyer and Terminer are abolished from and after the last day of December 1895. All their jurisdiction shall thereupon be vested in the Supreme Court, and all actions and proceedings then pending in such courts shall be transferred to the Supreme Court for hearing and determination. Any justice of the Supreme Court, except as otherwise provided in this article, may hold court in any county.

**§ 7. Court of Appeals.**—† The Court of Appeals is continued. It shall consist of the chief judge and associate judges now in office, who shall hold their offices until the expiration of their respective terms, and their successors, who shall be chosen by the electors of the State. The official terms of the chief judge and associate judges shall be fourteen years from and including the first day of January next after their election. Five members of the court shall form a quorum, and the concurrence of four shall

be necessary to a decision. The court shall have power to appoint and to remove its reporter, clerk and attendants.

§ 8. **Vacancies in Court of Appeals; how filled.**—When a vacancy shall occur, otherwise than by expiration of term, in the office of chief or associate judge of the Court of Appeals, the same shall be filled, for a full term, at the next general election happening not less than three months after such vacancy occurs; and until the vacancy shall be so filled, the governor by and with the advice and consent of the senate, if the senate shall be in session, or if not, the governor may fill such vacancy by appointment. † If any such appointment of chief judge shall be made from among the associate judges, a temporary appointment of associate judge shall be made in like manner; but in such case, the person appointed chief judge shall not be deemed to vacate his office of associate judge any longer than until the expiration of his appointment as chief judge. The powers and jurisdiction of the court shall not be suspended for want of appointment or election, when the number of judges is sufficient to constitute a quorum. All appointments under this section shall continue until and including the last day of December next after the election at which the vacancy shall be filled.

§ 9. **Jurisdiction of Court of Appeals.**—† After the last day of December 1895, the jurisdiction of the Court of Appeals, except where the judgment is of death, shall be limited to the review of questions of law. No unanimous decision of the Appellate Division of the Supreme Court that there is evidence supporting or tending to sustain a finding of fact or a verdict not directed by the court, shall be reviewed by the Court of Appeals. Except where the judgment is of death, appeals may be taken as of right to said court only from judgments or orders entered upon decisions of the Appellate Division of the Supreme Court, finally determining actions or special proceedings, and from orders granting new trials on exceptions, where the appellants stipulate that upon affirmance judgment absolute shall be rendered against them. The Appellate Division in any department may, however, allow an appeal upon any question of law which, in its opinion, ought to be reviewed by the Court of Appeals.

§ 10. **Judges not to hold any other office.**—The judges of the Court of Appeals, and the justices of the Supreme Court, shall not hold any other office or public trust. All votes for any of

them for any other than a judicial office, given by the legislature or the people, shall be void.

**§ 11. Removal of judges.**—Judges of the Court of Appeals and Justices of the Supreme Court may be removed by concurrent resolution of both houses of the legislature, if two-thirds of all the members elected to each house concur therein. All other judicial officers, except justices of the peace and judges or justices of inferior courts not of record, may be removed by the senate, on the recommendation of the governor, if two-thirds of all the members elected to the senate concur therein. But no officer shall be removed by virtue of this section except for cause, which shall be entered on the journals, nor unless he shall have been served with a statement of the cause alleged, and shall have had an opportunity to be heard. On the question of removal, the yeas and nays shall be entered on the journal.

**§ 12. Compensation of judges; age restriction; assignment by governor.**—The judges and justices hereinbefore mentioned shall receive for their services a compensation established by law, which shall not be increased or diminished during their official terms, except as provided in section five of this article. No person shall hold the office of judge or justice of any court longer than until and including the last day of December next after he shall be seventy years of age. No judge or justice elected after the first day of January 1894, shall be entitled to receive any compensation after the last day of December next after he shall be seventy years of age; but the compensation of every judge of the Court of Appeals or justice of the Supreme Court elected prior to the first day of January 1894, whose term of office has been, or whose present term of office shall be, so abridged, and who shall have served as such judge or justice ten years or more, shall be continued during the remainder of the term for which he was elected; but any such judge or justice may, with his consent, be assigned by the governor, from time to time, to any duty in the Supreme Court while his compensation is so continued.

**§ 13. Trial of impeachments.**—The assembly shall have the power of impeachment by a vote of a majority of all the members elected. The court for the trial of impeachments shall be composed of the president of the senate, the senators, or a major part of them, and the judges of the Court of Appeals, or the major part of them. On the trial of an impeachment against the governor, the lieutenant-governor shall not act as a member of the



court. No judicial officer shall exercise his office, after articles of impeachment against him shall have been preferred to the senate, until he shall have been acquitted. Before the trial of an impeachment the members of the court shall take an oath or affirmation, truly and impartially to try the impeachment, according to the evidence; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present. Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, or removal from office and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust or profit under this State; but the party impeached shall be liable to indictment and punishment according to law.

§ 14. **County courts.**—† The existing county courts are continued, and the judges thereof now in office shall hold their offices until the expiration of their respective terms. In the County of Kings there shall be two county judges and the additional county judge shall be chosen at the next general election held after the adoption of this article. The successors of the several county judges shall be chosen by the electors of the counties for the term of six years. County courts shall have the powers and jurisdiction they now possess, and also original jurisdiction in actions for the recovery of money only, where the defendants reside in the county, and in which the complaint demands judgment for a sum not exceeding two thousand dollars. The legislature may hereafter enlarge or restrict the jurisdiction of the county courts, provided, however, that their jurisdiction shall not be so extended as to authorize an action therein for the recovery of money only, in which the sum demanded exceeds two thousand dollars, or in which any person not a resident of the county is a defendant.

Courts of Sessions, except in the County of New York, are abolished from and after the last day of December 1895. All the jurisdiction of the Court of Sessions in each county, except the County of New York, shall thereupon be vested in the County Court thereof, and all actions and proceedings then pending in such Courts of Sessions shall be transferred to said County Courts for hearing and determination. Every County Judge shall perform such duties as may be required by law. His salary shall be established by law, payable out of the county treasury. A County Judge of any county may hold County Courts in any other county when requested by the judge of such other county.

§ 15. **Surrogates' Courts.**—† The existing Surrogates' Courts are



continued, and the Surrogates now in office shall hold their offices until the expiration of their terms. Their successors shall be chosen by the electors of their respective counties, and their terms of office shall be six years, except in the County of New York, where they shall continue to be fourteen years. Surrogates and Surrogates' Courts shall have the jurisdiction and powers which the Surrogates' and existing Surrogates' Courts now possess, until otherwise provided by the Legislature. The County Judge shall be Surrogate of his county, except where a separate Surrogate has been or shall be elected. In counties having a population exceeding forty thousand, wherein there is no separate Surrogate, the Legislature may provide for the election of a separate officer to be Surrogate, whose term of office shall be six years. When the Surrogate shall be elected as a separate officer, his salary shall be established by law, payable out of the county treasury. No County Judge or Surrogate shall hold office longer than until and including the last day of December next after he shall be seventy years of age. Vacancies occurring in the office of County Judge or Surrogate shall be filled in the same manner as like vacancies occurring in the Supreme Court. The compensation of any County Judge or Surrogate shall not be increased or diminished during his term of office. For the relief of Surrogates' Courts the Legislature may confer upon the Supreme Court in any county having a population exceeding four hundred thousand, the powers and jurisdiction of Surrogates, with authority to try issues of fact by jury in probate cases.

§ 16. **Local judicial officers.**—The Legislature may, on application of the Board of Supervisors, provide for the election of local officers, not to exceed two in any county, to discharge the duties of County Judge and of Surrogate, in cases of their inability, or of a vacancy, and in such other cases as may be provided by law, and to exercise such other powers in special cases as are or may be provided by law.

§ 17. **Justices of the peace; district court justices.**—The electors of the several towns shall, at their annual town meetings, or at such other times and in such manner as the Legislature may direct, elect Justices of the Peace, whose term of office shall be four years. In case of an election to fill a vacancy occurring before the expiration of a full term, they shall hold for the residue of the unexpired term. Their number and classification may be regulated by law. Justices of the Peace, and judges or justices of in-

ferior courts not of record and their clerks may be removed for cause, after due notice and an opportunity of being heard by such courts as are or may be prescribed by law. Justices of the Peace and District Court justices may be elected in the different cities of this State, in such manner, and with such powers, and for such terms, respectively, as are or shall be prescribed by law; all other judicial officers in cities, whose election or appointment is not otherwise provided for in this article, shall be chosen by the electors of such cities, or appointed by some local authorities thereof.

§ 18. **Inferior local courts.**—Inferior local courts\* of civil and criminal jurisdiction may be established by the Legislature,† but no inferior local court hereafter created shall be a Court of Record. The Legislature shall not hereafter confer upon any inferior or local court of its creation any equity jurisdiction or any greater jurisdiction in other respects than is conferred upon County Courts, by or under this article. Except as herein otherwise provided, all judicial officers shall be elected or appointed at such times and in such manner as the Legislature may direct.

§ 19. **Clerks of courts.**—Clerks of the several counties shall be Clerks of the Supreme Court, with such powers and duties as shall be prescribed by law. † The justices of the Appellate Division in each department shall have power to appoint and to remove a clerk who shall keep his office at a place to be designated by said justices. The Clerk of the Court of Appeals shall keep his office at the seat of government. The Clerk of the Court of Appeals and the Clerks of the Appellate Division shall receive compensation to be established by law and paid out of the public treasury.

§ 20. **No judicial officer, except Justices of the Peace, to receive fees; not to act as attorney or counsellor.**—No judicial officer, except Justices of the Peace, shall receive to his own use any fees or perquisites of office; nor shall any Judge of the Court of Appeals, or Justice of the Supreme Court, † or any County Judge or Surrogate hereafter elected in a county having a population exceeding one hundred and twenty thousand, practise as an attorney or counsellor in any Court of Record in this State, or act as referee. The Legislature may impose a similar prohibition upon County Judges and Surrogates in other counties. No one shall be eligible to the office of Judge of the Court of Appeals, Justice of the Supreme Court, or, except in the County of Hamilton, to the

---

\* i.e., police courts, marine courts, district court in New York City, etc.

office of County Judge or Surrogate, who is not an attorney and counsellor of this State.

§ 21. **Publication of statutes.**—The Legislature shall provide for the speedy publication of all statutes, and shall regulate the reporting of the decisions of the courts; but all laws and judicial decisions shall be free for publication by any person.

§ 22. **Terms of office of present justices of the peace, and local judicial officers.**—† Justices of the peace and other local judicial officers provided for in sections seventeen and eighteen, in office when this article takes effect, shall hold their offices until the expiration of their respective terms.

§ 23. **Courts of special sessions.**—Courts of special session shall have such jurisdiction of offences of the grade of misdemeanors as may be prescribed by law.

## ARTICLE VII—Property and Debts of the State

§ 1. **State credit not to be given.**—The credit of the State shall not, in any manner, be given or loaned to, or in aid of any individual, association or corporation.

§ 2. **State debts; power to contract.**—The State may, to meet casual deficits or failures in revenues, or for expenses not provided for, contract debts, but such debts, direct or contingent, singly or in the aggregate, shall not, at any time, exceed one million of dollars; and the moneys arising from the loans creating such debts shall be applied to the purpose for which they were obtained, or to repay the debt so contracted, and to no other purpose whatever.

§ 3. **State debts to repel invasions.**—In addition to the above limited power to contract debts, the State may contract debts to repel invasion, suppress insurrection, or defend the State in war; but the money arising from the contracting of such debts shall be applied to the purpose for which it was raised, or to repay such debts, and to no other purpose whatever.

§ 4. **Limitation of legislative power to create debts.**—Except the debts specified in sections two and three of this article, no debts shall be hereafter contracted by or on behalf of this State, unless such debts shall be authorized by a law, for some single work or object, to be distinctly specified therein; and such law shall impose and provide for the collection of a direct annual tax to pay, and sufficient to pay the interest on such debt as it falls

due and also to pay and discharge the principal of such debt within eighteen years from the time of the contracting thereof. No such law shall take effect until it shall, at a general election, have been submitted to the people, and have received a majority of all the votes cast for and against it, at such election. On the final passage of such bill in either house of the Legislature, the question shall be taken by ayes and noes, to be duly entered on the journals thereof, and shall be: "Shall this bill pass, and ought the same to receive the sanction of the people?"

The Legislature may at any time, after the approval of such law by the people, if no debt shall have been contracted in pursuance thereof, repeal the same; and may at any time, by law, forbid the contracting of any further debt or liability under such law; but the tax imposed by such act, in proportion to the debt and liability which may have been contracted, in pursuance of such law, shall remain in force and be irrepealable, and be annually collected, until the proceeds thereof shall have made the provision hereinbefore specified to pay and discharge the interest and principal of such debt and liability. The money arising from any loan or stock creating such debt or liability shall be applied to the work or object specified in the act authorizing such debt or liability, or for the repayment of such debt or liability, and for no other purpose whatever. No such law shall be submitted to be voted on, within three months after its passage, or at any general election, when any other law or any bill, or any amendment to the Constitution shall be submitted to be voted for or against.

§ 5. **Sinking funds, how kept and invested.**—The sinking funds provided for the payment of interest and the extinguishment of the principal of the debts of the State shall be separately kept and safely invested, and neither of them shall be appropriated or used in any manner other than for the specific purpose for which it shall have been provided.

§ 6. **Claims barred by statute of limitations.**—Neither the Legislature, Canal Board, nor any person or persons acting in behalf of the State, shall audit, allow or pay any claim which, as between citizens of the State, would be barred by lapse of time. This provision shall not be construed to repeal any statute fixing the time within which claims shall be presented or allowed, nor shall it extend to any claims duly presented within the time allowed by law, and prosecuted with due diligence from the time of such presentment. But if the claimant shall be under legal disability, the

claim may be presented within two years after such disability is removed.

**§ 7. Forest preserve.**—† The lands of the State, now owned or hereafter acquired, constituting the forest preserve as now fixed by law, shall be forever kept as wild forest lands. They shall not be leased, sold or exchanged, or be taken by any corporation, public or private, nor shall the timber thereon be sold, removed, or destroyed.

**§ 8. Canals, not to be sold; disposition of funds.**—The Legislature shall not sell, lease, or otherwise dispose of the Erie canal, the Oswego canal, the Champlain canal, the Cayuga and Seneca canal, or the Black River canal, but they shall remain the property of the State and under its management forever. The prohibition of lease, sale or other disposition herein contained, shall not apply to the canal known as the Main and Hamburg street canal, situated in the city of Buffalo, and which extends easterly from the westerly line of Main street to the westerly line of Hamburg street. All funds that may be derived from any lease, sale or other disposition of any canal shall be applied to the improvement, superintendence or repair of the remaining portion of the canals.

**§ 9. Canals, tolls, expenses, contracts.**—No tolls shall hereafter be imposed on persons or property transported on the canals, but all boats navigating the canals, and the owners and masters thereof, shall be subject to such laws and regulations as have been or may hereafter be enacted concerning the navigation of the canals. The Legislature shall annually, by equitable taxes, make provision for the expenses of the superintendence and repairs of the canals. All contracts for work or materials on any canal shall be made with the person who shall offer to do or provide the same at the lowest price with adequate security for their performance. No extra compensation shall be made to any contractor; but if, from any unforeseen cause, the terms of any contract shall prove to be unjust and oppressive, the Canal Board may, upon the application of the contractor, cancel such contract.

**§ 10. Canal improvement and cost thereof.**—† The canals may be improved in such manner as the Legislature shall provide by law. A debt may be authorized for that purpose in the mode described by section four of this article, or the cost of such improvement may be defrayed by the appropriation of funds from the State treasury, or by equitable annual tax.



**ARTICLE VIII—Corporations; Use of Public Funds in Aid of  
Private Enterprises; Charitable Institutions**

**§ 1. Corporations, formation of.**—Corporations may be formed under general laws; but shall not be created by special act, except for municipal purposes, and in cases where, in the judgment of the Legislature, the objects of the corporation cannot be attained under general laws. All general laws and special acts passed pursuant to this section may be altered from time to time or repealed.

**§ 2. Dues of corporations.**—Dues from corporations shall be secured by such individual liability of the corporators and other means as may be prescribed by law.

**§ 3. Corporation, definition of term.**—The term corporations as used in this article shall be construed to include all association and joint-stock companies having any of the powers or privileges of corporations not possessed by individuals or partnerships. And all corporations shall have the right to sue and shall be subject to be sued in all courts in like cases as natural persons.

**§ 4. Savings bank charters; restrictions upon trustees; special charters not to be granted.**—The Legislature shall, by general law, conform all charters of savings banks, or institutions for savings, to a uniformity of powers, rights and liabilities, and all charters hereafter granted for such corporations shall be made to conform to such general law, and to such amendments as may be made thereto. And no such corporation shall have any capital stock, nor shall the trustees thereof, or any of them, have any interest whatever, direct or indirect, in the profits of such corporation; and no director or trustee of any such bank or institution shall be interested in any loan or use of any money or property of such bank or institution for savings. The Legislature shall have no power to pass any act granting any special charter for banking purposes; but corporations or associations may be formed for such purposes under general laws.

**§ 5. Specie payments.**—The Legislature shall have no power to pass any law sanctioning in any manner, directly or indirectly, the suspension of specie payments, by any person, association or corporation issuing bank notes of any description.

**§ 6. Registry of bills or notes.**—The Legislature shall provide by law for the registry of all bills or notes issued or put in cir-



ulation as money, and shall require ample security for the redemption of the same in specie.

**§ 7. Liability of stockholders of banks.**—The stockholders of every corporation and joint-stock association for banking purposes shall be individually responsible to the amount of their respective share or shares of stock in any such corporation or association, for all its debts and liabilities of every kind.

**§ 8. Billholders of insolvent banks, preferred creditors.**—In case of the insolvency of any bank or banking association, the billholders thereof shall be entitled to preference in payment over all other creditors of such bank or association.

**§ 9. Credit or money of the State not to be given.**—Neither the credit nor the money of the State shall be given or loaned to or in aid of any association, corporation or private undertaking. This section shall not, however, prevent the Legislature from making such provision for the education and support of the blind, the deaf and dumb, and juvenile delinquents, as to it may seem proper. Nor shall it apply to any fund or property now held, or which may hereafter be held by the State for educational purposes.

**§ 10. Counties, cities and towns not to give or loan money or credit; limitation of indebtedness.**—No county, city, town or village shall hereafter give any money or property, or loan its money or credit, to or in aid of any individual, association or corporation, or become, directly or indirectly, the owner of stock in or bonds of any association or corporation, nor shall any such county, city, town or village be allowed to incur any indebtedness, except for county, city, town or village purposes. This section shall not prevent such county, city, town or village from making such provision for the aid or support of its poor, as may be authorized by law. No county or city shall be allowed to become indebted for any purpose or in any manner to an amount which, including existing indebtedness, shall exceed ten per centum of the assessed valuation of the real estate of such county or city subject to taxation, as it appeared by the assessment-rolls of said county or city on the last assessment for State or county taxes prior to the incurring of such indebtedness; and all indebtedness in excess of such limitation, except such as may now exist, shall be absolutely void, except as herein otherwise provided. No county or city whose present indebtedness exceeds ten per centum of the assessed valuation of its real estate subject to taxation shall be allowed to become indebted in any further amount until such indebtedness shall

be reduced within such limit. This section shall not be construed to prevent the issuing of certificates of indebtedness or revenue bonds issued in anticipation of the collection of taxes for amounts actually contained, or to be contained in the taxes for the year when such certificates or revenue bonds are issued and payable out of such taxes. Nor shall this section be construed to prevent the issue of bonds to provide for the supply of water, but the term of the bonds issued to provide for the supply of water shall not exceed twenty years, and a sinking fund shall be created on the issuing of the said bonds for their redemption, by raising annually a sum which will produce an amount equal to the sum of the principal and interest of said bonds at their maturity. All certificates of indebtedness or revenue bonds issued in anticipation of the collection of taxes, which are not retired within five years after their date of issue, and bonds issued to provide for the supply of water, and any debt hereafter incurred by any portion or part of a city, if there shall be any such debt, shall be included in ascertaining the power of the city to become otherwise indebted. Whenever hereafter the boundaries of any city shall become the same as those of a county, the power of the county to become indebted shall cease, but the debt of the county at that time existing shall not be included as a part of the city debt. The amount hereafter to be raised by tax for county or city purposes, in any county containing a city of over one hundred thousand inhabitants, or any such city of this State, in addition to providing for the principal and interest of existing debt, shall not in the aggregate exceed in any one year two per centum of the assessed valuation of the real and personal estate of such county or city, to be ascertained as prescribed in this section in respect to county or city debt.

**§ 11. State boards and commissions; charities; lunacy; prisons.**  
—† The Legislature shall provide for a State Board of Charities, which shall visit and inspect all institutions, whether State, county, municipal, incorporated or not incorporated, which are of a charitable, eleemosynary, correctional or reformatory character, excepting only such institutions as are hereby made subject to the visitation and inspection of either of the commissions hereinafter mentioned, but including all reformatories, except those in which adult males convicted of felony shall be confined; a State Commission in Lunacy, which shall visit and inspect all institutions, either public or private, used for the care and treatment of the insane (not including institutions for epileptics or idiots); a

State Commission of Prisons, which shall visit and inspect all institutions used for the detention of sane adults charged with or convicted of crime, or detained as witnesses or debtors.

**§ 12. Boards appointed by Governor.**—† The members of the said board and of the said commissions shall be appointed by the Governor, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate; and any member may be removed from office by the Governor for cause, an opportunity having been given him to be heard in his defence.

**§ 13. Existing laws to remain in force.**—Existing laws relating to institutions referred to in the foregoing sections and to their supervision and inspection, in so far as such laws are not inconsistent with the provisions of the Constitution, shall remain in force until amended or repealed by the Legislature. The visitation and inspection herein provided for shall not be exclusive of other visitation and inspection now authorized by law.

**§ 14. Maintenance and support of inmates of charitable institutions.**—† Nothing in this Constitution contained shall prevent the Legislature from making such provision for the education and support of the blind, the deaf and dumb, and juvenile delinquents, as to it may seem proper; or prevent any county, city, town or village from providing for the care, support, maintenance and secular education of inmates of orphan asylums, homes for dependent children or correctional institutions, whether under public or private control. Payments by counties, cities, towns or villages to charitable, eleemosynary, correctional and reformatory institutions, wholly or partly under private control, for care, support and maintenance, may be authorized, but shall not be required, by the Legislature. No such payments shall be made for any inmate of such institutions who is not received and retained therein pursuant to rules established by the State Board of Charities. Such rules shall be subject to the control of the Legislature by general laws.

**§ 15. Commissioners continued in office.**—Commissioners of the State Board of Charities and commissioners of the State Commission in Lunacy, now holding office, shall be continued in office for the term for which they were appointed, respectively, unless the Legislature shall otherwise provide. The Legislature may confer upon the commissioners and upon the board mentioned in the foregoing sections any additional powers that are not inconsistent with other provisions of the Constitution.

## ARTICLE IX—Education and School Funds

§ 1. **Common schools.**—† The Legislature shall provide for the maintenance and support of a system of free common schools, wherein all the children of this State may be educated.

§ 2. **The Regents.**—† The corporation created in the year 1784, under the name of The Regents of the University of the State of New York, is hereby continued under the name of The University of the State of New York. It shall be governed, and its corporate powers, which may be increased, modified or diminished by the Legislature, shall be exercised, by not less than nine regents.

§ 3. **Common school fund; literature fund; United States deposit fund.**—The capital of the common school fund, the capital of the literature fund, and the capital of the United States deposit fund, shall be respectively preserved inviolate. The revenue of the said common school fund shall be applied to the support of common schools; the revenue of the said literature fund shall be applied to the support of academies, and the sum of twenty-five thousand dollars of the revenues of the United States deposit fund shall each year be appropriated to and made part of the capital of the said common school fund.

§ 4. **No aid to denominational schools.**—† Neither the State, nor any subdivision thereof, shall use its property or credit or any public money, or authorize or permit either to be used, directly or indirectly, in aid or maintenance, other than for examination or inspection, of any school or institution of learning wholly or in part under the control or direction of any religious denomination, or in which any denominational tenet or doctrine is taught.

## ARTICLE X—County Officers

§ 1. **Sheriffs, clerks of counties, district attorneys and registers; Governor may remove.**—Sheriffs, clerks of counties, district attorneys and registers in counties having registers, shall be chosen by the electors of the respective counties, once in every three years, and as often as vacancies shall happen,† except in the counties of New York and Kings, and in counties whose boundaries are the same as those of a city, where such officers shall be chosen by the electors once in every two or four years \* as the Legislature

---

\* See foot-note on page 385.

shall direct. Sheriffs shall hold no other office, and be ineligible for the next term after the termination of their offices. They may be required by law to renew their security, from time to time, and in default of giving such new security, their offices shall be deemed vacant. But the county shall never be made responsible for the acts of the sheriff. The Governor may remove any officer in this section mentioned, within the term for which he shall have been elected, giving to such officer a copy of the charges against him, and an opportunity of being heard in his defence.

**§ 2. Appointment or election of officers not provided for by this Constitution.**—All county officers whose election or appointments is not provided for by this Constitution, shall be elected by the electors of the respective counties or appointed by the boards of supervisors, or other county authorities, as the Legislature shall direct. All city, town and village officers, whose election or appointment is not provided for by this Constitution, shall be elected by the electors of such cities, towns and villages, or of some division thereof, or appointed by such authorities thereof, as the Legislature shall designate for that purpose. All other officers whose election or appointment is not provided for by this Constitution, and all officers whose offices may hereafter be created by law, shall be elected by the people, or appointed, as the Legislature may direct.

**§ 3. Duration of term.**—When the duration of any office is not provided by this Constitution, it may be declared by law, and if not so declared, such office shall be held during the pleasure of the authority making the appointment.

**§ 4. Time of election.**—The time of electing all officers named in this article shall be prescribed by law.

**§ 5. Vacancies, how filled.**—The Legislature shall provide for filling vacancies in office, and in case of elective officers no person appointed to fill a vacancy shall hold his office by virtue of such appointment longer than the commencement of the political year next succeeding the first annual election after the happening of the vacancy.

**§ 6. Political year.**—The political year and Legislative term shall begin on the first day of January; and the Legislature shall, every year, assemble on the first † Wednesday in January.

**§ 7. Removal from office for misconduct, etc.**—Provision shall be made by law for the removal for misconduct or malversation in office of all officers (except judicial) whose powers and duties



are not local or legislative and who shall be elected at general elections, and also for supplying vacancies created by such removal.

§ 8. **Offices deemed vacant.**—The Legislature may declare the cases in which any office shall be deemed vacant when no provision is made for that purpose in this Constitution.

§ 9. **Salaries.**—No officer whose salary is fixed by the Constitution shall receive any additional compensation. Each of the other state officers named in the Constitution shall, during his continuance in office, receive a compensation, to be fixed by law, which shall not be increased or diminished during the term for which he shall have been elected or appointed; nor shall he receive to his use, any fees or perquisites of office or other compensation.

## ARTICLE XI—Militia

§ 1. **State Militia.**—All able-bodied male citizens between the ages of eighteen and forty-five years, who are residents of the State, shall constitute the militia, subject however to such exemptions as are now, or may be hereafter, created by the laws of the United States, or by the Legislature of this State.

§ 2. **Enlistment.**—The Legislature may provide for the enlistment into the active force of such other persons as may make application to be so enlisted.

§ 3. **Organization of militia.**—† The militia shall be organized and divided into such land and naval, and active and reserve forces, as the Legislature may deem proper, provided however that there shall be maintained at all times a force of not less than ten thousand enlisted men, fully uniformed, armed, equipped, disciplined and ready for active service. And it shall be the duty of the Legislature at each session to make sufficient appropriations for the maintenance thereof.

§ 4. **Appointment of military officers by the Governor.**—† The governor shall appoint the chiefs of the several staff departments, his aides-de-camp and military secretary, all of whom shall hold office during his pleasure, their commissions to expire with the term for which the governor shall have been elected; he shall also nominate, and with the consent of the Senate, appoint all major-generals.

§ 5. **Manner of electing military officers not appointed by the Governor.**—† All other commissioned and non-commissioned officers



shall be chosen or appointed in such manner as the Legislature may deem most conducive to the improvement of the militia, provided however that no law shall be passed changing the existing mode of election and appointment unless two-thirds of the members present in each house shall concur therein.\*

**§ 6. Commissioned officers; removal.**—The commissioned officers shall be commissioned by the Governor as commander-in-chief. No commissioned officer shall be removed from office during the term for which he shall have been appointed or elected, unless by the Senate on the recommendation of the Governor, stating the grounds on which such removal is recommended, or by the sentence of a court-martial, or upon the findings of an examining board organized pursuant to law, or for absence without leave for a period of six months or more.

## ARTICLE XII—Cities and Villages

**§ 1. Organization of cities and villages.**—† It shall be the duty of the Legislature to provide for the organization of cities and incorporated villages, and to restrict their power of taxation, assessment, borrowing money, contracting debts and loaning their credit, so as to prevent abuses in assessments, and in contracting debt by such municipal corporations.

**§ 2. Classification of cities; general and special city laws.**—† All cities are classified according to the latest state enumeration, as from time to time made, as follows: The first class includes all cities having a population of two hundred and fifty thousand, or more; the second class, all cities having a population of fifty thousand and less than two hundred and fifty thousand; the third class, all other cities. Laws relating to the property, affairs or government of cities, and the several departments

---

\* The following is an abstract of the law in force at present :

**Officers, how Chosen.**—(a) Captains, subalterns, and non-commissioned officers to be elected by their companies. (b) Field-officers of regiments or battalions to be elected by the commissioned officers of their regiments or battalions. (c) Brigadier-generals and brigade inspectors to be elected by the field-officers of their brigades. (d) Staff-officers to be appointed by the commanding officer of the regiment or battalion.

**Appointments by Governor.**—(a) Major-generals and the commissary-general to be appointed by the governor and senate. (b) Adjutant-general, chiefs of staff departments, and aides-de-camp of the commander-in-chief to be appointed by the governor alone.

thereof, are divided into general and special city laws; general city laws are those which relate to all the cities of one or more classes; special city laws are those which relate to a single city, or to less than all the cities of a class. Special city laws shall not be passed except in conformity with the provisions of this section. After any bill for a special city law, relating to a city, has been passed by both branches of the Legislature, the house in which it originated shall immediately transmit a certified copy thereof to the mayor of such city, and within fifteen days thereafter the mayor shall return such bill to the house from which it was sent, or if the session of the Legislature at which such bill was passed has terminated, to the Governor, with the mayor's certificate thereon, stating whether the city has or has not accepted the same.

In every city of the first class, the mayor, and in every other city, the mayor and the legislative body thereof concurrently, shall act for such city as to such bill; but the Legislature may provide for the concurrence of the legislative body in cities of the first class. The Legislature shall provide for a public notice and opportunity for a public hearing concerning any such bill in every city to which it relates, before action thereon. Such a bill, if it relates to more than one city, shall be transmitted to the mayor of each city to which it relates, and shall not be deemed accepted unless accepted as herein provided, by every such city. Whenever any such bill is accepted as herein provided, it shall be subject, as are other bills, to the action of the Governor. Whenever, during the session at which it was passed, any such bill is returned without the acceptance of the city or cities to which it relates, or within such fifteen days is not returned, it may nevertheless again be passed by both branches of the Legislature, and it shall then be subject, as are other bills, to the action of the Governor. In every special city law which has been accepted by the city or cities to which it relates, the title shall be followed by the words "accepted by the city" or "cities," as the case may be; in every such law which is passed without such acceptance, by the words "passed without the acceptance of the city," or "cities," as the case may be.

§ 3. City elections.—† All elections of city officers, including supervisors and judicial officers of inferior local courts, elected in any city or part of a city, and of county officers elected in the counties of New York and Kings, and in all counties whose boun-

daries are the same as those of a city, except to fill vacancies, shall be held on the Tuesday succeeding the first Monday in November in an odd-numbered year, and the term of every such officer shall expire at the end of an odd-numbered year.\* The terms of office of all such officers, elected before the first day of January 1895, whose successors have not then been elected, which under existing laws would expire with an even-numbered year, or in an odd-numbered year and before the end thereof, are extended to and including the last day of December next following the time when such terms would otherwise expire; the terms of office of all such officers, which under existing laws would expire in an even-numbered year and before the end thereof, are abridged so as to expire at the end of the preceding year. This section shall not apply to any city of the third class, or to elections of any judicial officer, except judges and justices of inferior local courts.

### ARTICLE XIII—Oath of Office; Bribery and Official Corruption

§ 1. **Oath of office.**—Members of the Legislature, and all officers, executive and judicial, except such inferior officers as shall be by law exempted, shall, before they enter on the duties of their respective offices, take and subscribe the following oath or affirmation: “I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will support the Constitution of the United States, and the Constitution of the State of New York, and that I will faithfully discharge the duties of the office of \_\_\_\_\_ according to the best of my ability;” and all such officers who shall have been chosen at any election shall, before they enter on the duties of their respective offices, take and subscribe the oath or affirmation above prescribed, together with the following addition thereto, as part thereof:

“And I do further solemnly swear (or affirm) that I have not directly or indirectly paid, offered or promised to pay, contributed, or offered or promised to contribute, any money or other valuable thing as a consideration or reward for the giving or withholding a vote at the election at which I was elected to said office, and have not made any promise to influence the giving or withholding any such vote,” and no other oath, declaration or test, shall be required as a qualification for any office of public trust.

---

\* See foot-note on page 385.

§ 2. **Official bribery and corruption.**—† Any person holding office under the laws of this State, who, except in payment of his legal salary, fees or perquisites, shall receive or consent to receive, directly or indirectly, any thing of value or of personal advantage, or the promise thereof, for performing or omitting to perform any official act, or with the express or implied understanding that his official action or omission to act is to be in any degree influenced thereby, shall be deemed guilty of a felony. This section shall not affect the validity of any existing statute in relation to the offence of bribery.

§ 3. **Offer or promise to bribe.**—† Any person who shall offer or promise a bribe to an officer, if it shall be received, shall be deemed guilty of a felony \* and liable to punishment, except as herein provided. No person offering a bribe shall, upon any prosecution of the officer for receiving such bribe, be privileged from testifying in relation thereto, and he shall not be liable to civil or criminal prosecution therefor, if he shall testify to the giving or offering of such bribe. Any person who shall offer or promise a bribe, if it be rejected by the officer to whom it was tendered, shall be deemed guilty of an attempt to bribe, which is hereby declared to be a felony.

§ 4. **Person bribed or offering a bribe may be a witness.**—Any person charged with receiving a bribe, or with offering or promising a bribe, shall be permitted to testify in his own behalf in any civil or criminal prosecution therefor.

§ 5. **Free passes, franking privileges, etc., not to be received by public officers: penalty.**—† No public officer, or person elected or appointed to a public office, under the laws of this State, shall directly or indirectly ask, demand, accept, receive or consent to receive for his own use or benefit, or for the use or benefit of another, any free pass,\* free transportation, franking privilege or discrimination in passenger, telegraph or telephone rates, from any person or corporation, or make use of the same himself or in conjunction with another. A person who violates any provision of this section shall be deemed guilty of a misdemeanor, and shall forfeit his office at the suit of the attorney-general. Any corporation or officer or agent thereof who shall offer or promise to a public officer, or person elected or appointed to a public office, any

---

\* A crime that is punishable by imprisonment in State prison or by death.

such free pass, free transportation, franking privilege or discrimination, shall also be deemed guilty of a misdemeanor and liable to punishment, except as herein provided. No person, or officer, or agent of a corporation giving any such free pass, free transportation, franking privilege or discrimination hereby prohibited, shall be privileged from testifying in relation thereto, and he shall not be liable to civil or criminal prosecution therefor, if he shall testify to the giving of the same.

§ 6. Removal of district attorney for failure to prosecute; expenses of prosecutions for bribery.—† Any district attorney who shall fail faithfully to prosecute a person charged with the violation in his county of any provision of this article which may come to his knowledge shall be removed from office by the governor, after due notice and an opportunity of being heard in his defence. The expenses which shall be incurred by any county, in investigating and prosecuting any charge of bribery or attempting to bribe any person holding office under the laws of this State, within such county, or of receiving bribes by any such person in said county, shall be a charge against the State, and their payment by the State shall be provided for by law.

#### ARTICLE XIV—Amendments

§ 1. How made.—Any amendment or amendments to this Constitution may be proposed in the Senate and Assembly; and if the same shall be agreed to by a majority of the members elected to each of the two houses, such proposed amendment or amendments shall be entered on their journals, with the yeas and nays taken thereon, and referred to the Legislature to be chosen at the next general election of senators, and shall be published for three months previous to the time of making such choice; and if in the Legislature so next chosen, as aforesaid, such proposed amendment or amendments shall be agreed to by a majority of all the members elected to each house, then it shall be the duty of the Legislature to submit such proposed amendment or amendments to the people for approval, in such manner and at such time as the Legislature shall prescribe; and if the people shall approve and ratify such amendment or amendments, by a majority of the electors voting thereon, such amendment or amendments shall become part of the Constitution † from and after the first day of January next after such approval.



§ 2. Future constitutional conventions.—† At the general election to be held in the year 1916, and every twentieth year thereafter, and also at such times as the Legislature may by law provide, the question, "Shall there be a convention to revise the Constitution and amend the same?" shall be decided by the electors of the State; and in case a majority of the electors voting thereon shall decide in favor of a convention for such purpose, the electors of every Senate district of the State, as then organized, shall elect three delegates at the next ensuing general election at which Members of the Assembly shall be chosen, and the electors of the State voting at the same election shall elect fifteen delegates-at-large. The delegates so elected shall convene at the capitol on the first Tuesday of April next ensuing after their election, and shall continue their session until the business of such convention shall have been completed. Every delegate shall receive for his services the same compensation and the same mileage as shall then be annually payable to the Members of the Assembly. A majority of the convention shall constitute a quorum for the transaction of business, and no amendment to the Constitution shall be submitted for approval to the electors as hereinafter provided, unless by the assent of a majority of all the delegates elected to the convention, the yeas and nays being entered on the journal to be kept. The convention shall have the power to appoint such officers, employés and assistants as it may deem necessary, and fix their compensation and to provide for the printing of its documents, journal and proceedings. The convention shall determine the rules of its own proceedings, choose its own officers, and be the judge of the election, returns and qualifications of its members. In case of a vacancy, by death, resignation or other cause, of any district delegate elected to the convention, such vacancy shall be filled by a vote of the remaining delegates representing the district in which such vacancy occurs. If such vacancy occurs in the office of a delegate-at-large, such vacancy shall be filled by a vote of the remaining delegates-at-large. Any proposed constitution or constitutional amendment which shall have been adopted by such convention, shall be submitted to a vote of the electors of the State at the time and in the manner provided by such convention, at an election which shall be held not less than six weeks after the adjournment of such convention. Upon the approval of such constitution or constitutional amendments, in the manner provided in the last preceding section, such constitution or constitutional



amendment shall go into effect on the first day of January next after such approval.

§ 3. **Priority of amendments.**—Any amendment proposed by a constitutional convention relating to the same subject as an amendment proposed by the Legislature, coincidently submitted to the people for approval at the general election held in the year 1894, or at any subsequent election, shall, if approved, be deemed to supersede the amendment so proposed by the Legislature.

## ARTICLE XV

§ 1. † This Constitution shall be in force from and including the first day of January 1895, except as herein otherwise provided.

Done in Convention at the Capitol in the city of Albany,  
the twenty-ninth day of September, in the year  
one thousand eight hundred and ninety-four, and  
of the Independence of the United States of America  
the one hundred and nineteenth.

In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed  
our names.

JOSEPH HODGES CHOATE,  
President and Delegate-at-Large.

CHARLES ELLIOTT FITCH,  
Secretary.

## SENATE DISTRICTS

Consist of counties or wards as follows:

1. Suffolk and Richmond.
2. Queens.
3. The First, Second, Third, Fourth, Fifth and Sixth wards of Brooklyn.
4. The Seventh, Thirteenth, Nineteenth and Twenty-first wards of Brooklyn.
5. The Eighth, Tenth, Twelfth, Thirtieth and Thirty-first wards of Brooklyn.
6. The Ninth, Eleventh, Twentieth and Twenty-second wards of Brooklyn.

7. The Fourteenth, Fifteenth, Sixteenth and Seventeenth wards of Brooklyn.
8. The Twenty-third, Twenty-fourth, Twenty-fifth and Twenty-ninth wards of Brooklyn and the town of Flatlands.
9. The Eighteenth, Twenty-sixth, Twenty-seventh and Twenty-eighth wards of Brooklyn.
- 10 to 21., inclusive, are wholly within the County of New York.  
The boundaries are arbitrary, being fixed without regard to ward lines.
22. Westchester.
23. Orange and Rockland.
24. Dutchess, Columbia and Putnam.
25. Ulster and Greene.
26. Delaware, Chenango and Sullivan.
27. Montgomery, Fulton, Hamilton and Schoharie.
28. Saratoga, Schenectady and Washington.
29. Albany.
30. Rensselaer.
31. Clinton, Essex and Warren.
32. St. Lawrence and Franklin.
33. Otsego and Herkimer.
34. Oneida.
35. Jefferson and Lewis.
36. Onondaga.
37. Oswego and Madison.
38. Broome, Cortland and Tioga.
39. Cayuga and Seneca.
40. Chemung, Tompkins and Schuyler.
41. Steuben and Yates.
42. Ontario and Wayne.
43. The part of Monroe County comprising the towns of Brighton, Henrietta, Irondequoit, Mendon, Penfield, Perrinton, Pittsford, Rush, Webster, also the Fourth, Sixth, Seventh, Eighth, Twelfth, Thirteenth, Fourteenth, Sixteenth, Seventeenth and Eighteenth wards of Rochester.
44. The towns of Chili, Clarkson, Gates, Greece, Hamlin, Ogden, Parma, Riga, Sweden and Wheatland in the County of Monroe, and the First, Second, Fifteenth, Nineteenth and Twentieth wards of the city of Rochester.
45. Niagara, Genesee and Orleans.
46. Allegany, Livingston and Wyoming.

47. The First, Second, Third, Sixth, Fifteenth, Nineteenth, Twentieth, Twenty-first, Twenty-second, Twenty-third and Twenty-fourth wards of Buffalo.
48. The Fourth, Fifth, Seventh, Eighth, Ninth, Tenth, Eleventh, Twelfth, Thirteenth, Fourteenth and Sixteenth wards of Buffalo.
49. The Seventeenth, Eighteenth and Twenty-fifth wards of Buffalo and the remainder of Erie County.
50. Chautauqua and Cattaraugus.

### ASSEMBLY DISTRICTS

Allegany, Chemung, Chenango, Clinton, Columbia, Cortland, Delaware, Essex, Franklin, Genesee, Greene, Herkimer, Lewis, Livingston, Madison, Montgomery, Ontario, Orleans, Otsego, Putnam, Richmond, Rockland, Saratoga, Schenectady, Schoharie, Schuyler, Seneca, Sullivan, Tioga, Tompkins, Warren, Washington, Wayne, Wyoming and Yates Counties are each one district. Fulton and Hamilton are united, forming one district.

Broome, Cattaraugus, Cayuga, Chautauqua, Dutchess, Jefferson, Niagara, Orange, Oswego, St. Lawrence, Steuben, Suffolk and Ulster Counties have each two districts.

Oneida, Queens, Rensselaer and Westchester Counties have each three districts.

Albany, Monroe and Onondaga Counties have each four districts.

Erie County has eight districts.

Kings County has twenty-one districts.

New York County has thirty-five districts.

DEPARTMENTS, DISTRICTS, AND COUNTIES EMBRACED  
IN A GENERAL TERM OF THE SUPREME COURT

FIRST DEPARTMENT <i>1st District</i>	{ City and County of New York	FOURTH DEPARTMENT <i>5th District</i>	{ <i>Counties</i> Onondaga Jefferson Oneida Oswego Herkimer Lewis
SECOND DEPARTMENT <i>2d District</i>	{ <i>Counties</i> Richmond Kings Queens Suffolk Westchester Putnam Dutchess Orange Rockland	<i>6th District</i>	{ <i>Counties</i> Otsego Delaware Madison Chenango Tompkins Broome Chemung Schuyler Tioga Cortland
THIRD DEPARTMENT <i>3d District</i>	{ <i>Counties</i> Columbia Rensselaer Sullivan Ulster Albany Greene Schoharie	FIFTH DEPARTMENT <i>7th District</i>	{ <i>Counties</i> Livingston Ontario Wayne Yates Steuben Seneca Cayuga Monroe
<i>4th District</i>	{ <i>Counties</i> Warren Saratoga St. Lawrence Washington Essex Franklin Clinton Montgomery Hamilton Fulton Schenectady	<i>8th District</i>	{ <i>Counties</i> Erie Chautauqua Cattaraugus Orleans Niagara Genesee Allegany Wyoming

# INDEX

## TO NEW YORK SUPPLEMENT

[For general index to the book, see page 287.]

	PAGE
Academic fund.....	371
Academies.....	370
Adjournment (of legislature).....	310
Adjutant-general, appointment of.....	417
Agricultural lands, drainage of.....	380
Agriculture, Commissioner of.....	328
Aldermen, Board of.....	352
Amendment (of bill).....	313
(of constitution).....	297, 393
Annual school meeting.....	362
Appellate division of Supreme Court.....	333
Appointments. <i>See</i> Governor, Mayor, Senate.	
Apportionment.....	385
Appropriation bills :	
prohibiting riders on.....	391
quorum for.....	312, 391
veto of items.....	313
votes, to pass.....	313, 391
Arrest :	
issue of warrant.....	355
by sheriff.....	342, 355
Assembly.....	309, 346
Colonial.....	296
Assessors.....	346, 352, 353
Asylums.....	355
Attendance officers.....	363
Attorney-general.....	319, 367
Audit (of claims). <i>See</i> Comptroller.	
Ayes and noes.....	363
Balloting machines.....	304
Ballots :	
destroyed.....	305
preparation of.....	303
to be used in all elections.....	356
Banks, Superintendent of.....	321
Betting.....	300
Bill of Rights.....	379
Bills ( <i>see also</i> Laws).....	312-313
to be printed.....	387
Bi-partisan election boards.....	384
Boards :	
of aldermen.....	352
of canvassers.....	305
of charities.....	324, 412
of education.....	363-364

	PAGE
Boards :	
of railroad commissioners.....	321
of registry.....	382
of supervisors.....	340
Booths, election.....	303
Boroughs.....	336
Bribery.....	300
Canals, State :	
management of.....	356, 407
not to be sold.....	409
Canal Board.....	397
Canal fund.....	397
Candidates for office, how chosen.....	301
Canvassers of election returns.....	305
Caucus.....	302
Census.....	385
Challenge (at election).....	303
Charities, commission of State, 324, 412	
Charter of cities.....	351
Cities, classification of.....	346, 417
debt of.....	356
election in.....	302, 347, 417
government of.....	346, 348
incorporation of.....	347
number.....	297
Civil service.....	326, 398
Claims, Court of.....	322, 329
Clerk. <i>See</i> County Clerk, Town Clerk.	
Coat of Arms of N. Y. State.....	377
College Land Scrip Fund.....	359
Colony, N. Y. as a.....	295
Commander-in-chief, governor as.....	316
Commissary-general, appointment of.....	417
Commissions :	
charities.....	324
civil service.....	326
fire.....	354
forest, fish, and game.....	327
health.....	323
lunacy.....	326
police.....	355
prisons.....	326
Commissioners of	
agriculture.....	338
canal fund.....	329, 397

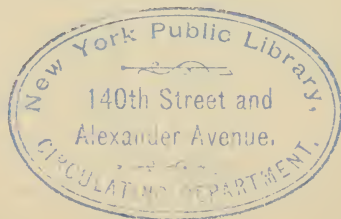
	PAGE		PAGE
Commissioners of		Drainage of agricultural lands....	380
excise.....	332	Dutch, government under.....	295
land office.....	397		
quarantine.....	324	Education. <i>See</i> Chap. X. and p.	412
railroad.....	321	Education, Board of.....	363
schools.....	363, 364	Election districts.....	299
Committees, legislative.....	311	Elections—Chap. II.:	
Common council.....	352	general.....	302
Common-school fund.....	358, 414	town and county.....	344
Comptroller.....	319	<i>See also</i> Cities.	
Compulsory education.....	364	Engineer and surveyor, State.....	320
Constables.....	344	English, government under.....	296
Constitution:		Enumeration.....	385
abstract of.....	379	Examinations:	
adoption of.....	296	civil service.....	327
amendment of.....	297, 421	regents.....	371
number.....	296	uniform.....	367
as supreme law.....	296, 312	Excise Commissioners.....	322
Contested election (legislature).....	312		
Contract labor in prisons.....	392	Farm land, lease of.....	381
Convention, Constitutional.....	296	Felony.....	392
Conventions:		Fire department.....	354
constitutional.....	296	Fisheries.....	327
nominating.....	301	Flag, the American.....	374
Convicts, pardon of.....	316	Forests.....	327, 409
Cornell University:		Freedom (of speech, etc.).....	380
agricultural experimental sta-		Free scholarships at Cornell Univ.	359
tion.....	329	Funds:	
free scholarships.....	359	municipal.....	411
Coroners.....	343	school.....	358, 414
Council, Colonial.....	296	state.....	410, 411
County:			
government of.....	335, 347	Gambling.....	381
number and division.....	297	Game and fish protectors.....	327
County clerk.....	342, 358, 414	Geographic divisions.....	297
County court.....	343, 404	Governor:	
County judge.....	332, 344, 404	duties, etc., Chap. IV. pp. 392, 393,	
County-seat.....	342	416	
Courts ( <i>see</i> Chap. VIII., <i>also</i> p. 398):		gubernatorial succession.....	394
Appeals.....	334	power of removal. <i>See</i> Re-	
Circuit.....	233	moval.	
City.....	333	Governor Seymour on education..	360
County.....	332		
General Term.....	333	Habeas corpus.....	380
of impeachment.....	334	Hamilton, Alexander, on educa-	
Inferior and local.....	406	tion.....	361
Justice's.....	332, 357	Health, Department of.....	323
Oyer and Terminer.....	333	Health Officer Port of N. Y. ....	324
Sessions.....	334	Highways. <i>See</i> Roads.	
of Buffalo.....	333	Highway Commissioners.....	346
of Claims.....	322, 329	Holidays.....	373
of New York City.....	333		
Supreme.....	333	Impeachment.....	314
Surrogate's.....	334	trial of.....	314, 394
Credit, loaning of.....	357	Indians.....	381
		Indictment.....	380
Damages resulting in death.....	382	Infamous crime.....	383
Debate, freedom of.....	389	Inferior and local courts.....	406
Debt (of State, city, etc.).....	356, 407	Initiative.....	309
Department of Health.....	323	Inspectors of elections.....	303
Department of public instruction.	331	of schools.....	370
District-attorney.....	342, 414	Insurance, Superintendent of.....	321
Districts:		Insurrection.....	317
assembly.....	386		
school commissioners.....	363	Journal (in legislature).....	389
school.....	362	Judges. <i>See</i> Courts.	
senate.....	385	not to take fees.....	406
Divorce.....	381	removal of.....	403



	PAGE
Judicial positions, who are eligible for .....	406
Jurors, selection of.....	342, 345, 357, 358
Jury:	
coroner's.....	357
grand.....	342
justice's.....	357
petit.....	358
road.....	357
struck.....	358
trial.....	358
right to trial by.....	379
serving on.....	357
Jury duty, exemption from .....	357
Justice of the peace.....	332, 355, 405
Kindergartens .....	363
Labor, department of.....	330
Lands, Indian .....	381
lease of farm.....	380, 382
Law (see Bills):	
passage of.....	313-394
publication of.....	320, 389, 407
Legislature .....	309, 388, 413
certificates of election of	
members .....	312
day of meeting.....	310
eligibility to.....	388
extra session .....	317
restrictions on.....	296, 312, 389
Libraries :	
state .....	372
travelling.....	372
Lieutenant-governor.....	318, 392
Literature fund.....	358, 414
Loan (by State, city, etc.) .....	357
Local bills .....	389
Lottery.....	381
Lunacy, State Commission in.....	314, 360
Majority .....	306
Manors .....	337
Mayor .....	353
Militia.....	317, 357, 416, 417
Money bills. See Appropriation Bills.	
Municipal elections.....	302, 385
Name, change of.....	390
National Guard .....	357
Normal schools.....	366
Oath of office.....	419
Officers, city.....	352
county.....	301, 339
military.....	416, 417
state.....	301, 314, 316, 319-331, 395
town.....	301, 339
Original jurisdiction.....	404
Oyer and Terminer, Court of..	333
Pardons .....	316
Parishes .....	337
Passes prohibited to state officers	420
Personal property .....	356, 380
Petition, Right of .....	381
Plurality .....	306

	PAGE
Police.....	355
Police Commissioners.....	355
Political rights. ....	379
Political year.....	415
Poolselling.....	382
Poor, support of.....	355
Population of State.....	295, 347
in cities. ....	347
President of senate.....	311, 394
<i>See also</i> Temporary president.	
Primaries .....	301
Property taken for public use....	380
Property, real and personal.....	356
Proportional representation.....	308
Provincial government .....	296
Public Instruction, Supt. of... ..	331, 369
Public schools. See Schools.	
Quarantine Commissioner.....	324
Quorum (in legislature).....	312
Railroads.....	356, 357
Railroad Commissioners.. ..	321
Referendum .....	307
Regents:	
appointment of .....	331
duties and powers.....	369
Registers .....	414
Registration (of voters)... ..	299, 300, 384
Religious liberty.....	379
Removals of officials and judges	
.....	316, 403, 415, 417
Residence.....	299, 383
Revision of constitution... ..	296, 422
Rights political .....	379
Roads and bridges.....	356
opening, etc.....	380
Rules (of legislature) .....	313
Salaries.....	375, 376
Scholarships at Cornell.....	359
School Commissioners.....	341, 363
districts.....	363
meetings.....	362
moneys.....	360, 362
Schools (see Chap. X.):	
city.....	364
elementary.....	361
normal.....	366
private .....	369
public .....	361, 369, 414
sectarian.....	414
Secretary of State.....	319, 395
Senate .....	309, 314, 384
confirming appointments.....	314
Senators :	
State.....	310
U. S.....	314
Seymour, Gov., on higher educa-	
tion .....	360
Sheriff.....	317, 342, 355, 414
Speaker (of assembly)	
.....	310 (note), 311, 394
State color, State flower, State	
tree .....	378
State engineer and surveyor..	320, 397
State :	
board of canvassers .....	305
commission in lunacy....	326, 412

	PAGE		PAGE
State:		Towns:	
commission of prisons .....	326	government of .....	339, 344, 345
Court of Claims .....	322, 329	number and population of....	297
Department of Health.....	323	Treasurer of State.....	320, 398
lands .....	397	Trial .....	379
library .....	372	<i>See also Jury.</i>	
museum.....	373	Truant:	
prisons .....	321	children .....	365
school tax.....	359	officers.....	363, 365
Struck jury.....	358	schools.....	363, 365
Suffrage ( <i>see</i> Chap. II.):		Union free schools.....	363, 365
qualification for.....	298, 300, 381	United States deposit fund... 359, 414	
Superintendent:		University extension.....	372
of banks.....	321	University of the State of New	
of insurance .....	321	York.....	359, 360, 373, 414
of public instruction.....	331, 369	Veto.....	313, 315, 394
of public works.....	320, 396	Vetoed bills.....	313
of schools.....	363	Village:	
of state prisons.....	321, 397	debt of.....	356
Supervisor .....	340, 345	election in .....	302
Supervisors, Board of. ....	305, 340, 363	government of.....	348
Supreme Court. <i>See</i> Courts.		incorporation of.....	351
Surrogate.....	334, 404	number .....	297
Swamps, drainage of.....	380	Voters, number of.....	299
Taxes:		at school meeting.....	362
for education.....	358, 359	qualifications of.....	298, 299
for State purposes .....	356	Votes, counting of.....	305
Teachers:		Voting:	
quota of \$100 .....	363	machines .....	304
training of.....	365, 366	manner of.....	303
institutes.....	366	otherwise than by ballot.....	384
Temporary president of senate.	311, 388	Wards (city).....	352
Terms of office of State officers,		Wealth of State.....	295
384, 392, 400		Women, right to vote .....	299, 362
of county and town officers... 344		Year, political.....	415
Town clerk.....	345		
Town meeting.....	302, 344		
Town officers, election.....	344		



RECENTLY PUBLISHED

In use in more than 300 schools in New York State

---

# MODERN BOOKKEEPING

SINGLE AND DOUBLE ENTRY

By J. L. MONTGOMERY

Instructor in Bookkeeping in the Columbia Grammar School, New York City

---

While in addition to its practical usefulness teachers have recognized in the subject of bookkeeping a valuable means of mental training and the forming of systematic business habits, the chief obstacle to taking up the study has lain in the text-books that they have been obliged to use.

The subject is really not an intricate one when divested of the elaborate and oftentimes useless machinery with which it is encumbered. If the fundamental principles have been made clear the various methods of applying them are of minor significance. The author of Modern Bookkeeping has prepared a course that best meets the needs of public schools and academies, and thus saves pupils who leave school the necessity of a special course at a commercial college after completing their public school course.

The theory of equal balances has been very carefully developed and the learner who has mastered it is enabled to open and keep an ordinary set of books. No attempt has been made to teach the special methods required by special kinds of business, for the reason that such knowledge can come only from experience, and commercial houses generally prefer to train their bookkeepers in their own methods without obliging them first to unlearn methods that do not obtain in their business.

Throughout the book three features have been constantly kept in view: 1st—The relative importance of the topics; 2d—The pupil's limited knowledge of business affairs; and 3d—The short time he has to devote to the subject.

The topics have been arranged in a natural and progressive order, each being designed to serve a definite and practical end. This greatly simplifies and clarifies the pupil's comprehension of the subject, and affords a reciprocal advantage to the teacher who can give his instruction without extended previous training in the work.

---

## PRICE LIST

Part I. Single Entry, 114 pages, crown 8vo, cloth,	\$0.50
Single and Double Entry, 240 pages, crown 8vo, cloth,	.80
Blank Books: Day Book, Sales Book, Journal, Cash Book,	
Bill Book, Ledger. Per set of six books,	.60
Key to Modern Bookkeeping,	.60

---

A descriptive circular, giving specimen pages from the book, in two colors; opinions of prominent school men; and a partial list of introductions will be sent upon request. The publishers will cheerfully quote special terms for introduction.

MAYNARD, MERRILL, & CO., Publishers  
New York

# COMMERCIAL LAW

A Manual of the Fundamental Principles Governing Business Transactions for the use of High Schools, Academies, and Commercial Colleges

By **SALTER S. CLARK**

Counsellor at Law

**314 Pages, 12mo, Cloth, Price, \$1.05**

---

The design of the author in this volume has been to present, simply and compactly, the principles of law affecting the ordinary transactions of commercial life, in the form of a class-book for schools and commercial colleges.

That heretofore this subject has formed but a small part of the ordinary educational system is due partly, perhaps, to the idea that law is too weighty and intricate to be taught to the young. This would be so were it taught at all in detail, or technically. But, it is thought, a book confining itself to principles, stating them in the plainest language, and presenting them as a consistent and interdependent system, would be useful.

After a short introduction upon the relations of National and State law, and of Constitutional, Statute, and Common law, it is divided into two parts. Part I. treats of principles applicable to all kinds of business, in three divisions, treating respectively of Contracts, Agency, and Partnership, with a fourth division embracing the subject of Corporations and a few others general in their nature. Part II. takes up in order the most prominent kinds of business transactions, paying chief attention to the subjects, Sale of Goods, and Commercial Paper, and is to a large extent an application of the principles contained in the preceding part.

A few chapters on Real Estate are added as likely to be useful, though the subject is not strictly within the title of the book.

The chief aim has been throughout to make it a book practically useful, and one easily taught, understood, and remembered, and its value as a class manual has been enhanced by schemes in graded type, summaries of leading rules, table of definitions, forms of business papers most frequently met with, and the frequent use of examples and cross-references.

---

**MAYNARD, MERRILL, & CO., Publishers**  
New York

